Zoom-Zoom

All children instinctively know it.

A few adults still remember it.

One unique car company refuses to outgrow it.

In grown-up language, it means the exhilaration and

liberation that come from experiencing sheer motion.

But as usual, children put it much better and simply call it " Go Zoom-Zoom."

We practice it every day.

It's why we build the kind of cars we do.

Zoom-Zoom.

Can we re-awaken it in you today?

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

A Word to Mazda Owners

Thank you for choosing a Mazda. We at Mazda design and build vehicles with complete customer satisfaction in mind.

To help ensure enjoyable and trouble-free operation of your Mazda, read this manual carefully and follow its recommendations.

An Authorized Mazda Dealer knows your vehicle best. So when maintenance or service is necessary, that's the place to go.

Our nationwide network of Mazda professionals is dedicated to providing you with the best possible service.

We assure you that all of us at Mazda have an ongoing interest in your motoring pleasure and in your full satisfaction with your Mazda product.

Mazda Motor Corporation
HIROSHIMA, JAPAN

Important Notes About This Manual
Keep this manual in the glove box as a handy reference for the safe and enjoyable use of your Mazda. Should you resell the vehicle, leave this manual with it for the next owner.

All specifications and descriptions are accurate at the time of printing. Because improvement is a constant goal at Mazda, we reserve the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice and without obligation.

Event Data Recorder
This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. In the event of a crash, this device records data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time. These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur and lead to the designing of safer vehicles.

Air Conditioning and the Environment
Your Mazda's genuine air conditioner is filled with HFC134a (R134a), a refrigerant that has been found not to damage the earth's ozone layer. If the air conditioner does not operate properly, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Perchlorate
Certain components of this vehicle such as [air bag modules, seat belt pretensioners, lithium batteries, ...] may contain Perchlorate Material– Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Please be aware that this manual applies to all models, equipment and options. As a result, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

©2008 Mazda Motor Corporation
Printed in Japan June 2008(Print1)

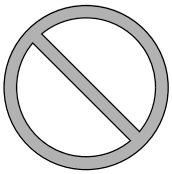
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Use This Manual

We want to help you get the most driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your owner's manual, when read from cover to cover, can do that in many ways.

Illustrations complement the words of the manual to best explain how to enjoy your Mazda. By reading your manual, you can find out about the features, important safety information, and driving under various road conditions.

The symbol below in this manual means “Do not do this” or “Do not let this happen”.



Index: A good place to start is the Index, an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

You'll find several WARNINGs, CAUTIONs, and NOTEs in the manual.

⚠ WARNING

A WARNING indicates a situation in which serious injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

⚠ CAUTION

A CAUTION indicates a situation in which bodily injury or damage to your vehicle, or both, could result if the caution is ignored.

NOTE

A NOTE provides information and sometimes suggests how to make better use of your vehicle.

The symbol below, located on some parts of the vehicle, indicates that this manual contains information related to the part. Please refer to the manual for a detailed explanation.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Table of Contents

Your Vehicle at a Glance 1
Interior, exterior views and part identification of your Mazda.

Essential Safety Equipment 2
Use of safety equipment, including seats, seat belt system, child-restraint systems and SRS air bags.

Knowing Your Mazda 3
Explanation of basic operations and controls; opening/closing and adjustment of various parts.

Before Driving Your Mazda 4
Important information about driving your Mazda.

Driving Your Mazda 5
Explanation of instruments and controls.

Interior Comfort 6
Use of various features for drive comfort, including air-conditioning and audio system.

In Case of an Emergency 7
Helpful information on what to do in an emergency.

Maintenance and Care 8
How to keep your Mazda in top condition.

Customer Information and Reporting Safety Defects 9
Important consumer information including warranties and add-on equipment.

Specifications 10
Technical information about your Mazda.

Index 11

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

1 Your Vehicle at a Glance

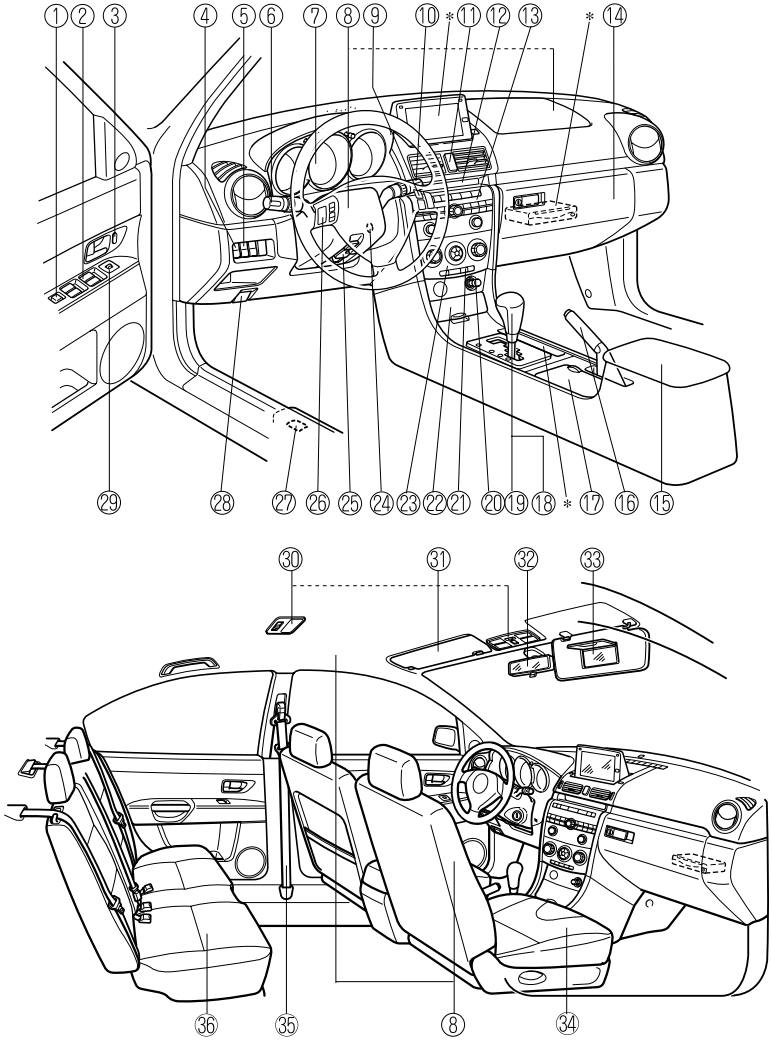
Interior, exterior views and part identification of your Mazda.

Dashboard and Interior Overview 1-2

Exterior Overview 1-4

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Dashboard and Interior Overview



*Refer to Navigation System at the separate manual (if equipped).

① Power window lock switch ..... page 3-20
② Power window switches ..... page 3-19
③ Power door lock switch ..... page 3-10

Information Provided by

Dashboard and Interior Overview

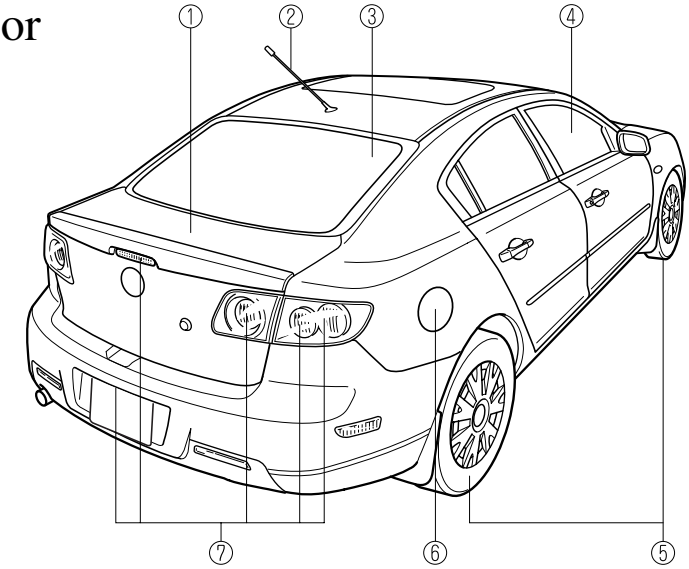
④ Headlight leveling switch ..... page 5-53
⑤ Dashboard illumination switch ..... page 5-36
⑥ Lighting control/Turn signal ..... page 5-51
⑦ Instrument cluster ..... page 5-33
⑧ SRS air bags ..... page 2-42
⑨ Cruise control switches ..... page 5-20
⑩ Wiper and washer lever ..... page 5-55
⑪ Hazard warning flasher switch ..... page 5-61
⑫ Information display ..... page 6-65
⑬ Audio system ..... page 6-17
⑭ Glove box ..... page 6-72
⑮ Center console ..... page 6-73
⑯ Parking brake ..... page 5-6
⑰ Cup holder ..... page 6-71
⑱ MT shift lever ..... page 5-9
⑲ AT shift lever (Sport AT) ..... page 5-12
⑳ Lighter ..... page 6-70
㉑ Rear window defroster switch ..... page 5-60
㉒ Ashtray ..... page 6-70
㉓ Climate control system ..... page 6-2
㉔ Ignition switch ..... page 5-2
㉕ Steering column release lever ..... page 3-30
㉖ Audio control switches ..... page 6-56
㉗ Remote fuel-filler lid release ..... page 3-21
㉘ Hood release handle ..... page 3-22
㉙ Outside mirror switch ..... page 3-30
㉚ Interior lights ..... page 6-62
㉛ Sunvisor ..... page 6-62
㉜ Rearview mirror ..... page 3-31
㉝ Vanity mirror ..... page 6-62
㉞ Front seat ..... page 2-2
㉟ Seat belt ..... page 2-13
㊱ Rear seat ..... page 2-7

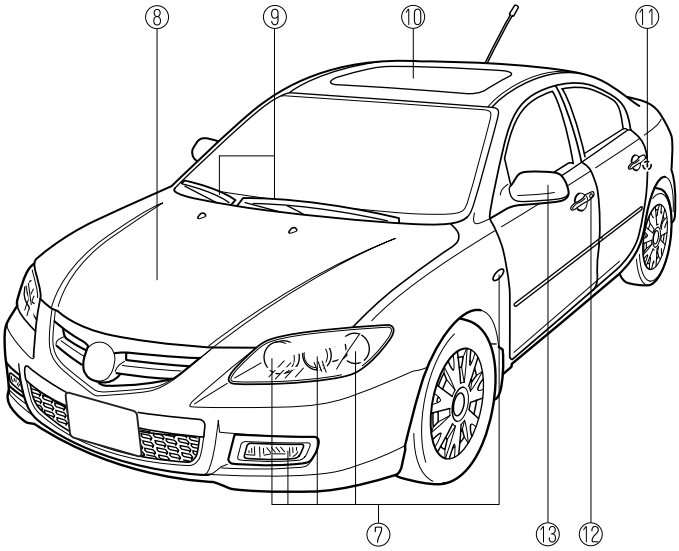
Information Provided by

The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle

Exterior Overview

4 Door





 The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle

Information Provided by

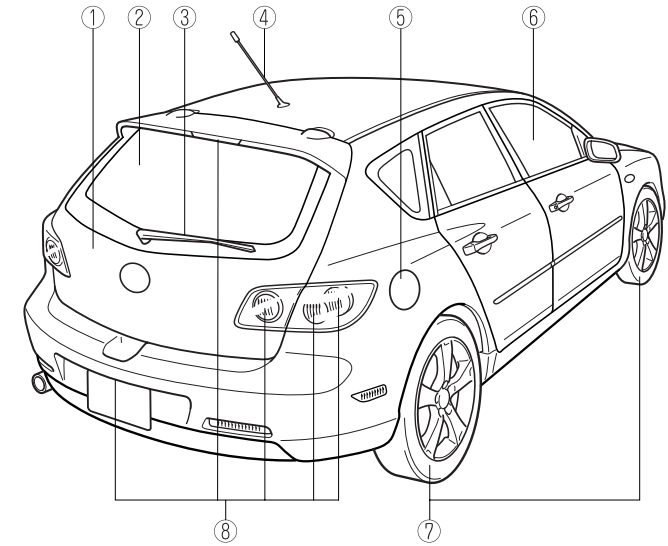
Exterior Overview

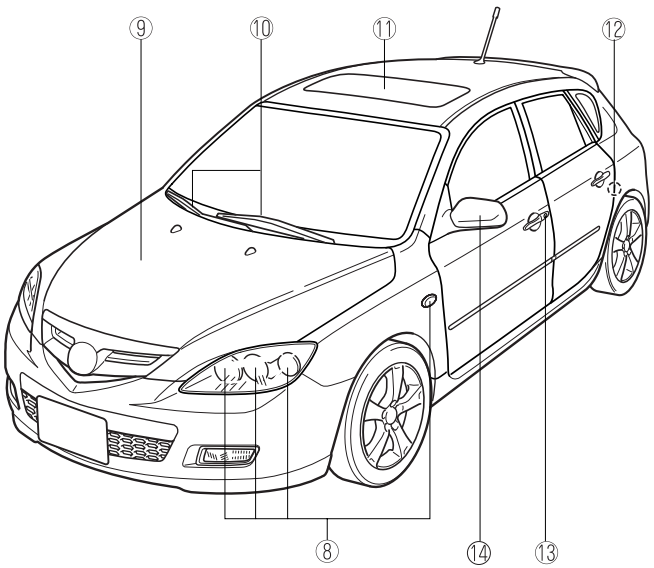
① Trunk lid ..... page 3-14
② Antenna ..... page 6-16
③ Rear window defroster ..... page 5-60
④ Power window ..... page 3-18
⑤ Tires ..... page 8-35
⑥ Fuel-filler lid ..... page 3-20
⑦ Light bulbs ..... page 8-39
⑧ Hood ..... page 3-22
⑨ Windshield wiper blades ..... page 8-29
⑩ Moonroof ..... page 3-24
⑪ Child safety lock ..... page 3-11
⑫ Door lock ..... page 3-9
⑬ Outside mirror ..... page 3-30

Information Provided by

Exterior Overview

5 Door





Information Provided by

Exterior Overview

① Liftgate ..... page 3-11
② Rear window defroster ..... page 5-60
③ Rear wiper blade ..... page 8-30
④ Antenna ..... page 6-16
⑤ Fuel-filler lid ..... page 3-20
⑥ Power window ..... page 3-18
⑦ Tires ..... page 8-35
⑧ Light bulbs ..... page 8-39
⑨ Hood ..... page 3-22
⑩ Windshield wiper blades ..... page 8-29
⑪ Moonroof ..... page 3-24
⑫ Child safety lock ..... page 3-11
⑬ Door lock ..... page 3-9
⑭ Outside mirror ..... page 3-30

Information Provided by

The equipment and installation position varies by vehicle

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2 Essential Safety Equipment

Use of safety equipment, including seats, seat belt system, child-restraint systems and SRS air bags.

Seats 2-2
- Front Seats (Manually Operated Seats) 2-2
- Front Seats (Electrically Operated Seats) 2-4
- Rear Seat 2-7
- Head Restraints* 2-10
- Seat Warmer* 2-11

Seat Belt Systems 2-13
- Seat Belt Precautions 2-13
- Seat Belt (Except Center-Rear Position) 2-17
- Front Seat Belt Pretensioner and Load Limiting Systems 2-19
- Center-Rear Position Seat Belt (3-Point Type) 2-21
- Seat Belt Extender 2-24
- Seat Belt Warning Light/Beep 2-25

Child Restraint 2-27
- Child Restraint Precautions 2-27
- Installing Child-Restraint Systems 2-31
- LATCH Child-Restraint Systems 2-37

SRS Air Bags 2-42
- Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS) Precautions 2-42
- Supplemental Restraint System Components 2-46
- How the Air Bags Work 2-48

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

*Some models.

Front Seats (Manually Operated Seats)

⚠ WARNING

Do not modify or replace the front seats:

Modifying or replacing the front seats such as replacing the upholstery or loosening any bolts is dangerous. The front seats contain air bag components essential to the supplemental restraint system. Such modifications could damage the supplemental restraint system and result in serious injury. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer if there is any need to remove or reinstall the front seats.

Do not drive with damaged front seats:

Driving with damaged front seats is dangerous. A collision, even one not strong enough to inflate the air bags, could damage the front seats which contain essential air bag components. If there was a subsequent collision, an air bag may not deploy which could lead to injuries. Always have an Authorized Mazda Dealer inspect the front seats, front seat belt pretensioners and air bags after a collision.

Make sure the adjustable components of a seat are locked in place:

Adjustable seats and seatbacks that are not securely locked are dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, the seat or seatback could move, causing injury. Make sure the adjustable components of the seat are locked in place by attempting to slide the seat forward and backward and rocking the seatback.

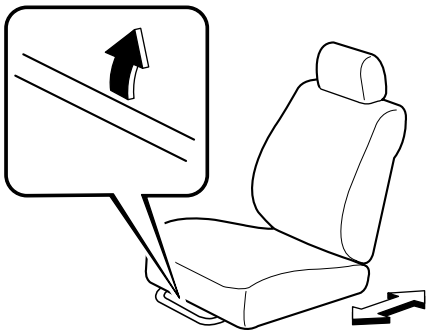
▼Seat Slide

⚠ WARNING

Adjust the driver's seat only when the vehicle is stopped:

Adjusting the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. The driver could lose control of the vehicle and have an accident.

To move a seat forward or backward, raise the lever and slide the seat to the desired position and release the lever.



Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seat is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Seat Recline

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with either front seat reclined:

Sitting in a reclined position while the vehicle is moving is dangerous because you do not get the full protection from seat belts. During sudden braking or a collision, you can slide under the lap belt and suffer serious internal injuries. For maximum protection, sit well back and upright.

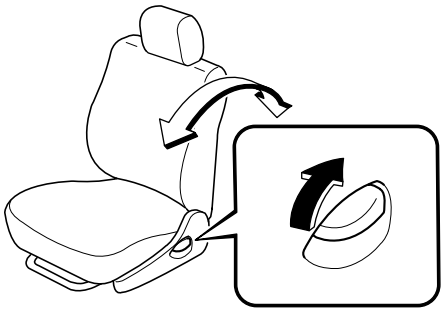
Always sit in the passenger seat properly with the seatback upright and feet on the floor:

Your front passenger seat has weight sensors, sitting in the front passenger seat improperly out of position or with the seatback reclined too far while the vehicle is moving is dangerous as it can take off weight from the seat bottom and affect the weight determination of the front passenger sensing system. As a result the front passenger will not have the supplementary protection of the air bag and seat belt pretensioner, which could result in serious injury. Always sit upright against the seatback with your feet on the floor.

Do not drive with the seatback unlocked:

All of the seatbacks play an important role in your protection in a vehicle. Leaving the seatback unlocked is dangerous as it can allow passengers to be ejected or thrown around and baggage to strike occupants in a sudden stop or collision, resulting in severe injury. After adjusting the seatback at any time, even when there are no other passengers, rock the seatback to make sure it is locked in place.

To change the seatback angle, lean forward slightly while raising the lever. Then lean back to the desired position and release the lever.



Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seatback is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

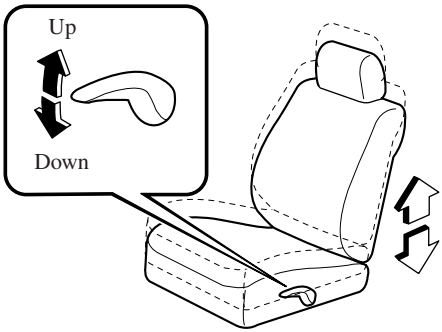
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

When returning a rear-reclined seatback to its upright position, make sure you hold onto the seatback with your other hand while operating the lever. If the seatback is not supported, it will flip forward suddenly and could cause injury.

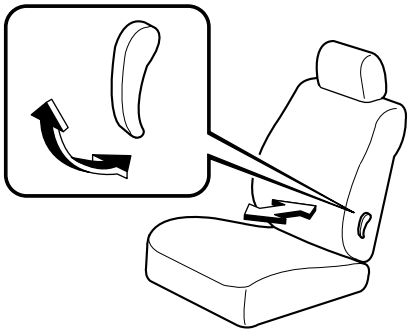
▼Height Adjustment (Driver's Seat)*

By moving the seat lever up or down, the driver's seat bottom height can be adjusted.



▼Lumbar Support Adjustment (Driver's Seat)*

Move the lever forwards to adjust the lumbar support as required.



Front Seats (Electrically Operated Seats)

⚠ WARNING

Do not modify or replace the front seats:

Modifying or replacing the front seats such as replacing the upholstery or loosening any bolts is dangerous. The front seats contain air bag components essential to the supplemental restraint system. Such modifications could damage the supplemental restraint system and result in serious injury. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer if there is any need to remove or reinstall the front seats.

Do not drive with damaged front seats:

Driving with damaged front seats is dangerous. A collision, even one not strong enough to inflate the air bags, could damage the front seats which contain essential air bag components. If there was a subsequent collision, an air bag may not deploy which could lead to injuries. Always have an Authorized Mazda Dealer inspect the front seats, front seat belt pretensioners and air bags after a collision.

*Some models.

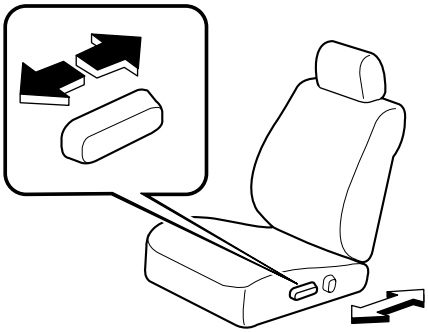
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- *The seat-bottom power adjustment is operated by motors. Avoid extended operation because excessive use can damage the motors.*
- *To prevent the battery from running down, avoid using the power adjustment when the engine is stopped. The adjuster uses a large amount of electrical power.*
- *Do not use the switch to make more than one adjustment at a time.*

▼Seat Slide (Driver's Seat)

To slide the seat, move the slide lifter switch on the outside of the seat to the front or back and hold it. Release the switch at the desired position.



▼Seat Recline (Driver's Seat)

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with either front seat reclined:

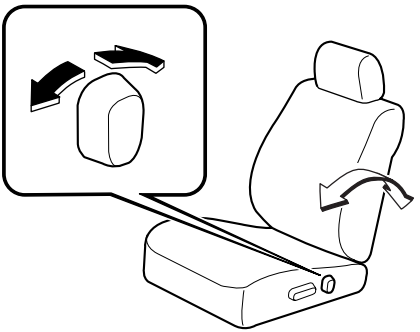
Sitting in a reclined position while the vehicle is moving is dangerous because you do not get the full protection from seat belts. During sudden braking or a collision, you can slide under the lap belt and suffer serious internal injuries. For maximum protection, sit well back and upright.

Always sit in the front passenger seat properly with the seatback upright and feet on the floor:

Your front passenger seat has weight sensors, sitting in the front passenger seat improperly out of position or with the seatback reclined too far while the vehicle is moving is dangerous as it can take off weight from the seat bottom and affect the weight determination of the front passenger sensing system. As a result the front passenger will not have the supplementary protection of the air bag and seat belt pretensioner, which could result in serious injury. Always sit upright against the seatback with your feet on the floor.

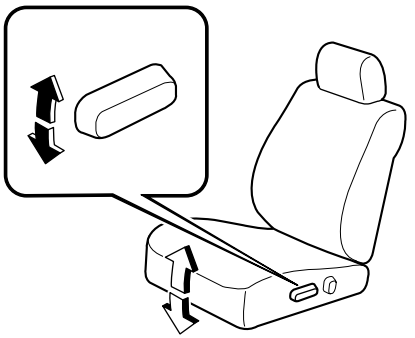
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

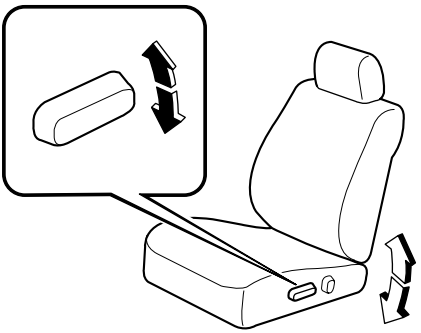
Change the seatback angle by pressing the front or rear side of the reclining switch. Release the switch at the desired position.

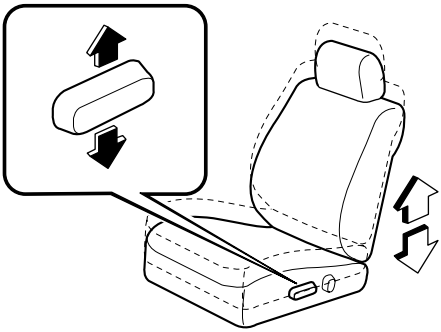


▼Height Adjustment (Driver's Seat)

The seat height can be adjusted by moving the switch up or down.

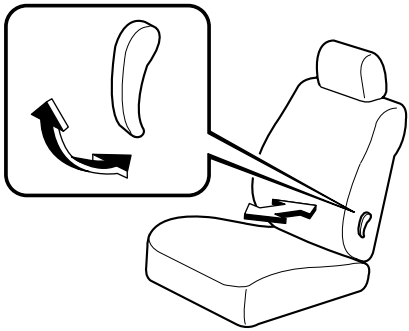






▼Lumbar Support Adjustment (Driver's Seat)

Move the lever forwards to adjust the lumbar support as required.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Seat

⚠ WARNING

Do not stack cargo higher than the seatbacks or place articles on the rear package tray or on the luggage compartment cover:

Stacking luggage or other cargo higher than the seatbacks, and placing articles on the rear package tray or on the luggage compartment cover is dangerous. During sudden braking or a collision, objects can fly around and become projectiles that may hit and injure passengers.

Make sure luggage and cargo is secured before driving:

Not securing cargo while driving is dangerous as it could move or be crushed during sudden braking or a collision and cause injury.

Make sure the adjustable components of a seat are locked in place:

Adjustable seats that are not securely locked are dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, the seat or seatback could move, causing injury.

Do not drive with the seatback unlocked:

All of the seatbacks play an important role in your protection in a vehicle. Leaving the seatback unlocked is dangerous as it can allow passengers to be ejected or thrown around and baggage to strike occupants in a sudden stop or collision, resulting in severe injury. After returning the seatback at any time, even when there are no other passengers, rock the seatback to make sure it is locked in place.

Never allow a passenger to sit or stand on the folded seatback while the vehicle is moving:

Driving with a passenger on the folded seatback is dangerous. Allowing a child to sit up on the folded seatback while the vehicle is moving is particularly dangerous. In a sudden stop or even a minor collision, a child not in a proper seat or child-restraint system and seat belt could be thrown forward, back or even out of the vehicle resulting in serious injuries or death. The child in the baggage area could be thrown into other occupants and cause serious injury.

Never give the car keys to children and do not allow them to play in the vehicle:

Playing with the folding rear seats is dangerous. The folding rear seatbacks cannot be folded down from inside the trunk. Once the seatbacks are back up, a child in the trunk would not be able to get out the way they had entered. If you have small children, keep the seatbacks locked (sedan).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Always leave your car locked and keep the car keys safely away from children:

Leaving your car unlocked or the keys in reach of children is dangerous. Children who find their way into the trunk through an unlocked rear seatback or an open trunk can become accidentally locked in the trunk. This could result in death or brain damage from heat prostration, particularly in the summer. Always lock the doors and the trunk, and as an added measure, keep the rear seatbacks locked, whether you have children in your home or not.

Do not leave the key in your vehicle with children and keep them in a place where your children will not find or play with them:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the key is dangerous. This could result in someone being badly injured or even killed. Children may find these new kinds of keys to be an interesting toy to play with and could cause the power windows or other controls to operate, or even make the vehicle move.

NOTE

When returning a rear seat to its original position, also replace the seat belt to its normal position. Verify that the seat belt pulls out and retracts.

▼Split-Folding Rear Seatback

To fold the seatbacks

⚠ CAUTION

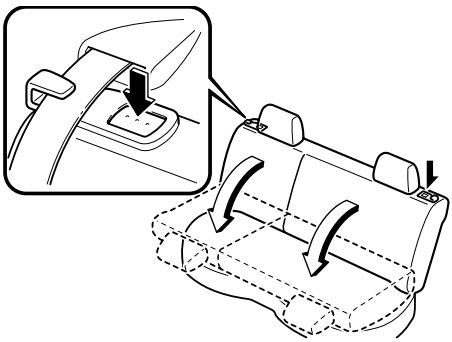
When operating the rear seatback knob, make sure you support the seatback with your hand. If the seatback is not supported with your hand, it will flip forward suddenly and could cause injury to the finger that pushes the rear seatback knob down.

1. Unfasten the lap portion of the center-rear seat belt (page 2-21).

⚠ CAUTION

Always unfasten the lap portion of the belt before folding the rear-left seatback. Leaving the lap portion of the belt fastened could cause damage to the seat belt, buckle and seatback.

2. Position the outboard seat belts to the side when folding the seatbacks down.
3. Support the seatback with your hand.
4. Push the rear seatback knob down.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

To return the seatbacks to the upright position

1. Position the outboard seat belts to the side.
2. Lift the seatbacks upright.
3. Make sure the seat belts are fully pulled out from under the seatbacks.
4. Pull on the top of the seatbacks from inside the vehicle to make sure they are locked.
5. Fasten the center-rear lap/shoulder belt and check that all seat belts are routed properly for passenger use (page 2-21).

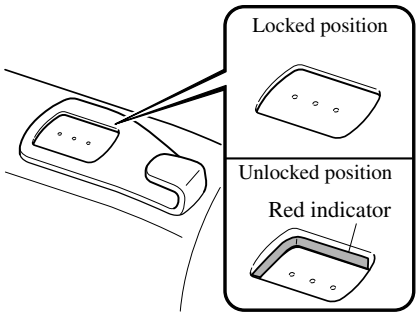
⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the seat belts are fully pulled out from under the seatbacks:

A seat belt caught under a seatback after the seatback is returned to its upright position is dangerous. In a collision or sudden stop, the seat belt cannot provide adequate protection.

When returning the seatback to the upright position, make sure there is no red indication:

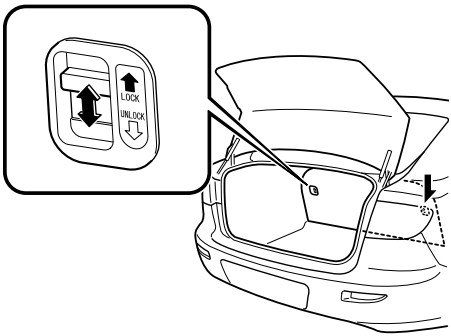
A rear seatback not fully returned and locked in the upright position is dangerous. Sudden stops or maneuvering could cause a seatback to flip forward suddenly resulting in injury. If the red indicator is visible on the back of the rear seatback knob, the seatback is not locked in the upright position.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Rear Seatback Lock (4 Door)

To lock or unlock a seatback, move the lever.

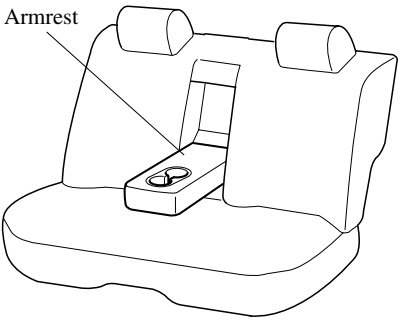


NOTE

The seatback locks are part of the trunk security system (page 3-16).

▼Armrest

The rear armrest in the center of the rear seatback can be used (no occupant in the center seat) or placed upright.



Head Restraints*

Head restraints are intended to help protect you and the passengers from neck injury.

⚠WARNING

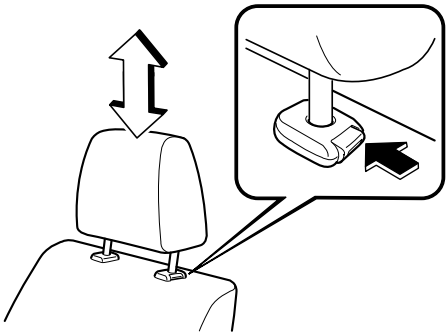
Always drive with the head restraints installed when seats are being used and make sure they are properly adjusted:

Driving with the head restraints adjusted too low or removed is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.

Height adjustment

To raise a head restraint, pull it up to the desired position.
To lower the head restraint, press the stop-catch release, then push the head restraint down.
Adjust the head restraint so that the top is even with the top of the passenger's ears, never the passenger's neck to prevent injury.

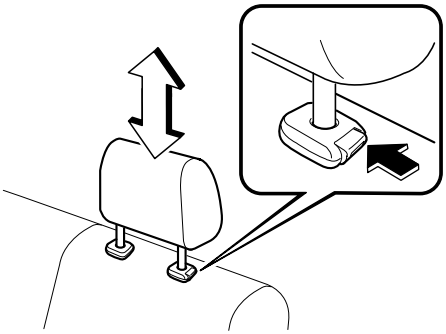
Front seat



 *Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear seat



Removal/Installation

To remove the head restraint, pull it up while pressing the stop-catch.
To install the head restraint, press the uprights into the holes while pressing the stop-catch.

⚠ WARNING

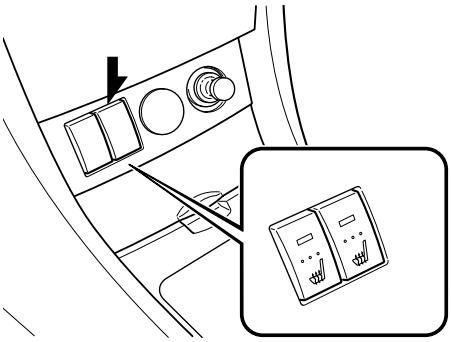
Always drive with the head restraints set up when seats are being used and make sure they are properly set up:

Driving with the head restraints not set up is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.

Seat Warmer *

The front seats are electrically heated. The ignition switch must be in the ON position.

Press the switch to turn the seat warmer on or off. When the switch is in the ON position, the indicator light will come on.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

- *Be careful when using the seat warmer. The heat from the seat warmer may be too hot for some people, as indicated below, and could cause a low-temperature burn.*
  - *Infants, small babies, elderly people, and physically challenged people*
  - *People with delicate skin*
  - *People who are excessively fatigued*
  - *People who are drunk*
  - *People who have taken sleep-inducing medicine such as sleeping pills or cold medicine*
- *Do not use the seat warmer with anything having high moisture-retention ability such as a blanket or cushion on the seat. The seat may be heated excessively and cause a low-temperature burn.*
- *Do not use the seat warmer even when taking a short nap in the vehicle. The seat may be heated excessively and cause a low-temperature burn.*
- *Do not place heavy objects with sharp projections on the seat, or insert needles or pins into it. This could cause the seat to become excessively heated and result in injury from a minor burn.*

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use organic solvents to clean the seat. It may damage the seat surface and the heater.

NOTE

Use the seat warmer when the engine is running, and do not continue to use it for a long period of time.
The temperature of the seat warmer cannot be adjusted beyond High and Low because the seat warmer is controlled by a thermostat.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Seat Belt Precautions

Seat belts help to decrease the possibility of severe injury during accidents and sudden stops. Mazda recommends that the driver and all passengers always wear seat belts.

All of the seat belt retractors are designed to keep the lap/shoulder belts out of the way when not in use.

The driver's seat belt has no provisions for child-restraint systems and has only an emergency locking mode. The driver may wear it comfortably, and it will lock during a collision.

However, the front passenger's seat and all rear lap/shoulder belt retractors operate in two modes: emergency locking mode, and for child-restraint systems, automatic locking mode. While we recommend you put all children in the rear seats, if you must use the front passenger seat for a child, slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible and make sure any child-restraint system is secured properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Always wear your seat belt and make sure all occupants are properly restrained:
Not wearing a seat belt is extremely dangerous. During a collision, occupants not wearing seat belts could hit someone or things inside the vehicle or even be thrown out of the vehicle. They could be seriously injured or even killed. In the same collision, occupants wearing seat belts would be much safer.

Do not wear twisted seat belts:
Twisted seat belts are dangerous. In a collision, the full width of the belt is not available to absorb the impact. This puts more force on the bones beneath the belt, which could cause serious injury or death.

Never use one seat belt on more than one person at a time:
Using one seat belt for more than one person at a time is dangerous. A seat belt used in this way cannot spread the impact forces properly and the two passengers could be crushed together and seriously injured or even killed. Never use one belt for more than one person at a time and always operate the vehicle with each occupant properly restrained.

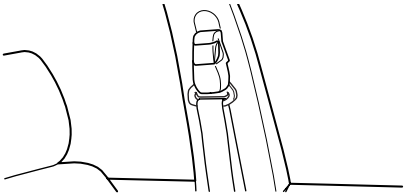
Do not operate a vehicle with a damaged seat belt:
Using a damaged seat belt is dangerous. An accident could damage the belt webbing of the seat belt in use. A damaged seat belt cannot provide adequate protection in a collision. Have an Authorized Mazda Dealer inspect all seat belt systems in use during an accident before they are used again.

Have your seat belts changed immediately if the pretensioner or load limiter has been expended:
One or both front air bags may deploy, and the corresponding pretensioner(s) may also deploy at the same time. Like the air bags, the seat belt pretensioners will only function once. While it is safer to use a post-crash (a seat belt that was used in an accident) than no seat belt at all, using a seat belt with an expended pretensioner or load limiter loaded reduces the safety available to you. If the seat belt pretensioners are not replaced, the risk of injury in a collision will increase. Expended seat belt pretensioners and air bags must be replaced after any collision which caused them to deploy. Additionally, the load limiter will only limit loads on the chest once in a collision and this is another reason to have the front seat belts inspected. Always have an Authorized Mazda Dealer inspect the seat belt pretensioners and air bags after any collision.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Belt retraction may become difficult if the belts and rings are soiled, so try to keep them clean. For more details about cleaning the seat belts, refer to "Cleaning the Lap/Shoulder Belt Webbing" (page 8-64).



▼Pregnant Women and Persons with Serious Medical Conditions

Pregnant women should always wear seat belts. Ask your doctor for specific recommendations.
The lap belt should be worn SNUGLY AND AS LOW AS POSSIBLE OVER THE HIPS. The shoulder belt should be worn across your shoulder properly, but never across the stomach area.
Persons with serious medical conditions also should wear seat belts. Check with your doctor for any special instructions regarding specific medical conditions.

▼Emergency Locking Mode

In the emergency locking mode, the belt remains comfortable on the occupant and the retractor will lock in position during a collision. When the seat belt is fastened, it will always be in the emergency locking mode until it is switched to automatic locking mode by pulling it all the way out to its full length. If the belt feels tight and hinders comfortable movement while the vehicle is stopped or in motion, it may be in the automatic locking mode because the belt has been pulled too far out. To return the belt to the more comfortable emergency locking mode, wait until the vehicle has stopped in a safe, level area, retract the belt fully to convert it back to emergency locking mode and then extend it around you again.
If the belt is locked and cannot be pulled out, retract the belt once, and then try pulling it out slowly. If this fails, pull the belt strongly one time and loosen, then pull it out again slowly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Automatic Locking Mode

Always use the automatic locking mode to keep the child-restraint system from shifting to an unsafe position in the event of an accident. To enable seat belt automatic locking mode, pull it all the way out and connect it as instructed on the child-restraint system. It will retract down to the child-restraint system and stay locked on it. See the section on child restraint (page 2-27).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

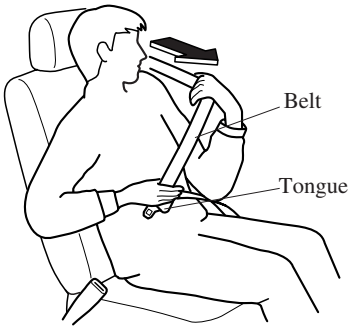
Seat Belt (Except Center-Rear Position)

NOTE

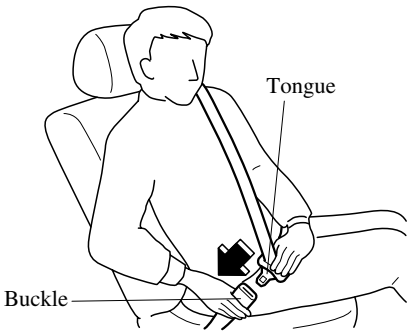
When using the center-rear seat belt, refer to "Center-Rear Position Seat Belt" (page 2-21).

▼Fastening the Seat Belt

1. Grasp the seat belt tongue.
2. Slowly pull out the lap/shoulder belt.



3. Insert the seat belt tongue into the seat belt buckle until you hear a click sound.

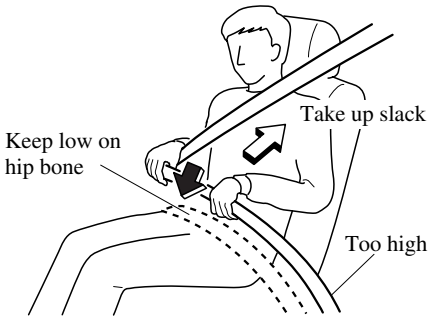


⚠ WARNING

Positioning the Shoulder Portion of the Seat Belt:

Improper positioning of the shoulder portion of the seat belt is dangerous. Always make sure the shoulder portion of the seat belt is positioned across your shoulder and near your neck, but never under your arm, on your neck, or on your upper arm.

4. Position the lap belt as low as possible, not on the abdominal area, then adjust the shoulder belt so that it fits snugly against your body.



⚠ WARNING

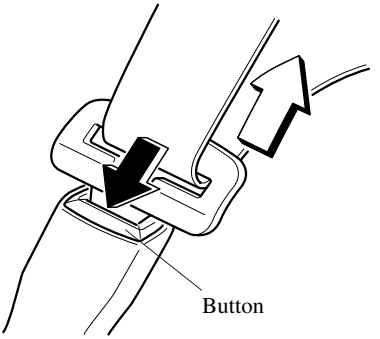
Positioning the Lap Portion of the Seat Belt:

The lap portion of the seat belt worn too high is dangerous. In a collision, this would concentrate the impact force directly on the abdominal area, causing serious injury. Wear the lap portion of the belt snugly and as low as possible.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Unfastening the Seat Belt

Depress the button on the seat belt buckle. If the belt does not fully retract, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Then make sure it remains untwisted as it retracts.

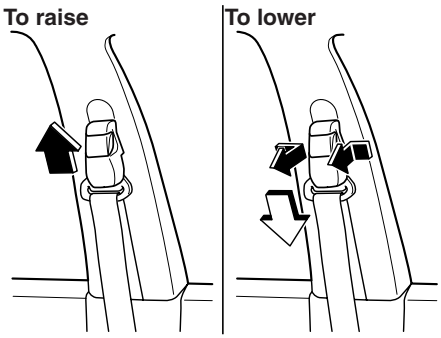


NOTE

If a belt does not fully retract, inspect it for kinks and twists. If it is still not retracting properly, have it inspected at an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

▼Front Shoulder Belt Adjuster

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt if the seat belt touches your neck, or if it crosses your arm instead of your shoulder. To raise the shoulder belt adjuster, push the adjuster up. To lower the shoulder belt adjuster, pull the adjuster and slide it down. Make sure the adjuster is locked.



⚠ WARNING

Positioning the Shoulder Portion of the Seat Belt:

Improper positioning of the shoulder portion of the seat belt is dangerous. Always make sure the shoulder portion of the seat belt is positioned across your shoulder and near your neck, but never under your arm, on your neck, or on your upper arm.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Front Seat Belt Pretensioner and Load Limiting Systems

For optimum protection, the driver and front passenger seat belts are equipped with pretensioner and load limiting systems. For both these systems to work properly you must wear the seat belt properly.

Pretensioners:
In moderate or severe frontal or near-frontal accidents, the front air bag and pretensioner systems deploy simultaneously. The front seat belt retractors remove slack quickly as the air bags are expanding.
In addition, the pretensioner system for the front passenger, like the front passenger air bag, is designed to only deploy in accordance with the total seated weight on the front passenger seat. Any time the air bags and seat belt pretensioners have fired they must be replaced. For details, refer to the front passenger seat weight sensors (page 2-48).

Load limiter:
The load limiting system releases belt webbing in a controlled manner to reduce belt force on the occupant's chest. While the most severe load on a seat belt occurs in frontal collisions, the load limiter has an automatic mechanical function and can activate in any accident mode with sufficient occupant movement.
Even if the pretensioners have not fired, the load limiting function must be checked by an Authorized Mazda Dealer after any collision.

⚠ WARNING

Wear seat belts only as recommended in this owner's manual:

Incorrect positioning of the driver and front passenger seat belts is dangerous. Without proper positioning, the pretensioner and load limiting systems cannot provide adequate protection in an accident and this could result in serious injury. For more details about wearing seat belts, refer to "Fastening the seat belts" (page 2-17).

Have your seat belts changed immediately if the pretensioner or load limiter has been expended:

One or both front air bags may deploy, and the corresponding pretensioner(s) may also deploy at the same time. Like the air bags, the seat belt pretensioners will only function once. While it is safer to use a post-crash (a seat belt that was used in an accident) than no seat belt at all, using a seat belt with an expended pretensioner or load limiter loaded reduces the safety available to you. If the seat belt pretensioners are not replaced, the risk of injury in a collision will increase. Expended seat belt pretensioners and air bags must be replaced after any collision which caused them to deploy. Additionally, the load limiter will only limit loads on the chest once in a collision and this is another reason to have the front seat belts inspected. Always have an Authorized Mazda Dealer inspect the seat belt pretensioners and air bags after any collision.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not modify the components or wiring, or use electronic testing devices on the pretensioner system:

Modifying the components or wiring of the pretensioner system, including the use of electronic testing devices is dangerous. You could accidentally activate it or make it inoperable which would prevent it from activating in an accident. The occupants or repairers could be seriously injured.

Properly dispose of the pretensioner system:

Improper disposal of the pretensioner system or a vehicle with non-deactivated pretensioners is dangerous. Unless all safety procedures are followed, injury could result. Ask an Authorized Mazda Dealer how to safely dispose of the pretensioner system or how to scrap a pretensioner-equipped vehicle.

NOTE

- *The pretensioner system will activate in a moderate or greater frontal or near-frontal collision. The pretensioner system for the front passenger is designed to only deploy in accordance with the total seated weight on the front passenger seat. It will not activate in most rollovers, side or rear impacts.*
- *Some smoke (non-toxic gas) will be released when the air bags and pretensioners deploy. This does not indicate a fire. This gas normally has no effect on occupants, however, those with sensitive skin may experience light skin irritation. If residue from the deployment of the air bags or the front pretensioner system gets on the skin or in the eyes, wash it off as soon as possible.*

▼Air Bag/Front Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light

If the air bag/front seat belt pretensioner system is working properly, the warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or after the engine is cranked. The warning light turns off after a specified period of time.

A system malfunction is indicated if the warning light constantly illuminates or does not illuminate at all when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position. If any of these occur, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible. The system may not work in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

Never tamper with the air bag/ pretensioner systems and always have an Authorized Mazda Dealer perform all servicing and repairs:

Self-servicing or tampering with the systems is dangerous. An air bag/ pretensioner could accidentally activate or become disabled causing serious injury or death.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Air Bag/Front Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep

If a malfunction is detected in the air bag/front seat belt pretensioner systems and the warning light, a warning beep sound will be heard for about 5 seconds every minute.

The air bag and seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sound will continue to be heard for approximately 35 minutes. Have your vehicle inspected at an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.

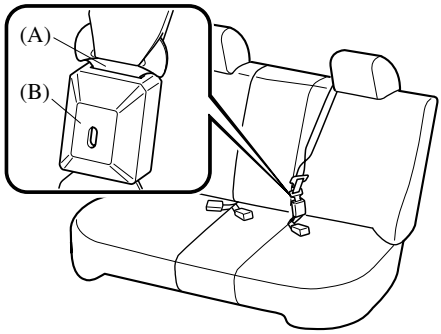
⚠ WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with the air bag/front seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding:

Driving the vehicle with the air bag/front seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding is dangerous. In a collision, the air bags and the front seat belt pretensioner system will not deploy and this could result in death or serious injury. Contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer to have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible.

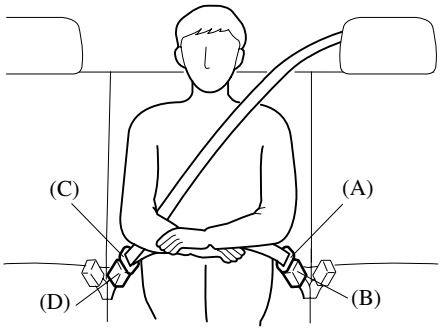
Center-Rear Position Seat Belt (3-Point Type)

Before using the center-rear lap/shoulder belt make sure tongue (A) and anchor buckle (B) are fastened.



▼Fastening the Seat Belt

1. Grasp the tongue (C).
2. Slowly pull out the lap/shoulder belt.
3. Insert the tongue (C) into the buckle (D) until you hear a click.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Fastening the Center-Rear Seat Belt with Only One Buckle:

Fastening the center-rear seat belt with only one buckle is dangerous. If only one pair of seat belt tongue and buckle, either tongue (A) and anchor buckle (B) or tongue (C) and anchor buckle (D), is fastened, the seat belt cannot provide full protection. In a sudden stop or collision, the user could slide under the belt and suffer serious injuries. Always make sure that both pairs of seat belt tongues and buckles are fastened properly.

Positioning the Shoulder Portion of the Seat Belt:

Improper positioning of the shoulder portion of the seat belt is dangerous. Always make sure the shoulder portion of the seat belt is positioned across your shoulder and near your neck, but never under your arm, on your neck, or on your upper arm.

4. Position the lap belt as low as possible, not on the abdominal area, then adjust the shoulder belt so that it fits snugly against your body.

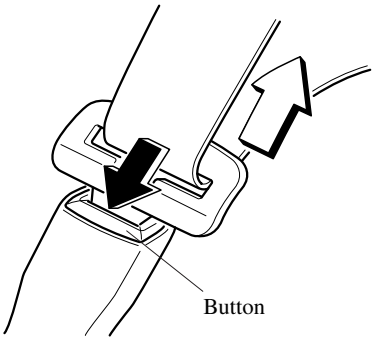
⚠ WARNING

Positioning the Lap Portion of the Seat Belt:

The lap portion of the seat belt worn too high is dangerous. In a collision, this would concentrate the impact force directly on the abdominal area, causing serious injury. Wear the lap portion of the belt snugly and as low as possible.

▼Unfastening the Seat Belt

Depress the button on the buckle. If the belt does not fully retract, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Then make sure it remains untwisted as it retracts.

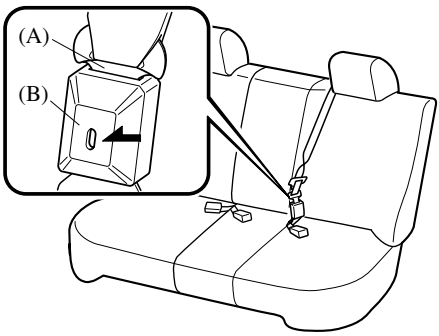


NOTE

If a belt does not fully retract, inspect it for kinks and twists. If it is still not retracting properly, have it inspected at an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

▼Unfastening the Lap Portion of the Seat Belt

Insert a small object such as a key in the anchor buckle (B) slot.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Always unfasten the lap portion of the belt before folding the left-rear seatback. Leaving the lap portion of the belt fastened could cause damage to the seat belt, buckle and seatback.

NOTE

To encourage rear seat passengers to wear their seat belts, we suggest leaving the center-rear lap position of the belt fastened at all times except when folding the rear seat forward.

▼Fastening the Lap Portion of the Seat Belt

Grasp tongue (A) and insert it into the anchor buckle (B) until you hear a click. It is now secure for passenger use.

NOTE

After returning the left-rear seatback to its upright position, fasten the lap portion of the belt.

▼Stowing and pulling out the Center-Rear Position Seat Belt

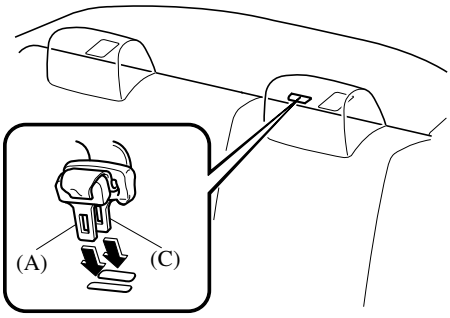
The center-rear position seat belt can be stowed using the following procedure.

⚠ CAUTION

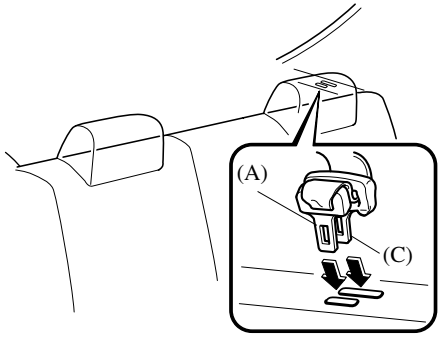
When stowing the seat belt, make sure the belt is locked securely into the recess. If the seat belt is not properly stowed, it might get caught in the seats and be damaged.

To stow the seat belt, retract the belt, put tongues (A) and (C) together and insert them into the recess.

Sedan (Behind head restraint on left side)



Hatchback (Left side of luggage compartment)



To pull out the seat belt, slide tongues with your finger, and slowly pull out the seat belt from the recess.

NOTE

Pulling the seat belt all the way out will switch it to automatic locking mode. If automatic locking mode is not needed, retract the seat belt fully to convert it back to emergency locking mode.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Seat Belt Extender

If your seat belt is not long enough, even when fully extended, a seat belt extender may be available to you at no charge from your Authorized Mazda Dealer.
This extender will be only for you and for the particular vehicle and seat. Even if it plugs into other seat belts, it may not hold in the critical moment of a crash.
When ordering an extender, only order one that provides the necessary additional length to fasten the seat belt properly.
Please contact your Authorized Mazda Dealer for more information.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a seat belt extender unless it is necessary:

Using a seat belt extender when not necessary is dangerous. The seat belt will be too long and not fit properly. In an accident, the seat belt will not provide adequate protection and you could be seriously injured. Only use the extender when it is required to fasten the seat belt properly.

Do not use an improper extender:

Using a seat belt extender that is for another person or a different vehicle or seat is dangerous. The seat belt will not provide adequate protection and the user could be seriously injured in an accident. Only use the extender provided for you and for the particular vehicle and seat. NEVER use the extender in a different vehicle or seat. If you sell your Mazda, do not leave your seat belt extender in the vehicle. It could be used accidentally by the new owner of the vehicle. After removing the seat belt extender, discard it. Never use the seat belt extender in any other vehicle you may own in the future.

Do not use an extender that is too long:

Using an extender that is too long is dangerous. The seat belt will not fit properly. In an accident, the seat belt will not provide adequate protection and you could be seriously injured. Do not use the extender or choose one shorter in length if the distance between the extender's buckle and the center of the user's body is less than 15 cm (6 in).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE
When not in use, remove the seat belt extender and store it in the vehicle. If the seat belt extender is left connected, the seat belt extender might get damaged as it will not retract with the rest of the seat belt and can easily fall out of the door when not in use and be damaged. In addition, the seat belt warning light will not illuminate and function properly.

Seat Belt Warning Light/Beep

The seat belt warning light illuminates and a beep sound will be heard if the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

Conditions of operation

Condition	Result
The driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.	The warning light flashes and a beep sound will be heard for about 6 seconds.
The driver's seat belt is fastened while the warning light and the beep sound are activated.	The warning light turns off and the beep sound stops.
The driver's seat belt is fastened before the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.	The warning light will not illuminate and the beep sound will not be heard.

▼Belt Minder

NOTE
The belt minder can be deactivated. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer to deactivate or restore the seat belt minder.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driver seated/Front passenger not seated

The belt minder is a supplemental warning to the seat belt warning function. If the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, the warning light/beep operates to give you further reminders according to the chart below.

Condition	Vehicle speed			
	Between 0 — 20 km/h (0 — 12 mph)		20 km/h (12 mph) or more	
Seat belt	○	×	○	×
Indicator		Illuminated		Flashing
Beep				♪

○ : Fastened
× : Unfastened
Illuminated : Illuminated
Flashing : Flashing
♪ : Beep

Once the beep sound is heard, it continues sounding even if the vehicle speed lowers to 20 km/h (12 mph) or less until the seatbelt is fastened or the beep sound period has passed.

Driver seated/Front passenger seated

The seat belt warning function reminds the front passenger to fasten the seat belt according to the chart below.

Condition	Vehicle speed							
	Between 0 — 20 km/h (0 — 12 mph)				20 km/h (12 mph) or more			
Seat belt (Driver)	○	○	×	×	○	○	×	×
Seat belt (Passenger)	○	×	○	×	○	×	○	×
Indicator			Illuminated	Illuminated		Illuminated	Flashing	Flashing
Beep							♪	♪

○ : Fastened
× : Unfastened
Illuminated : Illuminated
Flashing : Flashing
♪ : Beep

Placing heavy items on the front passenger seat may cause the front passenger seat belt warning function to operate depending on the weight of the item.

Once the beep sound is heard, it continues sounding even if the vehicle speed lowers to 20 km/h (12 mph) or less until the seatbelt is fastened or the beep sound period has passed.

NOTE

- *To allow the front passenger seat weight sensor to function properly, do not place and sit on an additional seat cushion on the front passenger seat. The sensor may not function properly because the additional seat cushion could cause sensor interference.*
- *When a small child sits on the front passenger seat, it is possible that neither the warning light nor the warning beep operate.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Child Restraint Precautions

Mazda strongly urges the use of child-restraint systems for children small enough to use them.

You are required by law to use a child-restraint system for children in the U.S. and Canada. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children riding in your vehicle.

Whatever child-restraint system you consider, please pick the appropriate one for the age and size of the child, obey the law and follow the instructions that come with the individual child-restraint system.

A child who has outgrown child-restraint systems should sit in the rear and use seat belts, both lap and shoulder. If the shoulder belt crosses the neck or face, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle in the outboard seats, and towards the buckle on the right if the child is seated on the center seat.

Statistics confirm that the rear seat is the best place for all children up to 12 years of age, and more so with a supplemental restraint system (air bags).

A rear-facing child-restraint system should **NEVER** be used on the front seat with the air bag system activated. The front passenger's seat is also the least preferred seat for other child-restraint systems.

To reduce the chance of injuries caused by deployment of the front passenger air bag, the front passenger seat weight sensors work as a part of the supplemental restraint system. This system deactivates the front passenger front and side air bags and also the front passenger seat belt pretensioner system when the total seated weight on the front passenger seat is less than approximately 30 kg (66 lb).

When an infant or small child sits on the front passenger seat, the system shuts off the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system, so make sure the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates.

Even if the front passenger air bag is shut off, Mazda strongly recommends that children be properly restrained and child-restraint systems of all kinds are properly secured on the rear seats which are the best place for children.

For more details, refer to “Front passenger seat weight sensors” (page 2-48).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Child Restraint

⚠ WARNING

Use the correct size child-restraint system:

For effective protection in vehicle accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or child-restraint system depending on age and size. If not, the child could be seriously injured or even killed in an accident.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and always keep the child-restraint system buckled down:

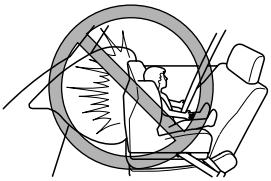
An unsecured child-restraint system is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Make sure any child-restraint system is properly secured in place according to the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions. When not in use, remove it from the vehicle or fasten it with a seat belt, or latch it down to BOTH LATCH lower anchors for LATCH child-restraint systems and the corresponding tether anchor.

Always secure a child in a proper child-restraint system:

Holding a child in your arms while the vehicle is moving is extremely dangerous. No matter how strong the person may be, he or she cannot hold onto a child in a sudden stop or collision and it could result in serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Even in a moderate accident, the child may be exposed to air bag forces that could result in serious injury or death to the child, or the child may be slammed into an adult, causing injury to both child and adult.

Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system in the front seat with an air bag that could deploy:

Rear-facing child-restraint systems on the front seat are particularly dangerous even though you may feel assured that a front passenger air bag will not deploy based on the fact that the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates. The child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Seating a child in a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is dangerous:

Vehicles equipped with front passenger seat weight sensors are also equipped with a front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light (page 2-35). Even with the front passenger seat weight sensors, if you must use the front passenger seat for children, seating a child in a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat under the following conditions increases the danger of the front passenger air bag deploying and could result in serious injury or death to the child.

- *The total seated weight of the child with the child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is approximately 30 kg (66 lb) or more with a child in the child-restraint system.*
- *Luggage or other items are placed on the seat with the child in the child-restraint system.*
- *A rear passenger or luggage push or pull down on the front passenger seatback.*
- *A rear passenger puts their feet on the front seat rails.*
- *Luggage or other items are placed on the seatback or hung on the head restraint.*
- *The seat is washed.*
- *Liquids are spilled on the seat.*
- *The front passenger seat is moved backward, pushing into luggage or other items placed behind it.*
- *The front passenger seatback contacts the rear seat.*
- *Luggage or other items are placed between the front passenger seat and driver seat.*
- *Any accessories, which might increase the total seated weight on the front passenger seat, are attached to the front passenger seat.*

The designated positions with seat belts on the rear seats are the safest places for children. Always use seat belts and child restraints.

Do not allow a child or anyone to lean over or against the side window of a vehicle with side and curtain air bags:

It is dangerous to allow anyone to lean over or against the side window, the area of the front passenger seat, the front and rear window pillars and the roof edge along both sides from which the side and curtain air bags deploy, even if a child-restraint system is used. The impact of inflation from a side or curtain air bag could cause serious injury or death to an out of position child. Furthermore, leaning over or against the front door could block the side and curtain air bags and eliminate the advantages of supplemental protection. With the front air bag and the additional side air bag that comes out of the front seat, the rear seat is always a better location for children. Take special care not to allow a child to lean over or against the side window, even if the child is seated in a child-restraint system.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Never use one seat belt on more than one person at a time:

Using one seat belt for more than one person at a time is dangerous. A seat belt used in this way cannot spread the impact forces properly and the two passengers could be crushed together and seriously injured or even killed. Never use one belt for more than one person at a time and always operate the vehicle with each occupant properly restrained.

⚠ CAUTION

A seat belt or child-restraint system can become very hot in a closed vehicle during warm weather. To avoid burning yourself or a child, check them before you or your child touches them.

NOTE

Your Mazda is equipped with LATCH lower anchors for attachment of specially designed LATCH child-restraint systems in the rear seat. When using these anchors to secure a child-restraint system, refer to "LATCH Child-Restraint Systems" (page 2-37).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Installing Child-Restraint Systems

Accident statistics reveal that a child is safer in the rear seat. The front passenger's seat is clearly the worst choice for any child under 12, and with rear-facing child-restraint systems it is clearly unsafe due to air bags.

Some child-restraint systems now come with tethers and therefore must be installed on the seats that take tethers to be effective. In your Mazda, tethered child-restraint systems can only be accommodated in the three positions on the rear seat.

Even if your vehicle is equipped with front passenger seat weight sensors (page 2-48), which automatically deactivates the front passenger air bag, a rear seat is the safest place for a child of any age or size.

Some child-restraint systems also employ specially designed LATCH attachments; refer to "LATCH Child-Restraint Systems" (page 2-37).

⚠ WARNING

Tethered Child-Restraint Systems Work Only on Tether-Equipped Rear Seats:

Installation of a tether equipped child-restraint system in the front passenger's seat defeats the safety design of the system and will result in an increased chance of serious injury if the child-restraint system goes forward without benefit of being tethered.

Place tether equipped child-restraint systems where there are tether anchors.

▼Rear Seat Child-Restraint System Installation

Follow these instructions when using a child-restraint system, unless you are attaching a LATCH-equipped child-restraint system to the rear LATCH lower anchors. Refer to "LATCH Child-Restraint Systems" (page 2-37).

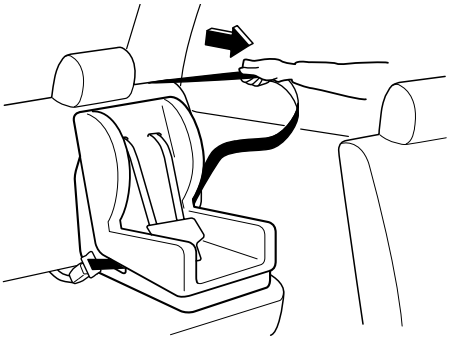
NOTE

Follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully. If you are not sure whether you have a LATCH system or tether, check in the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions and follow them accordingly. Depending on the type of child-restraint system, it may use LATCH system instead of seat belts or if the belt goes across the child's chest, may recommend against using automatic locking mode.

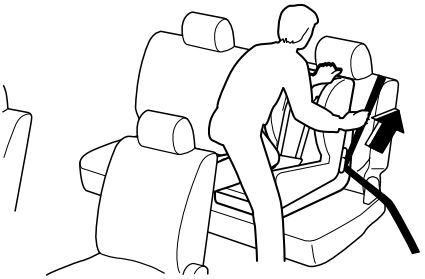
1. Make sure the seatback is securely latched by pushing it back until it is fully locked.
2. Secure the child-restraint system with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt. See the manufacturer's instructions on the child-restraint system for belt routing instructions.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. To get the retractor into the automatic locking mode, pull the shoulder belt portion of the seat belt until the entire length of the belt is out of the retractor.



4. Push the child-restraint system firmly into the vehicle seat. Be sure the belt retracts as snugly as possible. A clicking noise from the retractor will be heard during retraction if the system is in the automatic locking mode. If the belt does not lock the seat down tight, repeat this step.

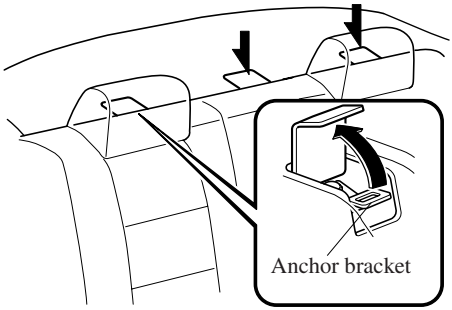


NOTE

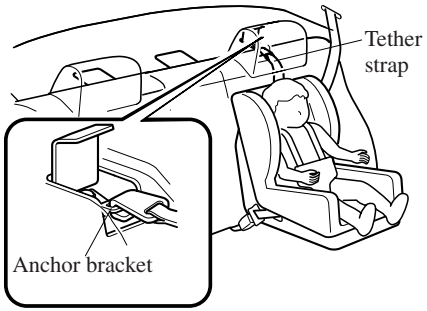
Inspect this function before each use of the child-restraint system. You should not be able to pull the shoulder belt out of the retractor while the system is in the automatic locking mode. When you remove the child-restraint system, be sure the belt fully retracts to return the system to emergency locking mode before occupants use the seat belts.

5. If your child-restraint system requires the use of a tether strap, refer to the manufacturer's instructions to hook and tighten the tether strap after raising the head restraint (except center position).

Anchor bracket location (4 Door)

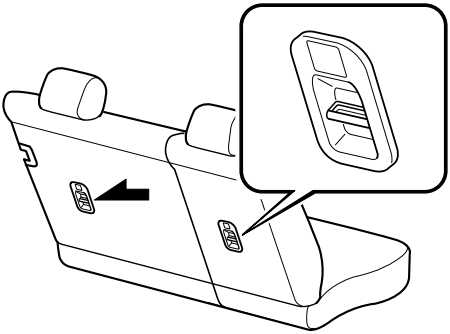


Tether strap position (4 Door)

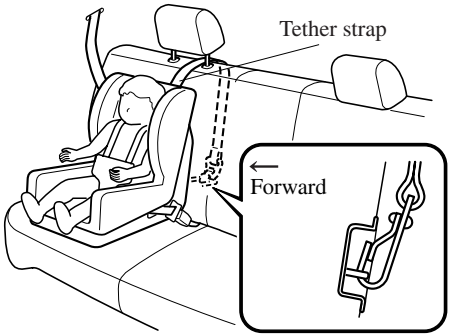


Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

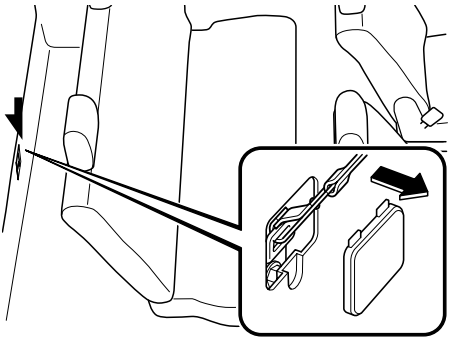
Anchor bracket location (5 Door outboard position)



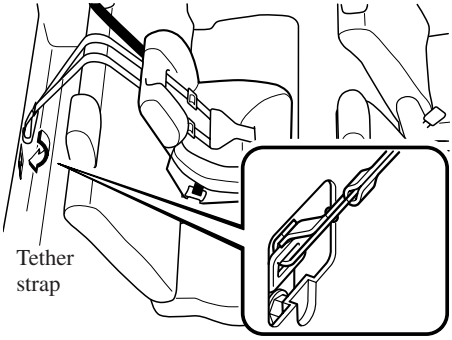
Tether strap position (5 Door outboard position)



Anchor bracket location (5 Door center position)



Tether strap position (5 Door center position)



⚠ WARNING

Use the tether and tether anchor only for a child-restraint system:

Using the tether or tether anchor to secure anything but a child-restraint system is dangerous. This could weaken or damage the tether or tether anchor and result in injury.

Always route the tether strap between the head restraint and the seatback (Except center position):

Routing the tether strap on top of the head restraint is dangerous. In a collision the tether strap could slide off the head restraint and loosen the child-restraint system. The child-restraint system could move which may result in death or injury to the child.

Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:

Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼If You Must Use the Front Seat for Children

If you cannot put all children in the rear seat, at least put the smallest children in the rear and be sure the largest child up front uses the shoulder belt over the shoulder.
NEVER put a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat, even with a seat weight sensor equipped vehicle.
This seat is also not set up for tethered child-restraint systems, put them in one of the rear seat positions set up with tether anchors.
Likewise the LATCH child-restraint system cannot be secured in the front passenger's seat and should be used in the rear seat.
Do not allow anyone to sleep against the side window if you have an optional side and curtain air bag, it could cause serious injuries to an out of position occupant. As children more often sleep in cars, it is better to put them in the rear seat. If installing the child-restraint system on the front seat is unavoidable, follow these instructions when using a front-facing child-restraint system in the front passenger's seat.

NOTE

- *To check if your front seats have side air bags:*
  Mazda vehicles equipped with side air bag will have a "SRS AIRBAG" tag on the outboard shoulder of the front seats.
- *To check if your vehicle has curtain air bags:*
  Mazda vehicles equipped with curtain air bag will have an "SRS AIRBAG" marking on the window pillars along the roof edge.

⚠ WARNING

Always move the front passenger seat as far back as possible if installing a front-facing child-restraint system on it is unavoidable:

As your vehicle has front air bags and doubly so if your vehicle has side air bags, a front-facing child-restraint system should be put on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable.
Even if the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates, always move the seat as far back as possible, because the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child.

Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system in the front seat with an air bag that could deploy:

Rear-facing child-restraint systems on the front seat are particularly dangerous.
Even in a moderate collision, the child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child.
Even though you may feel assured that the front passenger air bag will not deploy based on the fact that the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates.

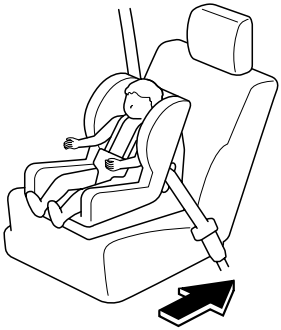
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not allow a child or anyone to lean over or against the side window of a vehicle with side and curtain air bags:

It is dangerous to allow anyone to lean over or against the side window, the area of the front passenger seat, the front and rear window pillars and the roof edge along both sides from which the side and curtain air bags deploy, even if a child-restraint system is used. The impact of inflation from a side or curtain air bag could cause serious injury or death to an out of position child. Furthermore, leaning over or against the front door could block the side and curtain air bags and eliminate the advantages of supplemental protection. With the front air bag and the additional side air bag that comes out of the front seat, the rear seat is always a better location for children. Take special care not to allow a child to lean over or against the side window, even if the child is seated in a child-restraint system.

▼Front Passenger's Seat Child-Restraint System Installation

1. Slide the seat as far back as possible.



2. Secure the child-restraint system with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt. See the manufacturer's instructions on the child-restraint system for belt routing instructions.
3. To get the retractor into the automatic locking mode, pull the shoulder belt portion of the seat belt until the entire length of the belt is out of the retractor.
4. Push the child-restraint system firmly into the vehicle seat. Be sure the belt retracts as snugly as possible. A clicking noise from the retractor will be heard during retraction if the system is in automatic locking mode. If the belt does not lock the seat down tight, repeat the previous step and also this one.

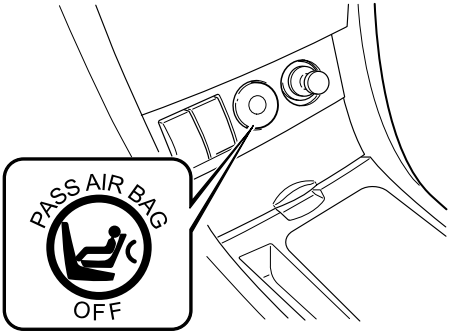
NOTE

- *Inspect this function before each use of the child-restraint system. You should not be able to pull the shoulder belt out of the retractor while the system is in the automatic locking mode. When you remove the child-restraint system, be sure the belt fully retracts to return the system to emergency locking mode before occupants use the seat belts.*
- *Follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully. Depending on the type of child-restraint system, it may not employ seat belts which are in automatic locking mode.*

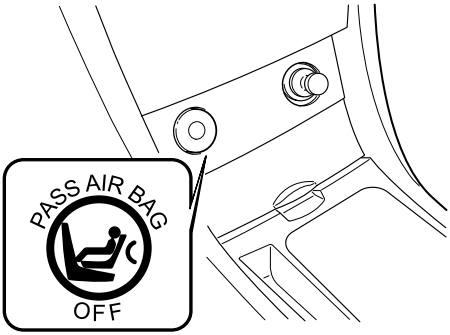
5. Make sure the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates after installing a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat.
Refer to Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light on page 2-48.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

With seat warmer



Without seat warmer



⚠ WARNING

Do not seat a child in a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat if the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light does not illuminate:

*While it is always better to install any child-restraint system on the rear seat, it is imperative that a child-restraint system **ONLY** be used on the front passenger seat if the deactivation indicator light illuminates when the child is seated in the child-restraint system (page 2-48). Seating a child in a child-restraint system installed on the front passenger seat with the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light not illuminated is dangerous. If this indicator light does not illuminate even when the total seated weight is less than approximately 30 kg (66 lb), this means that the front passenger front and side air bags, and seat belt pretensioner are ready for deployment. If an accident were to deploy an air bag, a child in a child-restraint system sitting in the front passenger seat could be seriously injured or killed. If the indicator light does not illuminate after seating a child in a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat, seat a child in a child-restraint system on the rear seat and consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

LATCH Child-Restraint Systems

Your Mazda is equipped with LATCH lower anchors for attachment of specially designed LATCH child-restraint systems in the rear seat. Both anchors must be used, otherwise the seat will bounce around and put the child in danger. Most LATCH child-restraint systems must also be used in conjunction with a tether to be effective. If they have a tether you must use it to better assure your child's safety.

⚠ WARNING

Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the use of the child-restraint system:

An unsecured child-restraint system is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Make sure the child-restraint system is properly secured in place according to the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Never attach two child-restraint systems to the same LATCH lower anchor:

Attaching two child-restraint systems to the same LATCH lower anchor is dangerous. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child-restraint system attachments, and it may break, causing serious injury or death. If you use the seat position for another child-restraint system when an outboard LATCH position is occupied, use the center seat belts instead, and the tether if tether-equipped.

Make sure the child-restraint system is properly secured:

An unsecured child-restraint system is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions on belt routing to secure the seat just as you would with a child in it so that nobody is tempted to put a child in an improperly secured seat later on. When not in use, remove it from the vehicle or fasten it with a seat belt, or latch it down to BOTH LATCH lower anchors for LATCH child-restraint systems.

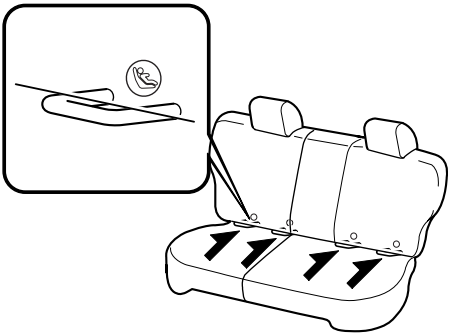
Make sure there are no seat belts or foreign objects near or around the LATCH child-restraint system:

Not following the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when installing the child-restraint system is dangerous. If seat belts or a foreign object prevent the child-restraint system from being securely attached to the LATCH lower anchors and the child-restraint system is installed improperly, the child-restraint system could move in a sudden stop or collision causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. When installing the child-restraint system, make sure there are no seat belts or foreign objects near or around the LATCH lower anchors. Always follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Child-Restraint System Installation Procedure (Rear Outboard Seats)

1. Make sure the seatback is securely latched by pushing it back until it is fully locked.
2. Expand the area between the seat bottom and the seatback slightly to verify the locations of the LATCH lower anchors.

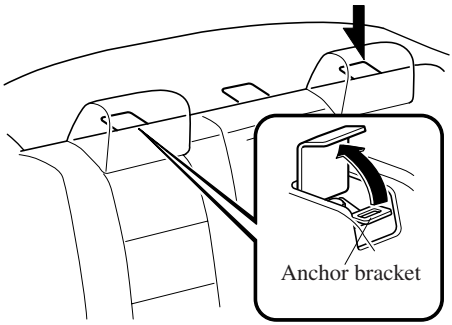


NOTE

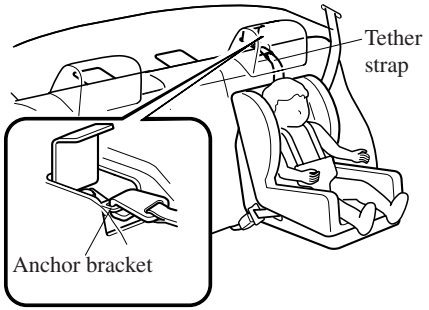
The markings above the LATCH lower anchors indicate the locations of LATCH lower anchors for the attachment of a child-restraint system.

3. Secure the child-restraint system using BOTH LATCH lower anchors, following the child-restraint system manufacturer's instruction. Pull on the child-restraint to be sure both anchors are engaged.
4. If your child-restraint system came equipped with a tether, that means it is very important to properly secure the tether for child safety. Please carefully follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when installing tethers.

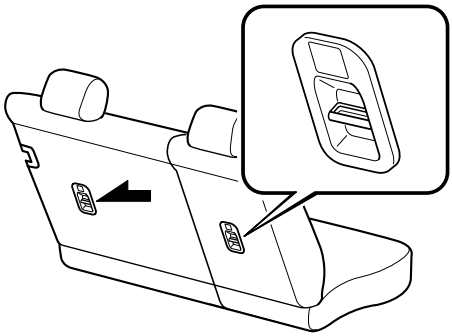
Anchor bracket location (4 Door)



Tether strap position (4 Door)

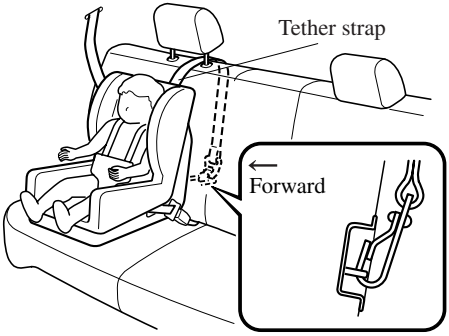


Anchor bracket location (5 Door)



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tether strap position (5 Door)



⚠ WARNING

Use the tether and tether anchor only for a child-restraint system:

Using the tether or tether anchor to secure anything but a child-restraint system is dangerous. This could weaken or damage the tether or tether anchor and result in injury.

Always route the tether strap between the head restraint and the seatback:

Routing the tether strap on top of the head restraint is dangerous. In a collision the tether strap could slide off the head restraint and loosen the child-restraint system. The child-restraint system could move which may result in death or injury to the child.

Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:

Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.

▼Child-Restraint System Installation Procedure (Rear Center Seat)

The LATCH lower anchors at the center of the rear seat are much further apart than the sets of LATCH lower anchors for child-restraint system installation at other seating positions. Child-restraint systems with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed on the center seating position. Some LATCH equipped child-restraint systems can be placed in the center position and will reach the nearest LATCH lower anchors which are 400 mm (15.75 in) apart. LATCH compatible child-restraint systems (with attachments on belt webbing) can be used at this seating position only if the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions state that the child-restraint system can be installed to LATCH lower anchors that are 400 mm (15.75 in) apart. Do not attach two child-restraint systems to the same LATCH lower anchor. If your child-restraint system has a tether, it must also be used for your child's optimum safety.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Child Restraint

⚠ WARNING

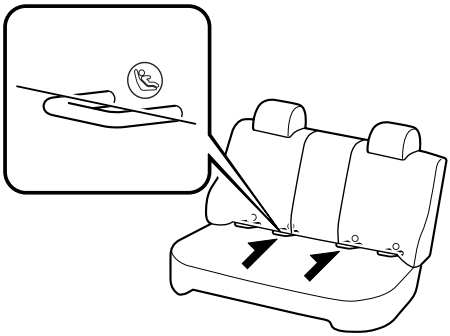
Use the tether and tether anchor only for a child-restraint system:

Using the tether or tether anchor to secure anything but a child-restraint system is dangerous. This could weaken or damage the tether or tether anchor and result in injury.

Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:

Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.

1. Make sure the seatback is securely latched by pushing it back until it is fully locked.
2. Expand the area between the seat bottom and the seatback slightly to verify the locations of the LATCH lower anchors.

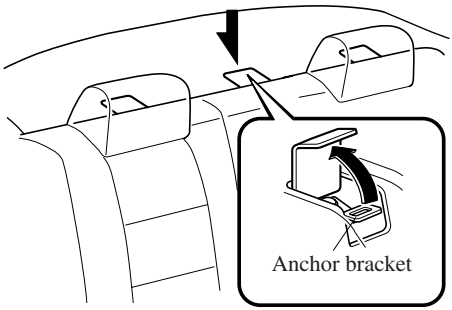


NOTE

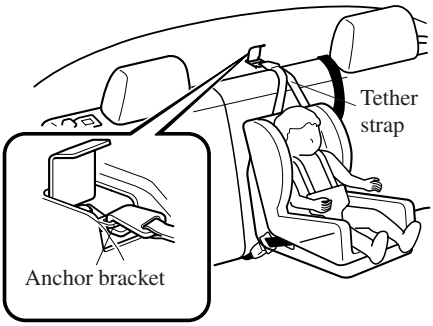
The markings above the LATCH lower anchors indicate the locations of LATCH lower anchors for the attachment of a child-restraint system.

3. Secure the child-restraint system using BOTH LATCH lower anchors, following the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Pull on the child-restraint to be sure both anchors are engaged.
4. If your child-restraint system came equipped with a tether, that means it is very important to properly secure the tether for child safety. Please carefully follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when installing tethers.

Anchor bracket location (4 Door)

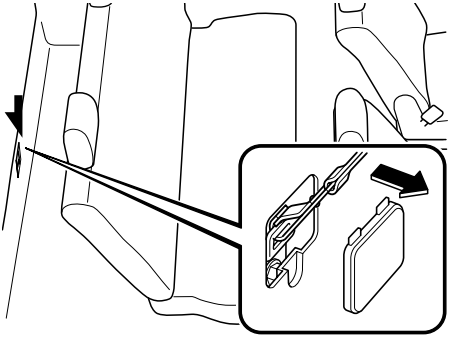


Tether strap position (4 Door)

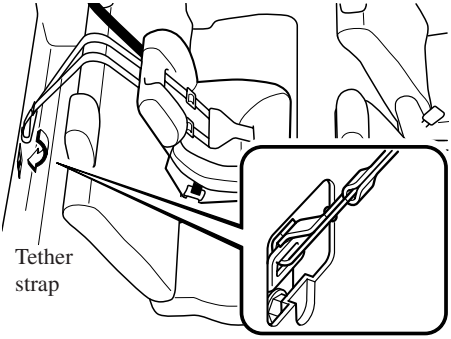


Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Anchor bracket location (5 Door)



Tether strap position (5 Door)



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS) Precautions

The front and side supplemental restraint systems (SRS) include up to 6 air bags. **You can locate the various air bags by the use of "SRS AIRBAG" location indicators.** These indicators are visible in the area where the air bags are installed.
The air bags are installed in the following locations:

- The steering wheel hub (driver air bag)
- The front passenger dashboard (front passenger air bag)
- The outboard sides of the front seatbacks (side air bags)*
- The front and rear window pillars, and the roof edge along both sides (curtain air bags)*

These systems operate independently depending on the type of accident encountered; if you have side and curtain air bags, the side and curtain air bags are not likely to deploy on both sides in the same accident because a vehicle is not often hit from both sides. The side and curtain air bags and the frontal air bag system will not normally deploy during the same type of accident unless a combination of frontal and side impacts occur.

The air bag supplemental restraint systems are designed to provide supplemental protection only in the front seats in certain situations and the rear outside passenger positions only in same-side collisions, so seat belts are always important in the following ways:

Without seat belt usage, the air bags cannot provide adequate protection during an accident. Seat belt usage is necessary to:
- Keep the occupant from being thrown into an inflating air bag.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries during an accident that is not designed for air bag inflation, such as roll-over or rear impact.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries in frontal or side collisions that are not severe enough to activate the air bags.
- Reduce the possibility of being thrown from your vehicle.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries to lower body and legs during an accident because the air bags provide no protection to these parts of the body.
- Hold the driver in a position which allows better control of the vehicle.

Small children must be protected by a child-restraint system as stipulated by law in every state and province. In certain states and provinces, larger children must use a child-restraint system (page 2-27).
Carefully consider which child-restraint system is necessary for your child and follow the installation directions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

* Some models.
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Seat belts must be worn in air bag equipped vehicles:

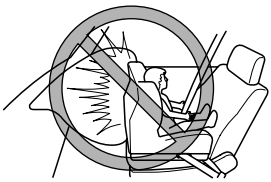
Depending only on the air bags for protection during an accident is dangerous. Alone, air bags may not prevent serious injuries. The appropriate air bags can be expected to inflate only in the first collision with frontal, near frontal or side forces that are at least moderate. Vehicle occupants should always wear seat belts.

Children should not ride in the front passenger seat:

Placing a child, 12 years or under, in the front seat is dangerous. The child could be hit by a deploying air bag and be seriously injured or even killed. Even if the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates, always move the front passenger seat as far back as possible. A sleeping child is more likely to lean against the door and be hit by the side air bag in a moderate, right-side collision. Whenever possible, always secure a child 12 years and under on the rear seat with an appropriate child-restraint system for the child's age and size.

Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system in the front seat with an air bag that could deploy:

Rear-facing child-restraint systems on the front seat are particularly dangerous even though you may feel assured that a front passenger air bag will not deploy based on the fact that the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates. The child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child.



Do not sit too close to the driver and front passenger air bags:

Sitting too close to the driver and front passenger air bag modules or placing hands or feet on them is extremely dangerous. The driver and front passenger air bags inflate with great force and speed. Serious injuries could occur if someone is too close. The driver should always hold onto only the rim of the steering wheel. The front seat passenger should keep both feet on the floor. Front seat occupants should adjust their seats as far back as possible and always sit upright against the seatbacks with seat belts worn properly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Sit in the center of the seat and wear seat belts properly:

Sitting too close to the side air bag modules or placing hands on them is extremely dangerous. The side air bags inflate with great force and speed directly out of the outboard side of the front seat and expand along the front door on the side the car is hit. Serious injury could occur if someone is sitting too close to the door or leaning against a window, or if rear seat occupants grab the sides of the front seatbacks. Furthermore, sleeping up against the door or hanging out the windows in the vehicle could block the side and curtain air bags and eliminate the advantages of supplemental protection. Give the side and curtain air bags room to work by sitting in the center of the seat while the vehicle is moving with seat belts worn properly.

Do not attach objects on or around the area where driver and front passenger air bags deploy:

Attaching an object to the driver and front passenger air bag modules or placing something in front of them is dangerous. In an accident, an object could interfere with air bag inflation and injure the occupants.

Do not attach objects on or around the area where a side air bag deploys:

Attaching things to the front seat in such a way as to cover the outboard side of the seat in any way is dangerous. In an accident the object could interfere with the side air bag, which inflates from the outboard side of the front seats, impeding the added protection of the side air bag system or redirecting the air bag in a way that is dangerous. Furthermore, the bag could be cut open releasing the gas.

Do not hang net bags, map pouches or backpacks with side straps on the front seats. Never use seat covers on the front seats. Always keep the side air bag modules in your front seats free to deploy in the event of a side collision.

Do not attach objects on or around the area where a curtain air bag deploys:

Attaching objects to the areas where the curtain air bag activates such as on the windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear window pillars and along the roof edge and assist grips is dangerous. In an accident the object could interfere with the curtain air bag, which inflates from the front and rear window pillars and along the roof edge, impeding the added protection of the curtain air bag system or redirecting the air bag in a way that is dangerous. Furthermore, the bag could be cut open releasing the gas.

Do not place hangers or any other objects on the assist grips. When hanging clothes, hang them on the coat hook directly. Always keep the curtain air bag modules free to deploy in the event of a side collision.

Do not place luggage or other objects under the front seats:

Placing luggage or other objects under the front seats is dangerous. The components essential to the supplemental restraint system could be damaged, and in the event of a side collision, the appropriate air bags may not deploy, which could result in death or serious injury. To prevent damage to the components essential to the supplemental restraint system, do not place luggage or other objects under the front seats.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not touch the components of the supplemental restraint system after the air bags have inflated:

Touching the components of the supplemental restraint system after the air bags have inflated is dangerous. Immediately after inflation, they are very hot. You could get burned.

Never install any front-end equipment to your vehicle:

Installation of front-end equipment, such as frontal protection bar (kangaroo bar, bull bar, push bar, or other similar devices), snowplow, or winches, is dangerous. The air bag crash sensor system could be affected. This could cause air bags to inflate unexpectedly, or it could prevent the air bags from inflating during an accident. Front occupants could be seriously injured.

Do not modify the suspension:

Modifying the vehicle suspension is dangerous. If the vehicle's height or the suspension is modified, the vehicle will be unable to accurately detect a collision resulting in incorrect or unexpected air bag deployment and the possibility of serious injuries.

Do not modify the supplemental restraint system:

Modifying the components or wiring of the supplemental restraint system is dangerous. You could accidentally activate it or make it inoperable. Do not make any modifications to the supplemental restraint system. This includes installing trim, badges, or anything else over the air bag modules. It also includes installing extra electrical equipment on or near system components or wiring. An Authorized Mazda Dealer can provide the special care needed in the removal and installation of front seats. It is important to protect the air bag wiring and connections to assure that the bags do not accidentally deploy, the driver seat slide position sensor and front passenger seat weight sensors are not damaged and that the seats retain an undamaged air bag connection.

NOTE

- *When an air bag deploys, a loud inflation noise can be heard and some smoke will be released. Neither is likely to cause injury, however, the texture of the air bags may cause light skin injuries on body parts not covered with clothing through friction.*
- *Should you sell your Mazda, we urge you to tell the new owner of its air bag systems and that familiarization with all instructions about them, from the Owner's Manual, is important.*

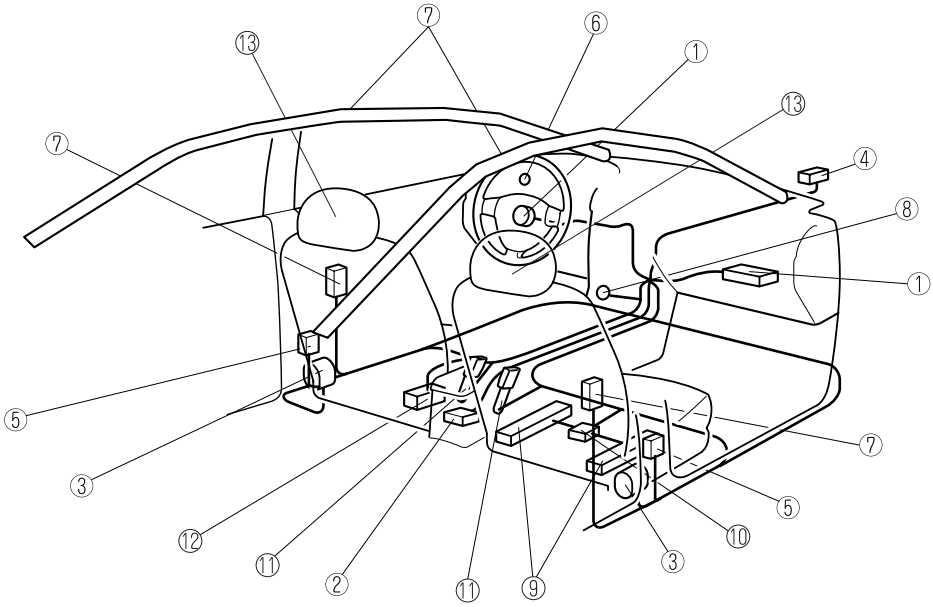
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Supplemental Restraint System Components

The supplemental restraint systems (SRS) have two basic subsystems:
- The air bag system with inflators and air bags.
- The electrical system with crash sensors and diagnostic module.

The air bags are mounted in the following locations:
- The steering wheel hub
- The front passenger dashboard
- The outboard sides of the front seatbacks*
- The front and rear window pillars, and the roof edge along both sides*

The air bags are out of sight until activated.



① Driver/Front passenger inflators and air bags
② Crash sensors, and diagnostic module (SAS unit)
③ Front seat belt pretensioners (page 2-19)
④ Front air bag sensor
⑤ Side crash sensors*
⑥ Air bag/front seat belt pretensioner system warning light
⑦ Side and curtain inflators and air bags*
⑧ Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light (page 2-48)
⑨ Front passenger seat weight sensors (page 2-48)
⑩ Front passenger seat weight sensor control module

*Some models.
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⑪ Driver and front passenger seat belt buckle switches (page 2-48)
⑫ Driver seat slide position sensor
⑬ Front seats

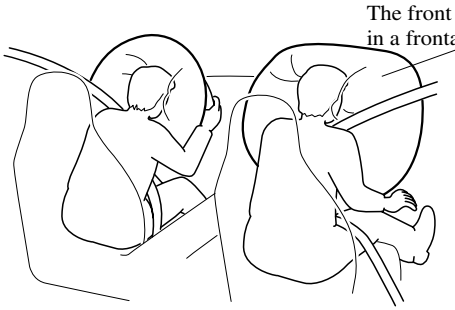
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

How the Air Bags Work

▼How the Front Air Bags Work

When air bag crash sensors detect a frontal impact of greater than moderate force, an electrical current is sent to the inflators.
Gases are produced to inflate the front air bags and after the inflation, the front air bags quickly deflate.
The front air bags will function only once. After that, **the front air bags will not work again and must be replaced.**
Only an Authorized Mazda Dealer can replace the system components.

The front, dual stage air bags control air bag inflation in two energy stages. During an impact of moderate severity the front air bags deploy with lesser energy, whereas during more severe impacts, they deploy with more energy. Deployment of the front air bags may differ between the driver and the front passenger depending on the driver seat position, front passenger weight and front seat belt usage, all of which provide data from each sensor to the air bag system.



Driver seat slide position sensor

Your vehicle is equipped with a driver seat slide position sensor as a part of the supplemental restraint system. The sensor is located under the driver seat. The sensor determines whether the driver seat is fore or aft of a reference position and sends the seat position to the diagnostic module (SAS unit). The SAS unit is also designed to control the deployment of the driver air bag depending on how close the driver seat is to the steering wheel.

The air bag/front seat belt pretensioner system warning light flashes if the sensor has a possible malfunction (page 2-57).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Front passenger seat weight sensors

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger seat weight sensors as a part of the supplemental restraint system. (page 2-35). These sensors are located under both of the front passenger seat rails. These sensors determine the total seated weight on the front passenger seat. The SAS unit is designed to prevent the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system from deploying if the total seated weight is less than approximately 30 kg (66 lbs).

To reduce the chance of injuries caused by deployment of the front passenger air bag, the system deactivates the front passenger front and side air bags and also the seat belt pretensioner system when:

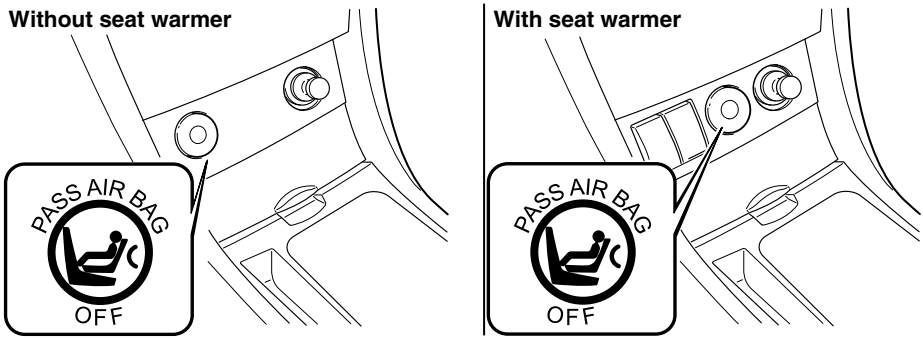
- There is no passenger in the front passenger seat. (The front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light does not illuminate.)
- The total seated weight on the front passenger seat is less than approximately 30 kg (66 lbs). (The front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates.)

This system shuts off the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system, so make sure the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates according to the following table.

The air bag/front seat belt pretensioner system warning light flashes and the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates if the sensors have a possible malfunction. If this happens, the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system will not deploy.

Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light

This indicator light illuminates to remind you that the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner will not deploy during a collision.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the front passenger weight sensors are working properly, the indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position. After a specified period of time it goes out.

The front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates or is off under the following conditions:

Total seated weight on the front passenger seat	Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light	Front passenger front and side air bags	Front passenger seat belt pretensioner system
Empty (Not occupied)*	OFF	Deactivated	Deactivated
Less than approx. 30 kg (66 lbs)	ON	Deactivated	Deactivated
Approx. 42 kg (93 lbs) or more	OFF	Ready	Ready

* If the front passenger seat belt is buckled, the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates, however this does not indicate a malfunction.

Curtain air bag is always ready to inflate and is not deactivated like the passenger front and side air bag.

If the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position and does not illuminate as indicated in the above chart, do not allow a child to sit in the front passenger seat; contact the Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible. The system may not work properly in an accident.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Do not decrease the total seated weight on the front passenger seat:

When an adult or large child sits on the front passenger seat, decreasing the total seated weight on the front passenger seat from the total seated weight of approximately 42 kg (93 lbs) required for air bag deployment is dangerous. The front passenger seat weight sensors will detect the reduced total seated weight condition and the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system will not deploy during an accident. The front passenger will not have the supplementary protection of the air bag, which could result in serious injury. Decreasing the total seated weight on the front passenger seat from the total seated weight of approximately 42 kg (93 lbs) could result in an air bag not deploying under the following conditions, for example:

- *A rear passenger pushes up on the front passenger seat with their feet.*
- *Luggage or other items placed under the front passenger seat or between the front passenger seat and driver seat that push up the front passenger seat bottom.*
- *The front passenger seat occupant sits in a manner that does not place the entire weight of the occupant on the seat such as by sitting too close to the door, grasping the assist grip or the rim of the moonroof and sitting with the seatback reclined too far.*
- *Any accessories which might decrease the total seated weight on the front passenger seat are attached to the front passenger seat.*

The front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner systems will deactivate if the total seated weight on the front passenger seat is close to 30 kg (66 lbs) and they will reactivate before the weight exceeds 42 kg (93 lbs).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not increase the total seated weight on the front passenger seat:

When an infant or small child sits on the front passenger seat, increasing the total seated weight on the front passenger seat from the total seated weight of approximately 30 kg (66 lbs) is dangerous. The front passenger seat weight sensors will detect the increased total seated weight, which could result in the unexpected deployment of the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system in an accident and may cause serious injury. Increasing the total seated weight on the front passenger seat beyond the total seated weight of approximately 30 kg (66 lbs) could result in the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system deployment in an accident under the following conditions, for example:

- *Luggage or other items are placed on the seat with the child in the child-restraint system.*
- *A rear passenger or luggage push or pull down on the front passenger seatback.*
- *A rear passenger steps on the front passenger seat rails with their feet.*
- *Luggage or other items are placed on the seatback or hung on the head restraint.*
- *The seat is washed.*
- *Liquids are spilled on the seat.*
- *The front passenger seat is moved backward, pushing into luggage or other items placed behind it.*
- *The front passenger seatback contacts the rear seat.*
- *Luggage or other items are placed between the front passenger seat and driver seat.*
- *Any accessories which might increase the total seated weight on the front passenger seat are attached to the front passenger seat.*

The front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner systems will deactivate if the total seated weight on the front passenger seat is less than approximately 30 kg (66 lbs) and they will reactivate when the weight exceeds approximately 42 kg (93 lbs).

⚠ CAUTION

- *To assure proper deployment of the front air bag and to prevent damage to the sensors in the front seat bottoms:*
  - *Do not place sharp objects on the front seat bottoms or leave heavy luggage on them.*
  - *Do not spill any liquids on the front seats or under the front seats.*
- *To allow the sensors to function properly, always perform the following:*
  - *Adjust the front seats as far back as possible and always sit upright against the seatbacks with seat belts worn properly.*
  - *If you place your child on the front passenger seat, secure the child-restraint system properly and slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible (page 2-35).*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

- *The system requires about 10 seconds to alternate between turning the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system on or off.*
- *The front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light may illuminate repeatedly if luggage or other items are put on the front passenger seat, or if the temperature of the vehicle's interior changes suddenly.*
- *The front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light may illuminate for 10 seconds if the total seated weight on the front passenger seat changes.*
- *If the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light does not illuminate after installing a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child-restraint system on the rear seat and consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.*

Driver and front passenger buckle switches

The buckle switches on the front seat belts detect whether or not the front seat belts are securely fastened and further control the deployment of the air bags.

▼How the Side and Curtain Air Bags Work*

When air bag crash sensors detect a side impact of greater than moderate force, an electrical current is sent to the inflators.
Gases are produced to inflate the side and curtain air bags and after the inflation, the side and curtain air bags quickly deflate. However, the side air bag system for the front passenger is designed to only deploy in accordance with the total seated weight on the front passenger seat, however the curtains are not deactivated.
The side and curtain air bags will function only once. After that, **the side and curtain air bags will not work again and must be replaced.** Only an Authorized Mazda Dealer can replace the systems.

The side and curtain air bags will deploy only on the side the vehicle receives the force of the impact.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Air Bag Activation/Deactivation

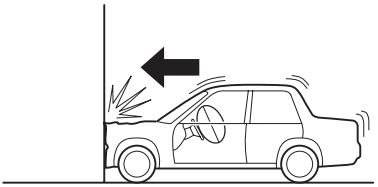
NOTE

If the front passenger seat weight sensors detect a total seated weight on the front passenger seat is less than approximately 42 kg (93 lb), the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner may not deploy (page 2-48), but the curtain air bags may deploy.

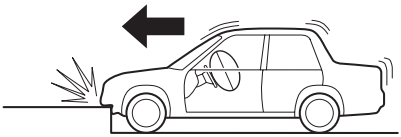
Front air bag activation

The front air bags will inflate if the severity of impact is above the designed threshold level.

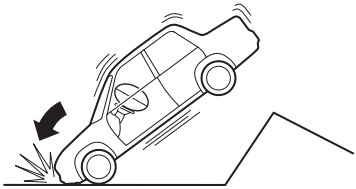
- Hitting a solid wall straight on at greater than about 22 km/h (14 mph).



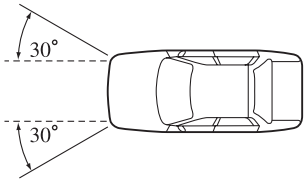
- Hitting a curb, pavement edge or hard object.



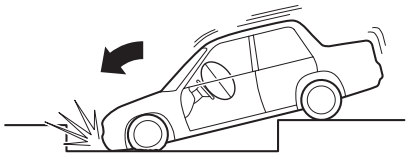
- Landing hard or the vehicle falling.



- Frontal impact within about a 30 degree range from head-on to the vehicle.



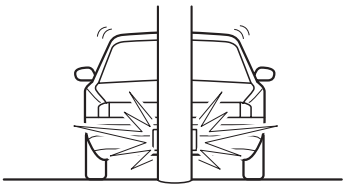
- Driving into a big hole or hitting the far side of a hole.



Limitations to front air bag activation

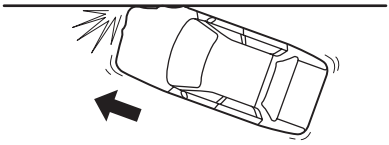
Depending on the severity of impact, the front air bags may not inflate in the following cases:

- Impacts involving trees or poles cause severe cosmetic damage but may not have enough stopping force to activate the air bag.

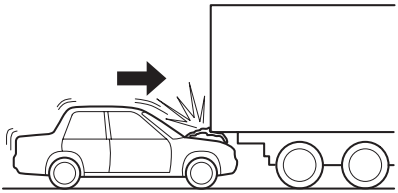


Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Frontal offset impact to the vehicle may not provide the stopping force necessary for air bag deployment.



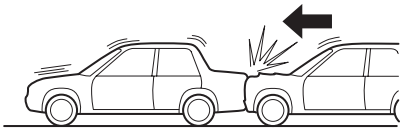
- Rear-ending or running under a truck's tail gate may not provide the stopping force necessary for air bag deployment.



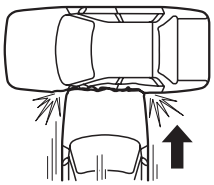
Non-activation of front air bags

Front air bags will not normally inflate in the following cases:

- Collision from the rear.



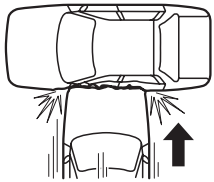
- Impact to the side, but it may deploy the side and curtain air bags.



- Vehicle roll-over, may deploy the side and curtain air bags but not the front air bags.

Side and curtain air bag activation *

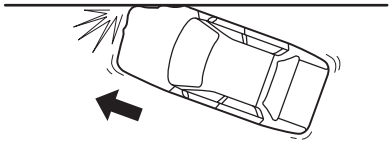
The severity of impact above the designed threshold level to one side of the vehicle (driver or passenger side areas) will cause the side and curtain air bags on that side to inflate, but it will not normally deploy the front air bags.



Limitations to side and curtain air bag activation *

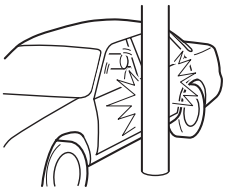
Depending on the severity of impact, the side and curtain air bags may not inflate in the following cases:

- Frontal offset impact may not provide enough side impact to deploy the side and curtain air bags.

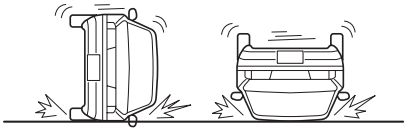


Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

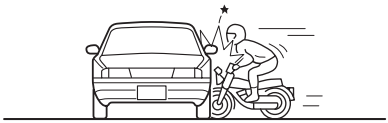
- Side impacts involving trees or poles can cause severe cosmetic damage but may not have enough impact force to activate the side and curtain air bags.



- Vehicle roll-over may not provide enough side force to deploy the side and curtain air bags.



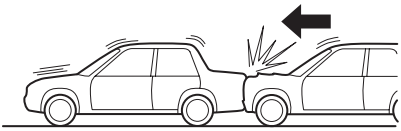
- Side impacts with two-wheeled vehicles may not provide enough force to deploy the side and curtain air bags.



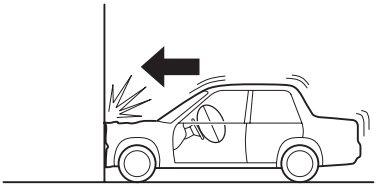
Non-activation of side and curtain air bag *

The side and curtain air bags will not normally inflate in the following cases:

- Collision from the rear.



- Collision from the front, but it may deploy the front air bags.



▼Constant Monitoring

The following components of the air bag systems are monitored by a diagnostic system:

- SAS unit
- Front air bag sensor
- Air bag modules
- Side crash sensors *
- Air bag/Front seat belt pretensioner system warning light
- Front seat belt pretensioners
- Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light
- Related wiring
- Driver seat slide position sensor
- Front passenger seat weight sensors
- Driver and front passenger seat belt buckle switches

* Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The diagnostic module continuously monitors the system's readiness. This begins when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position and continues while the vehicle is being driven.

▼Air Bag/Front Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light

If the air bag/front seat belt pretensioner system is working properly, the warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or after the engine is cranked. The warning light turns off after a specified period of time.

A system malfunction is indicated if the warning light constantly illuminates or does not illuminate at all when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position. If any of these occur, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible. The system may not work in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

Never tamper with the air bag/ pretensioner systems and always have an Authorized Mazda Dealer perform all servicing and repairs:

Self-servicing or tampering with the systems is dangerous. An air bag/ pretensioner could accidentally activate or become disabled causing serious injury or death.

▼Air Bag/Front Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep

If a malfunction is detected in the air bag/ front seat belt pretensioner systems and the warning light, a warning beep sound will be heard for about 5 seconds every minute.

The air bag and seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sound will continue to be heard for approximately 35 minutes. Have your vehicle inspected at an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with the air bag/front seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding:

Driving the vehicle with the air bag/ front seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding is dangerous. In a collision, the air bags and the front seat belt pretensioner system will not deploy and this could result in death or serious injury.
Contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer to have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible.

▼Maintenance

The air bag systems do not require regular maintenance. But if any of the following occurs, take your vehicle to an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible:

- The air bag system warning light flashes.
- The air bag system warning light remains illuminated.
- The air bag system warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- The air bag system warning beep sound will be heard.
- The air bags have deployed.
- Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or does not illuminate as indicated in the chart. For more details about this indicator light and this chart, refer to “Front passenger seat weight sensors” (page 2-48).

⚠ WARNING

Do not operate a vehicle with damaged air bag/seat belt pretensioner system components:

Expended or damaged air bag/seat belt pretensioner system components must be replaced after any collision which caused them to deploy or damage them. Only a trained Authorized Mazda Dealer can fully evaluate these systems to see that they will work in any subsequent accident. Driving with an expended or damaged air bag or pretensioner unit will not afford you the necessary protection in the event of any subsequent accident which could result in serious injury or death.

Do not remove interior air bag parts:

Removing any components such as the front seats, front dashboard, the steering wheel or parts on the front and rear window pillars and along the roof edge, containing air bag parts or sensors is dangerous. These parts contain essential air bag components. The air bag could accidentally activate and cause serious injuries. Always have an Authorized Mazda Dealer remove these parts.

Dispose of the air bag properly:

Improper disposal of an air bag or a vehicle with live air bags in it can be extremely dangerous. Unless all safety procedures are followed, injury can result. Ask an Authorized Mazda Dealer how to safely dispose of an air bag or how to scrap an air bag equipped vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

If it becomes necessary to have the components or wiring system for the supplementary restraint system modified to accommodate a person with certain medical conditions in accordance with a certified physician, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer, refer to "Customer Assistance (U.S.A.)" (page 9-2).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3 Knowing Your Mazda

Explanation of basic operations and controls; opening/closing and adjustment of various parts.

Doors and Locks 3-2
Keys 3-2
Keyless Entry System* 3-3
Door Locks 3-8
Liftgate (5 Door) 3-11
Trunk Lid (4 Door) 3-14
Inside Trunk Release Lever (4 Door) 3-17
Power Windows* 3-18
Fuel-Filler Lid and Cap 3-20
Hood 3-22
Moonroof* 3-24

Security System 3-26
Immobilizer System 3-26
Theft-Deterrent System* 3-28

Steering Wheel and Mirrors 3-30
Steering Wheel 3-30
Mirrors 3-30

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Keys

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave the key in your vehicle with children and keep them in a place where your children will not find or play with them:

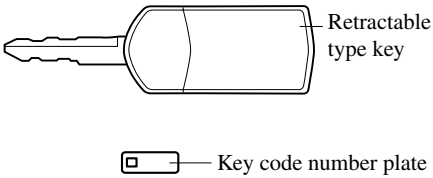
Leaving children in a vehicle with the key is dangerous. This could result in someone being badly injured or even killed. Children may find these new kinds of keys to be an interesting toy to play with and could cause the power windows or other controls to operate, or even make the vehicle move.

NOTE

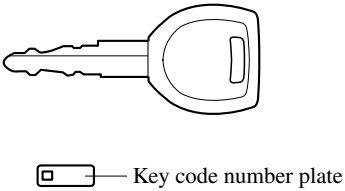
- *Refer to Immobilizer System (page 3-26) for information regarding keys and engine starting.*
- ***(With theft-deterrent system)***
  Refer to Theft-Deterrent System (page 3-28) for information regarding keys and the prevention of vehicle and vehicle contents theft.

The keys operate all locks.

Type A



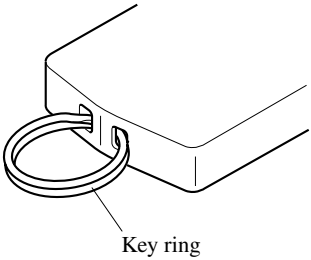
Type B



A code number is stamped on the plate attached to the key set; detach this plate and store it in a safe place (not in the vehicle) for use if you need to make a replacement key.

NOTE

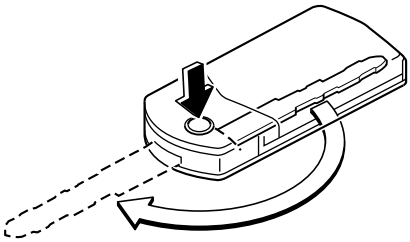
- *Write down the code number and keep it in a separate safe and convenient place, but not in the vehicle.*
  If your key is lost, consult your Authorized Mazda Dealer and have your code number ready.
- *Some types of key chains cannot be attached to the retractable type key. In this case, use the key ring provided with the transmitter which has the key code number plate attached.*



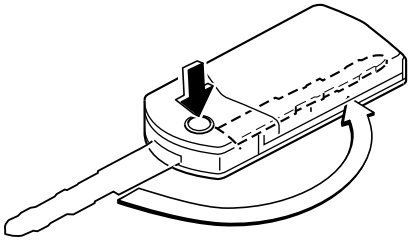
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Key extend/retract method (Retractable type key)

To extend the key, press the release button.



To retract the key, rotate it into the holder while pressing the release button.



Keyless Entry System *

This system remotely locks and unlocks the doors and the liftgate, and opens the trunk lid.
It can also help you signal for attention.
Press the buttons slowly and carefully.

⚠ CAUTION

To avoid damage to the transmitter, do not:

- *Drop the transmitter.*
- *Get the transmitter wet.*
- *Disassemble the transmitter.*
- *Expose the transmitter to any kind of magnetic field.*
- *Expose the transmitter to high temperatures on places such as the dashboard or hood, under direct sunlight.*

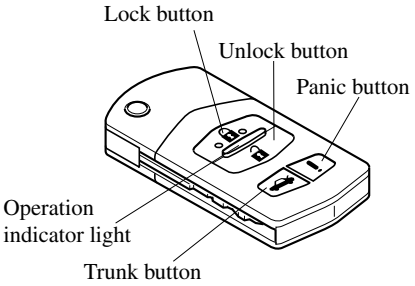
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

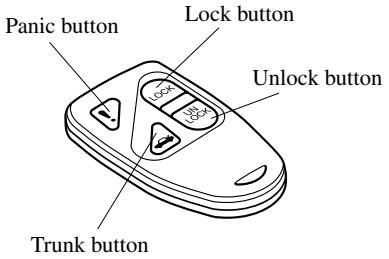
- *The keyless entry system is designed to operate up to about 2.5 m (8 ft) from the center of the vehicle, but this may vary due to local conditions.*
- *The system does not operate when the key is in the ignition switch.*
- *Doors and the liftgate can be locked by pressing the lock button while any other door or the liftgate is open. However, the hazard warning lights will not flash and the horn will not sound.*
- *If the transmitter does not operate when pressing a button or the operation range becomes too small, the battery may be dead. To install a new battery, refer to Maintenance (page 3-6).*
- *Additional transmitters can be obtained at an Authorized Mazda Dealer. Up to 3 transmitters can be used with the keyless entry system per vehicle. Bring all transmitters to an Authorized Mazda Dealer when additional transmitters are required.*

▼Transmitter

Integrated key type



Non-key type



NOTE

- ***(U.S.A.)***
  This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- ***(CANADA)***
  This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry CANADA. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The operation indicator light flashes when the buttons are pressed.

Lock button

To lock the doors and the liftgate, press the lock button and the hazard warning lights will flash once.

To confirm that all doors and the liftgate have been locked, press the lock button again within 5 seconds. If they are closed and locked, the horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will flash once.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

- *Pressing the transmitter lock button to lock the doors while any door is open does not sound the horn.*
- ***(Without theft-deterrent system)***
  The hazard warning lights will flash once to indicate that all doors and the liftgate are locked.
- ***(With theft-deterrent system)***
  The hazard warning lights only flash when the theft deterrent system is armed.
  The hazard warning lights do not flash if all the doors and the liftgate are locked before the theft-deterrent system is properly armed.
  Refer to the theft-deterrent system on page 3-28.

NOTE

- *All doors and the liftgate cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch.*
- *Confirm that all doors and the liftgate are locked visually or audibly by use of the double click.*

Unlock button

To unlock the driver's door, press the unlock button and the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

To unlock all doors and the liftgate, press the unlock button again within 5 seconds and the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

NOTE

(Without theft-deterrent system)
The hazard warning lights will flash twice to indicate that all doors and the liftgate are unlocked.
(With theft-deterrent system)
The hazard warning lights only flash when the theft deterrent system is turned off.
The hazard warning lights do not flash unless the theft deterrent system has been properly turned off.
Refer to the theft-deterrent system on page 3-28.

NOTE

Auto re-lock function
After unlocking with the transmitter, all doors and the liftgate will automatically lock if one of the doors or the liftgate is not opened within about 30 seconds.

Trunk button

To open the trunk, press and hold the trunk button until the trunk lid opens.

Panic button

If you witness from a distance someone attempting to break into or damage your vehicle, pressing the panic button will activate the vehicle's alarm.

NOTE

The panic button will work whether any door or the liftgate is open or closed.

Turning on the alarm

Pressing the panic button for 1 second or more will trigger the alarm for about 2 minutes and 30 seconds, and the following will occur:

- The horn sounds intermittently.
- The hazard warning lights flash.

Turning off the alarm

Press any button on the transmitter.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Transmitter Maintenance

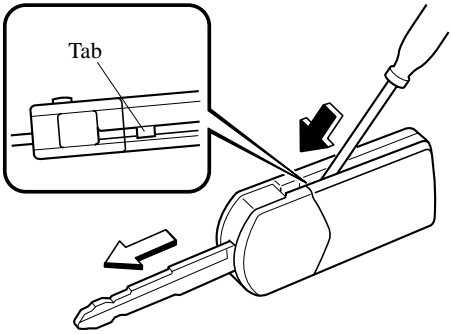
CAUTION

- *Make sure the battery is installed with the correct pole facing upward. Battery leakage could occur if it is not installed correctly.*
- *When replacing the battery, be careful not to bend the electrical terminals or get oil on them. Also be careful not to get dirt in the transmitter as it could be damaged.*
- *There is the danger of explosion if the battery is not correctly replaced.*
- *Replace only with the same type battery.*
  - *Integrated key type: CR1620 or equivalent*
  - *Non-key type: CR2025 or equivalent*
- *Dispose of used batteries according to the following instructions.*
  - *Insulate the plus and minus terminals of the battery using cellophane or equivalent tape.*
  - *Never disassemble.*
  - *Never throw the battery into fire and/or water.*
  - *Never deform or crush.*

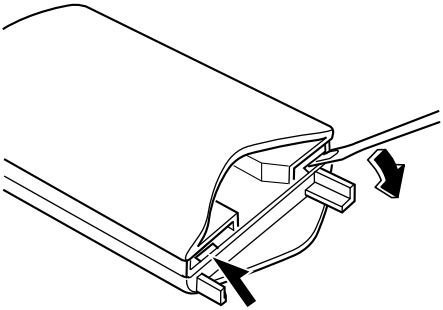
Replacing the transmitter battery

Integrated key type

1. Unfold the key (page 3-2).
2. Insert a small flathead screwdriver into the slot and push the tab to remove the key from the transmitter.

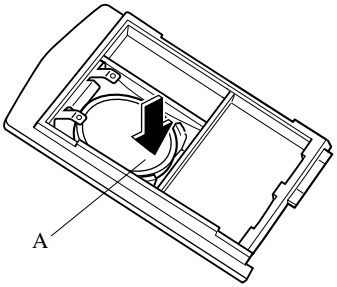


3. Insert a small flathead screwdriver into the slot and gently pry open the transmitter.



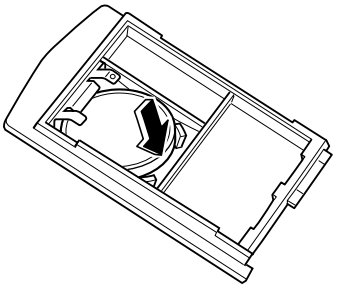
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Press the portion of the battery indicated by A and remove the battery.



NOTE
If it is difficult to remove the battery by pressing with a finger, use a small flathead screwdriver to press out the battery.

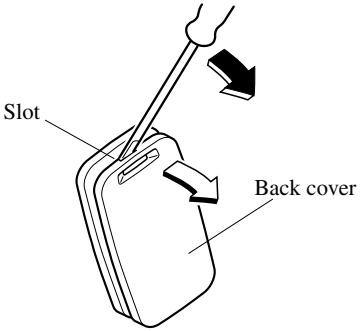
5. Put in the new battery (CR1620 or equivalent) with the positive pole (+) facing down.



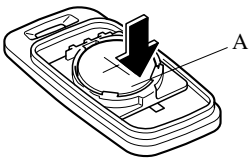
6. Align the front and back covers and snap the transmitter shut.
7. Install the key to the transmitter.

Non-key type

1. Insert a small flathead screwdriver into the slot and gently pry open the transmitter.

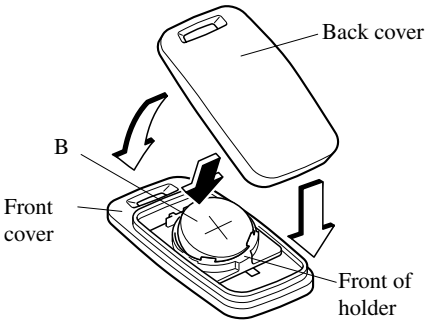


2. Press the portion of the battery indicated by A and remove the battery.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Install a new battery (CR2025 or equivalent) into the front portion of the holder with the positive pole (+) facing up. Press on the B portion of the battery to set the battery.



4. Align the front and back covers and snap the transmitter shut.

▼Service

If you have a problem with the keyless entry system, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

If your transmitter is lost or stolen, bring all remaining transmitters to an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible for a replacement and to make the lost or stolen transmitter inoperative.

⚠ CAUTION

Radio equipment like this is governed by laws in the United States. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Door Locks

⚠ WARNING

Always take all children and pets with you or leave a responsible person with them:

Leaving a child or a pet unattended in a parked vehicle is dangerous. In hot weather, temperatures inside a vehicle can become high enough to cause brain damage or even death.

Do not leave the key in your vehicle with children and keep them in a place where your children will not find or play with them:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the key is dangerous. This could result in someone being badly injured or even killed.

Keep all doors locked when driving:

Unlocked doors in a moving vehicle are dangerous. Passengers can fall out if a door is accidentally opened and can more easily be thrown out in an accident.

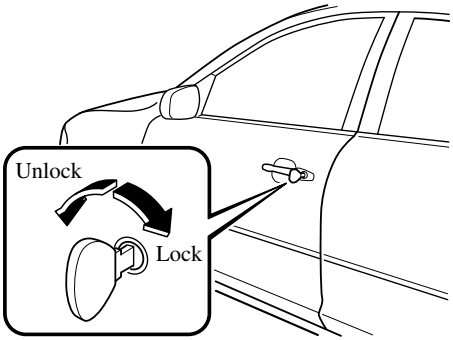
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Always close all the windows and the moonroof, lock the doors and take the key with you when leaving your vehicle unattended:

(Except 4 Door)
Leaving your vehicle unlocked is dangerous as children could lock themselves in a hot vehicle, which could result in death. Also, a vehicle left unlocked becomes an easy target for thieves and intruders.
(4 Door)
Leaving your vehicle unlocked is dangerous as children could lock themselves in a hot vehicle, or become trapped by climbing into the trunk, which could result in death. Also, a vehicle left unlocked becomes an easy target for thieves and intruders.

▼Locking, Unlocking with Key

The driver's door can be locked/unlocked with the key.
Turn the key toward the front to unlock, toward the back to lock.



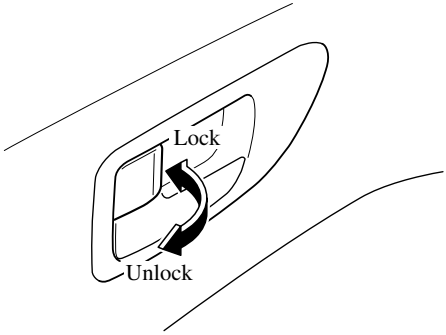
NOTE
If your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger door key cylinder, the door can be locked/unlocked with the key.

▼Locking, Unlocking with Transmitter*

The doors can be locked/unlocked by operating the keyless entry system transmitter, refer to Keyless Entry System (page 3-3).

▼Locking, Unlocking with Door-Lock Knob

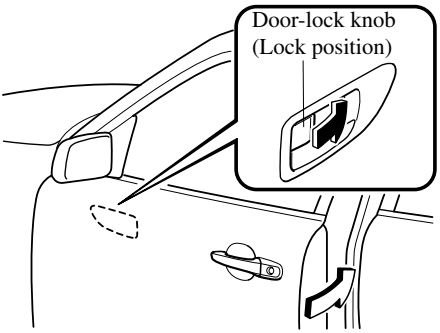
To lock any door from the inside, push the door-lock knob.
To unlock, pull it out.
This does not operate the other door locks.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

*Some models.

To lock any door with the door-lock knob from the outside, push the door-lock knob to the lock position and close the door. This does not operate the other door locks.



NOTE

When locking the doors this way, be careful not to leave the key inside the vehicle.

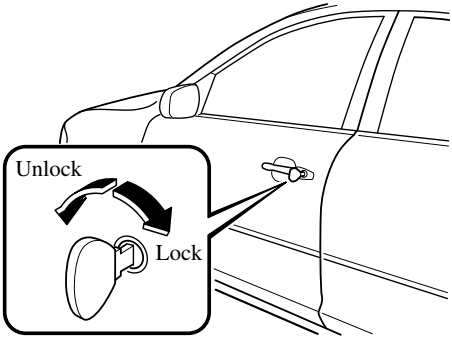
▼Power Door Locks*

Vehicle lock-out prevention

The vehicle lock-out prevention feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle. With the key in the ignition switch, all doors and the liftgate will automatically unlock if they are locked using the power door locks with either front door open.

Locking, unlocking with key

All doors and the liftgate lock automatically when the driver's door is locked with the key. All doors and the liftgate unlock when the driver's door is unlocked and the key is held in the unlock position for one second or longer.



NOTE

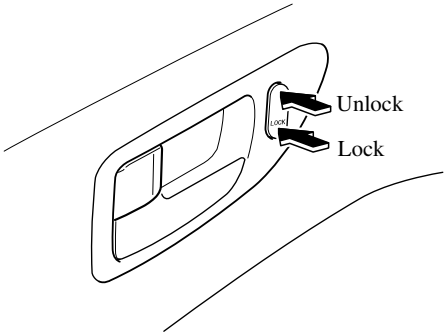
Holding the key in the unlocked position in the driver's door lock for about a second unlocks all doors and the liftgate. To unlock only the driver's door, insert the key into the driver's door lock and turn the key briefly to the unlock position and then immediately return it to the center position.

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Locking, unlocking with door-lock switch

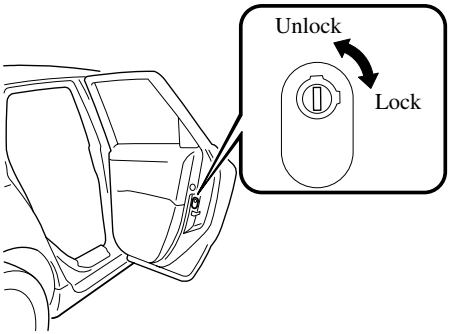
All doors and the liftgate lock automatically when LOCK is pressed. They all unlock when the unmarked part of the door-lock switch is pressed.



▼Rear Door Child Safety Locks

These locks are intended to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors. Use them both whenever a child rides in the vehicle.

If you insert the key and turn the child safety lock to the lock position before closing that door, the door cannot be opened from the inside.
The door can be opened only by lifting the outside handle.



Liftgate (5 Door)

⚠ WARNING

Never allow a person to ride in the luggage compartment:

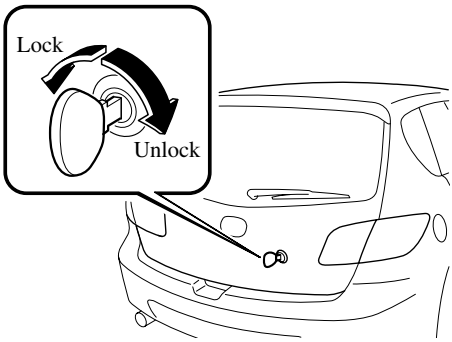
Allowing a person to ride in the luggage compartment is dangerous. The person in the luggage compartment could be seriously injured or killed during sudden braking or a collision.

Do not drive with the liftgate open:

Exhaust gas in the cabin of a vehicle is dangerous. An open liftgate in a moving vehicle will cause exhaust gas to be drawn into the cabin. This gas contains CO (carbon monoxide), which is colorless, odorless, and highly poisonous, and it can cause loss of consciousness and death. Moreover, an open liftgate could cause occupants to fall out in an accident.

▼Locking, Unlocking with Key*

To lock the liftgate with the key, insert the key and turn it counterclockwise.
To unlock the liftgate with the key, insert the key and turn it clockwise.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The liftgate can be locked/unlocked by inserting the key into the driver's door key slot, refer to Power Door Locks (page 3-10).

▼Locking, Unlocking with Transmitter

The liftgate can be locked/unlocked by operating the keyless entry system transmitter, refer to Keyless Entry System (page 3-3).

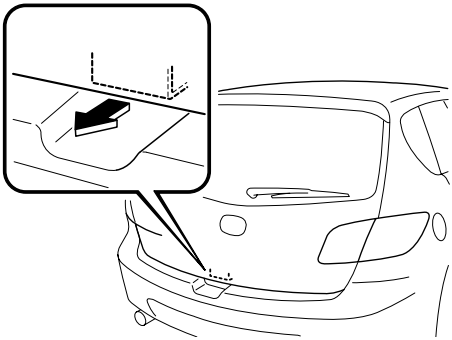
▼Locking, Unlocking with Door-Lock Switch

The liftgate can be locked/unlocked by operating the door-lock switch, refer to Power Door Locks (page 3-10).

▼Opening and Closing the Liftgate

Opening the liftgate

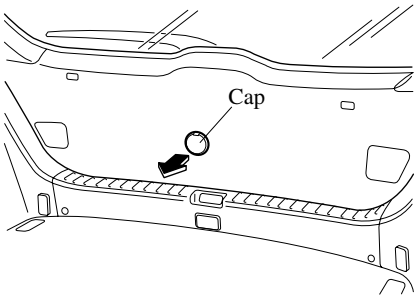
Pull the handle and lift up the liftgate.



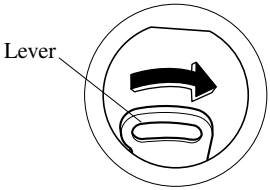
NOTE

If the vehicle battery is dead or there is a malfunction in the electrical system and the liftgate cannot be unlocked, perform the following procedure as an emergency measure to unlock it:

1. *Remove the cap on the interior surface of the liftgate with a flathead screwdriver.*



2. *Turn the lever to the right to unlock the liftgate.*



After performing this emergency measure, have the vehicle inspected at an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.

Closing the liftgate

Use both hands to push the liftgate down until the lock snaps shut. Do not slam it. Pull up on the liftgate to make sure it is securely latched.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Luggage Compartment

⚠ WARNING

Do not place anything on top of the cover:

Placing luggage or other cargo on top of the luggage compartment cover is dangerous. During sudden braking or a collision, the cargo could become a projectile that could hit and injure someone. The vehicle has a light weight luggage compartment cover to keep the contents of your luggage area out of sight; it will not retain heavy objects that are not tied down in an accident such as a rollover. Tie down all heavy objects, whether luggage or cargo, using the tie down hooks.

Make sure luggage and cargo is secured before driving:

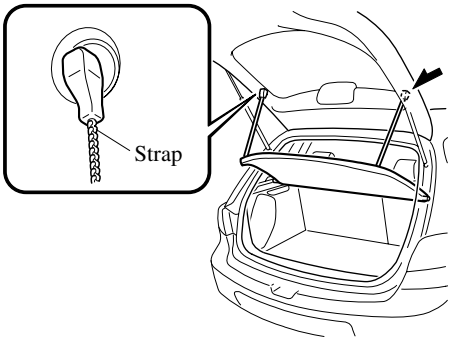
Not securing cargo while driving is dangerous as it could move or be crushed during sudden braking or a collision and cause injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Make sure the luggage compartment cover is firmly secured. If it is not firmly secured, it could unexpectedly disengage resulting in injury.

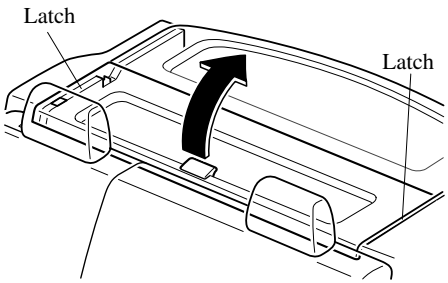
Luggage compartment cover strap

The luggage compartment can be accessed by opening the liftgate when the straps are attached to the sides of the liftgate.



Luggage compartment cover

The luggage compartment can be accessed by opening the luggage compartment cover from the inside of the vehicle.



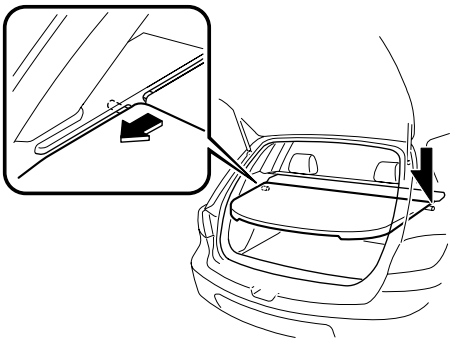
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent cargo from shifting while driving or during sudden deceleration, be careful of the following:

- *Do not open the luggage compartment cover while the vehicle is moving.*
- *Do not overload the luggage compartment so that the cover cannot be closed.*
- *Do not allow cargo to interfere with the luggage compartment cover latch.*

This cover can be removed for more room. To do this, just unfasten the straps; then lift and pull it out.



Trunk Lid (4 Door)

⚠ WARNING

Never allow a person to ride in the trunk:

Allowing a person to ride in the trunk is dangerous. In addition, the person in the trunk could be seriously injured or killed during sudden braking or a collision.

Keep the trunk closed when driving:

Exhaust gas entering the cabin of a vehicle through an open trunk is dangerous. This gas contains CO (carbon monoxide), which is colorless, odorless, and highly poisonous. If inhaled, it can cause loss of consciousness and death.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Opening and Closing the Trunk Lid

⚠ WARNING

Close the trunk lid, be sure the seat backs are latched and do not allow children to play inside the vehicle:

Leaving the trunk lid open or leaving children in the vehicle with the keys is dangerous. Children could open the trunk lid and climb inside resulting in possible injury or death from heat exposure.

Always keep the car from being a tempting place to play by locking rear seats, doors and the trunk, and keeping the keys where children can not play with them:

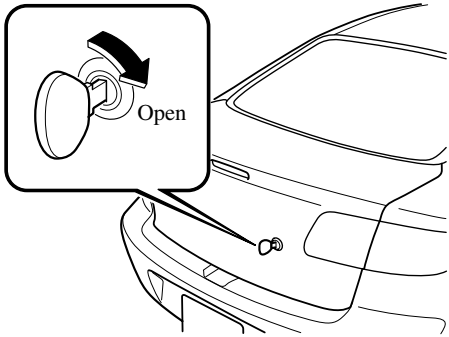
Leaving children or animals unattended in a parked vehicle is dangerous. Babies left sleeping and children who lock themselves in cars or trunks can die very quickly from heat prostration. Do not leave your children or pets alone in a car at any time. Do not leave the car, the rear folding seats or the trunk unlocked.

⚠ CAUTION

For vehicles equipped with a rear spoiler, do not lift the trunk lid by the spoiler. Lifting up the trunk lid by the rear spoiler could cause damage to the rear spoiler and the trunk lid.

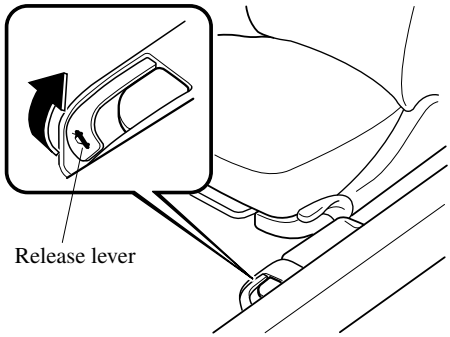
Opening the trunk lid with the key

Insert the key into the slot and turn it clockwise.



Opening the trunk lid with the remote release lever

Pull up the release lever next to the driver's seat.



Closing the trunk lid

Use both hands to push the trunk lid down until the lock snaps shut. Do not slam it. Pull up on the trunk lid to make sure it is secure.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

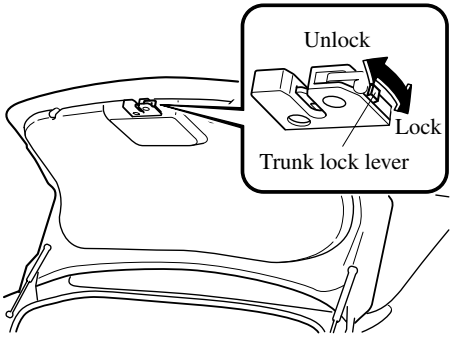
▼Trunk Security

In some situations you may want to prevent the trunk from being opened with the remote trunk lid release lever.

Give your key only to someone you trust.

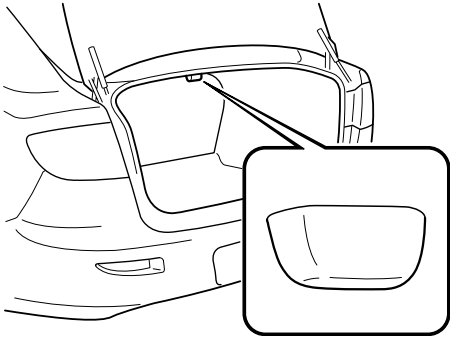
To secure the trunk lid, lock the rear seatbacks (page 2-10), push the trunk lock lever up, and close the trunk.

To cancel the security feature, insert the key into the lock, turn the key clockwise, and pull the trunk lock lever down.



▼Trunk Light

The trunk light is on when the lid is open and off when it's closed.



NOTE

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the trunk open for a long period when the engine is not running.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Inside Trunk Release Lever (4 Door)

Your vehicle is equipped with an inside trunk release handle that provides a means of escape for children and adults in the event they become locked inside the trunk.

No matter how careful adults might be with keys and locking their cars, parents should be aware that children may be tempted to play around vehicles and use the trunk as a hiding place.

Adults are advised to familiarize themselves with the operation and location of the inside release handle so that all children can be told about it in an appropriate way, keeping in mind that most vehicles do not have such handles.

⚠ WARNING

Close the trunk lid, be sure the seat backs are latched and do not allow children to play inside the vehicle:

Leaving the trunk lid open or leaving children in the vehicle with the keys is dangerous. Children could open the trunk lid and climb inside resulting in possible injury or death from heat exposure.

Always keep the car from being a tempting place to play by locking rear seats, doors and the trunk, and keeping the keys where children can not play with them:

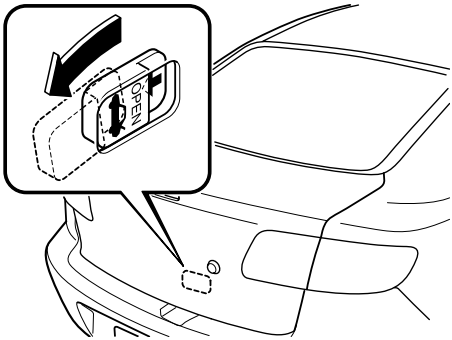
Leaving children or animals unattended in a parked vehicle is dangerous. Babies left sleeping and children who lock themselves in cars or trunks can die very quickly from heat prostration. Do not leave your children or pets alone in a car at any time. Do not leave the car, the rear folding seats or the trunk unlocked.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Opening the Trunk Lid from the Inside

Slide the inside trunk release lever in the direction of the arrow. The lever is made of material that will glow for hours in the darkness of the trunk following a brief exposure to ambient light.

The inside trunk release lever is located on the inside of the trunk lid.



Power Windows*

The ignition switch must be in the ON position for the power windows to operate.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the opening is clear before closing a window:

Closing power windows are dangerous. A person's hands, head, or even neck could be caught by the window and result in serious injury or even death.
This warning applies especially to children.

Always lock all passenger power windows with the power window lock switch on the driver's side while children are in the vehicle, and never allow children to play with power window switches:

Leaving the power window switches unlocked while children are in the vehicle is dangerous. Power window switches that are not locked with the power window lock switch would allow children to operate power windows unintentionally which could result in serious injury if a child's hands, head or neck becomes caught by the window.

⚠ CAUTION

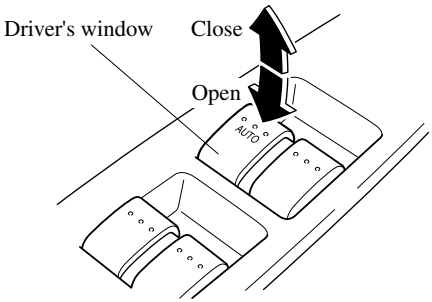
To prevent burning out the fuse and damaging the power window system, do not open or close more than three windows at once.

*Some models.
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Operating the Driver's Side Power Window

Manual opening/closing

To open the window to the desired position, lightly hold down the switch. To close the window to the desired position, lightly pull up the switch.



Auto-opening

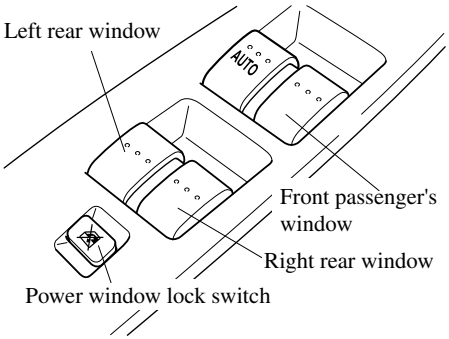
To fully open the window automatically, press the switch completely down.

To stop the window partway, lightly pull up the switch and then release it.

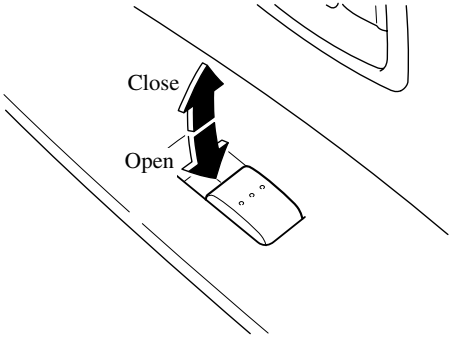
▼Operating the Passenger Power Windows

The power windows may be operated when the power window lock switch on the driver's door is in the unlocked position.

The passenger windows may be opened or closed by the power window master control switches on the driver's door.



To open the window to the desired position, hold down the switch.
To close the window to the desired position, pull up the switch.

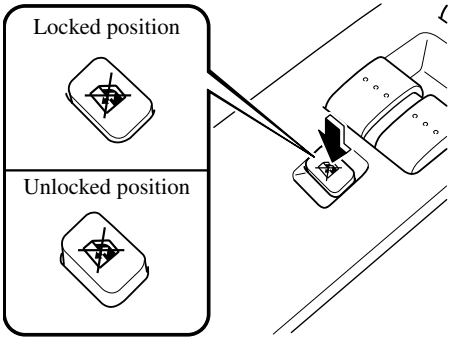


Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Power Window Lock Switch

With the lock switch in the unlocked position (button not depressed), all power windows on each door can be operated.

With the lock switch in the locked position (button depressed), only the driver's side power window can be operated.



⚠ WARNING

Unless a passenger needs to operate a power window, keep the power window lock switch in the locked position:

Unintentional power window operation is dangerous. A person's hands, head, or neck could be caught by the window and result in serious injury.

Fuel-Filler Lid and Cap

⚠ WARNING

When removing the fuel cap, loosen the cap slightly and wait for any hissing to stop. Then remove it:

Fuel spray is dangerous. Fuel can burn skin and eyes and cause illness if ingested. Fuel spray is released when there is pressure in the fuel tank and the fuel cap is removed too quickly.

Before refueling, stop the engine, and always keep sparks and flames away from the filler neck:

Fuel vapor is dangerous. It could be ignited by sparks or flames causing serious burns and injuries. Additionally, use of the incorrect fuel filler cap or not using a fuel filler cap may result in fuel leak, which could result in serious burns or death in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

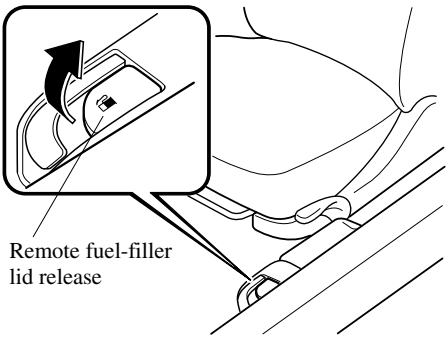
Always use only a genuine Mazda fuel cap or an approved equivalent, available at an Authorized Mazda Dealer. The wrong cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel and emission control systems. It may also cause the check engine light in the instrument cluster to illuminate.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

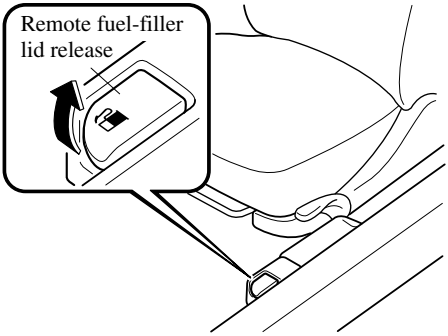
▼Fuel-Filler Lid

To open, pull up the remote fuel-filler lid release.

4 Door



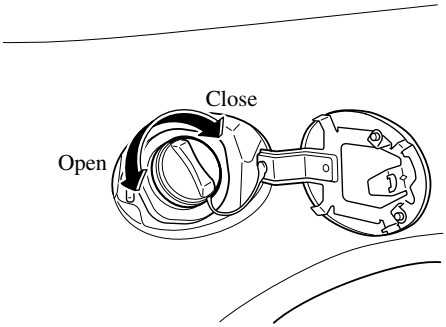
5 Door



▼Fuel-Filler Cap

To remove the fuel-filler cap, turn it counterclockwise.

To close the fuel-filler cap, turn it clockwise until two or more click sounds are heard.



⚠ CAUTION

Make sure the fuel-filler cap is tightened securely. The check engine light may illuminate when the cap is not tightened securely. If the light remains on (even after you have tightened the cap securely, driven, and restarted the engine several times), it may indicate a different problem. Contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Hood

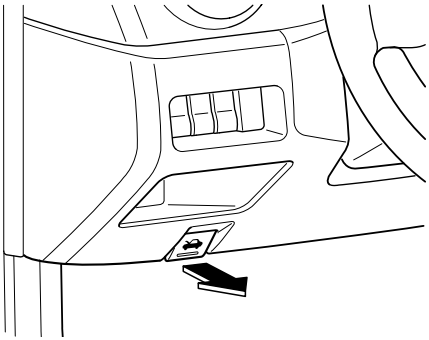
⚠ WARNING

Always check that the hood is closed and securely locked:

A hood that is not closed and securely locked is dangerous as it could fly open while the vehicle is moving and block the driver's vision which could result in a serious accident.

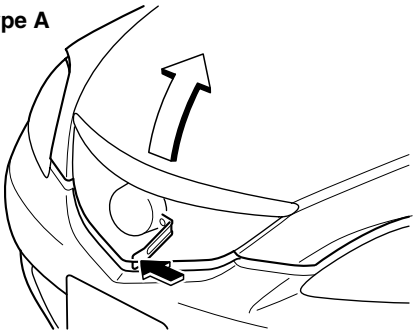
▼Opening the Hood

1. With the vehicle parked, pull the release handle to unlock the hood.

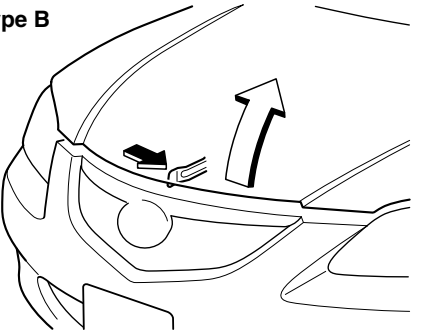


2. **(Type A)**
   Insert your hand into the hood opening and slide the hood latch to the left and lift the hood.
   (Type B)
   Insert your hand into the hood opening and slide the hood latch to the right and lift the hood.

Type A

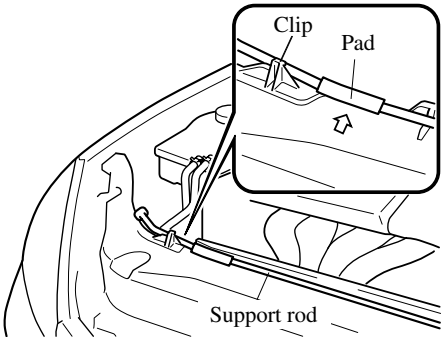


Type B

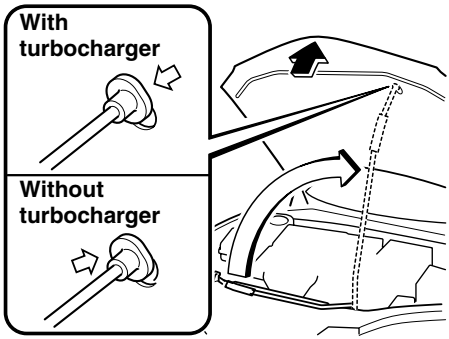


Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Grasp the support rod in the padded area indicated by the arrow.



4. Secure the support rod in the stay hole indicated by the arrow to hold the hood open.



▼Closing the Hood

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave items in the engine compartment:

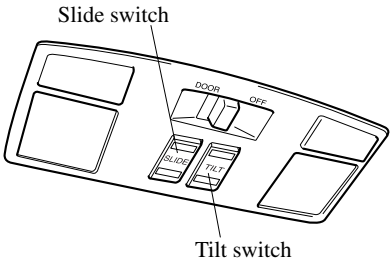
After you have finished checking or doing servicing in the engine compartment, do not forget and leave items such as tools or rags in the engine compartment.
Tools or other items left in the engine compartment could cause engine damage or a fire leading to an unexpected accident.

1. Check under the hood area to make certain all filler caps are in place and all loose items (e.g. tools, oil containers, etc.) have been removed.
2. Insert the support rod in its clip while holding up the hood. Verify that the support rod is secured in the clip before closing the hood.
3. Close the hood so that it locks securely.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Moonroof*

The moonroof can be opened or closed electrically only when the ignition switch is in the ON position.



⚠ WARNING

Do not let passengers stand up or extend part of their body through the open moonroof while the vehicle is moving:

Extending the head, arms, or other parts of the body through the moonroof is dangerous. The head or arms could hit something while the vehicle is moving. This could cause serious injury or death.

Make sure the opening is clear before closing the moonroof:

A closing moonroof is dangerous. The hands, head, or even neck of a person —especially a child— could be caught in it as it closes, causing serious injury or even death.

NOTE

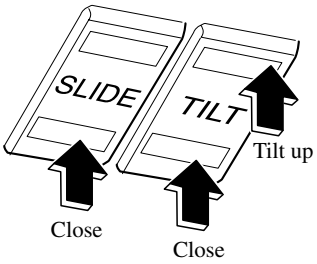
Before washing your Mazda, make sure the moonroof is completely closed so that water does not get inside the cabin area. After washing your Mazda or after it rains, wipe the water off the moonroof before operating it to avoid water penetration which could cause rust and water damage to your headliner.

▼Tilt Operation

The rear of the moonroof can be tilted open to provide more ventilation.

To fully tilt automatically, momentarily press the rear of the tilt switch.
To stop tilting partway, press any part of the tilt or slide switch.

To close to the desired position, press the front of the tilt or slide switch.



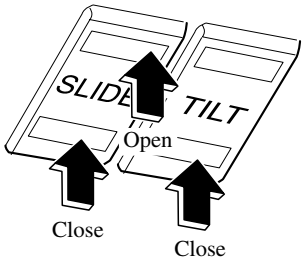
▼Slide Operation

To fully open automatically, momentarily press the rear of the slide switch.
To stop sliding partway, press any part of the tilt or slide switch.

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

To close to the desired position, press the front of the tilt or slide switch.



▼Power Moonroof Re-set Procedure

If the battery is disconnected, the moonroof may not operate correctly. The moonroof will not operate correctly until it is re-set.Carry out the following procedure to re-set the moonroof and resume operation:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
2. Press the rear of the tilt switch while the rear of the moonroof tilts open to the fully open position. The moonroof then closes a little.

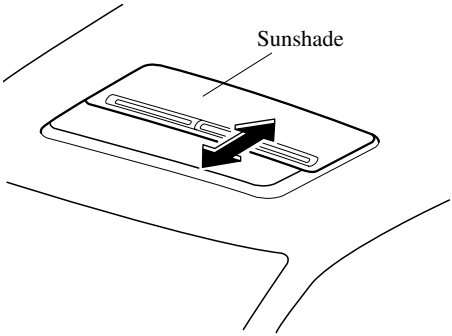
NOTE

If the re-set procedure is performed while the moonroof is in the slide position (partially open) it closes before the rear tilts opens.

▼Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed by hand.

The sunshade opens automatically when the moonroof is opened, but must be closed by hand.



⚠ CAUTION

- *The sunshade does not tilt. To avoid damaging the sunshade, do not push up on it.*
- *Do not close the sunshade while the moonroof is opening. Trying to force the sunshade closed could damage it.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system allows the engine to start only with a key the system recognizes.

If someone attempts to start the engine with an unrecognized key, the engine will not start, thereby helping to prevent the theft of your vehicle.
If you have a problem with the immobilizer system or the key, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

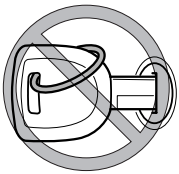
⚠ CAUTION

- *Radio equipment like this is governed by laws in the United States.*
  Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
- *To avoid damage to the key, do not:*
  - *Drop the key.*
  - *Get the key wet.*
  - *Expose the key to any kind of magnetic field.*
  - *Expose the key to high temperatures on places such as the dashboard or hood, under direct sunlight.*

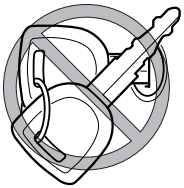
⚠ CAUTION

When starting the engine do not allow the following, as the engine may not start due to the electronic signal from the ignition key not being transmitted correctly.

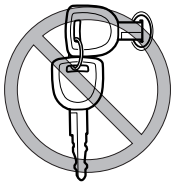
- *A key ring rests on the key grip.*



- *Metal parts of other keys or metal objects touch the key grip.*



- *Spare keys or keys for other vehicles equipped with an immobilizer system touch or come near the key grip.*



- *Devices for electronic purchases, or security passage which touch or come near the key.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

- ***(U.S.A.)***
  This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- ***(CANADA)***
  This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry CANADA. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.
- *The keys carry a unique electronic code. For this reason, and to assure your safety, obtaining a replacement key requires some waiting time. They are only available through an Authorized Mazda Dealer.*
- *Always keep a spare key, in case one is lost. If a key is lost, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.*
- *If you lose a key, an Authorized Mazda Dealer will reset the electronic codes of your remaining keys and immobilizer system. Bring all the remaining keys to an Authorized Mazda Dealer to reset. Starting the vehicle with a key that has not been reset is not possible.*

▼Operation

Arming

The system is armed when the ignition switch is turned from the ON to the ACC or LOCK position.
The security indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes every two seconds until the system is disarmed.

Disarming

The system is disarmed when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position with the correct ignition key.
The security indicator light illuminates for about three seconds and goes out.

If the engine does not start with the correct ignition key, and the security indicator light keeps illuminating or flashing, the system may have a malfunction. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

- *If the security indicator light illuminates and stays on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, the engine will not start.*
- *Signals from a TV or radio station, or from a transceiver or a mobile telephone, could interfere with your immobilizer system. If you are using the proper key and your engine fails to start, check the security indicator light. If it is flashing, remove the ignition key and wait 2 seconds or more, then reinsert it and try starting the engine again. If it does not start after 3 or more tries, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.*
- *If the security indicator light flashes continuously while you are driving, do not shut off the engine. Go to an Authorized Mazda Dealer and have it checked. If you shut off the engine while the light is flashing you will not be able to restart it.*
- *Since the electronic codes are reset when repairing the immobilizer system, the keys are needed. Bring all the existing keys to an Authorized Mazda Dealer.*

▼Modification and Add-On Equipment

Mazda cannot guarantee the immobilizer system's operation if the system has been modified or if any add-on equipment has been installed.

⚠CAUTION

To avoid damage to your vehicle, do not modify the system or install any add-on equipment to the immobilizer system or the vehicle.

Theft-Deterrent System*

If the theft deterrent system detects an inappropriate entry into the vehicle, which could result in the vehicle or its contents being stolen, the alarm alerts the surrounding area of an abnormality by sounding the horn and flashing the hazard warning lights.
Refer to Operation on page 3-28.

NOTE

- *The theft-deterrent system operates with the key or the keyless entry system transmitter.*
- *The system will not function unless it is properly armed. To properly secure the vehicle, always make sure all windows are completely closed and all doors and the trunk lid/liftgate are locked before leaving the vehicle. Remember to take your key and transmitter.*

▼Operation

System triggering conditions

The horn sounds intermittently and the hazard warning lights flash for about 3 minutes when the system is triggered by any one of the following:

- Forcing open a door, the hood or the trunk lid/liftgate.
- Unlocking a door with the door lock switch.
- Opening a door by operating an inside door-lock knob.
- Opening the hood by operating the hood release handle.
- Opening the trunk lid by operating the trunk lid release lever.

If the system is triggered again, the lights and horn will activate until a door or the trunk lid is unlocked with the key or with the transmitter.

*Some models.
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE
If the battery goes dead while the theft-deterrent system is armed, the horn will activate and the hazard warning lights will flash when the battery is charged or replaced.

▼How to Arm the System

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Make sure the hood is closed. Close and lock all doors and the liftgate/trunk lid from the outside using the key. If you have the keyless entry system, press the lock button on the transmitter.

   The following method will also arm the theft-deterrent system:
   Close the hood and the liftgate/trunk lid . Press the area on the door-lock switch marked “LOCK” once. Close all doors.
   The hazard warning lights will flash once to indicate that the system is armed.

NOTE
Locking the doors with the inside door-lock knob will not arm the system.

▼To Turn off an Armed System

An armed system can be turned off by any one of the following methods:
- Unlock a door or the trunk lid with the key.
- Press the unlock button on the keyless entry system transmitter.
- Insert the key into the ignition switch and turn it to the ON position.

▼To Stop an Alarm

A triggered alarm can be turned off by any one of the following methods:
- Unlock a door or the trunk lid with the key.
- Press the unlock button on the keyless entry system transmitter.

NOTE
If you have any problem with the theft-deterrent system, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

▼Theft-Deterrent Labels

A label indicating that your vehicle is equipped with a Theft-Deterrent System is in the glove compartment.

Mazda recommends that you affix it to the lower rear corner of a front door window.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Steering Wheel

⚠ WARNING

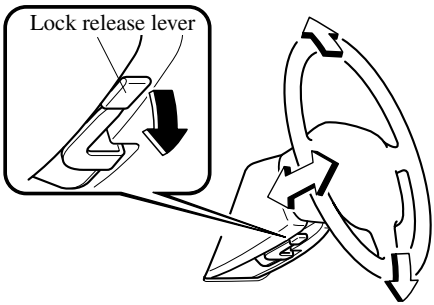
Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving:

Adjusting the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Moving it can very easily cause the driver to abruptly turn to the left or right. This can lead to loss of control or an accident.

▼Steering Wheel Adjustment

To change the angle or length of the steering wheel:

1. Stop the vehicle, pull down the lock release lever under the steering column.



2. Tilt the steering wheel and/or adjust the steering column length to the desired positions, push the lever up to lock the column.
3. Push the wheel up and down to be certain it's locked before driving.

Mirrors

▼Outside Mirrors

Check the mirror angles before driving.

Mirror type

Flat type (driver's side)
Flat surface mirror.
Convex type (front passenger side)
The mirror has single curvature on its surface.

⚠ WARNING

Be sure to look over your shoulder before changing lanes:

Changing lanes without taking into account the actual distance of the vehicle in the convex mirror is dangerous. You could have a serious accident. What you see in the convex mirror is closer than it appears.

Power mirror

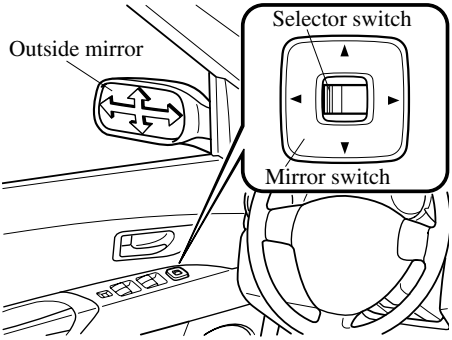
The ignition switch must be in the ACC or ON position.

To adjust:

1. Move the selector switch to the left or right to choose the left or right side mirror.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

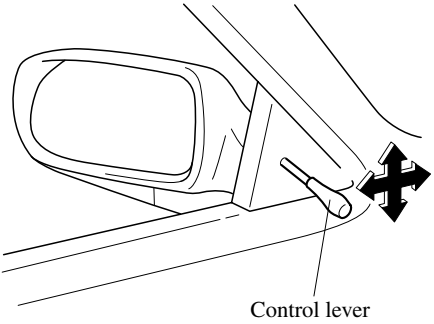
2. Depress the mirror switch in the appropriate direction.



After adjusting the mirror, lock the control by moving the selector switch to the middle position.

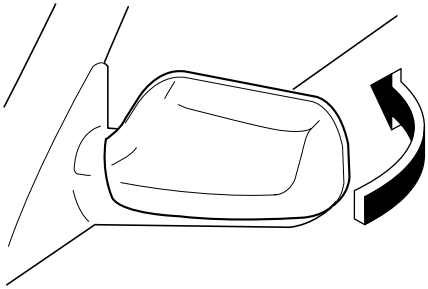
Manual control mirror

To adjust, move the mirror's control lever, just inside the door.



Folding the mirror

Fold the outside mirror rearward until it is flush with the vehicle.



⚠ WARNING

Always return the outside mirrors to the driving position before you start driving:

Driving with the outside mirrors folded in is dangerous. Your rear view will be restricted, and you could have an accident.

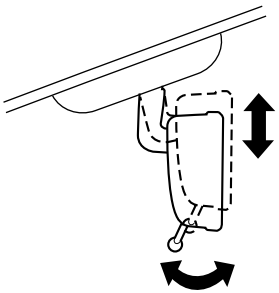
▼Rearview Mirror

Rearview mirror adjustment

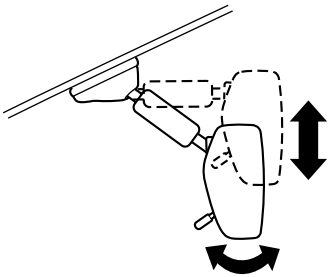
Before driving, adjust the rearview mirror to center on the scene through the rear window.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Type A



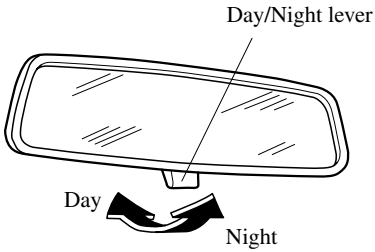
Type B



Reducing glare from headlights

Adjust the mirror with the day/night lever in the day position.

Push the lever forward for day driving. Pull it back to reduce glare from headlights.



⚠ WARNING

Do not stack cargo or objects higher than the seatbacks:

Cargo stacked higher than the seatbacks is dangerous. It can block your view in the rearview mirror, which might cause you to hit another car when changing lanes.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

4 Before Driving Your Mazda

Important information about driving your Mazda.

Fuel and Engine Exhaust Precautions 4-2
Fuel Requirements 4-2
Emission Control System 4-4
Engine Exhaust (Carbon Monoxide) 4-5

Before Starting the Engine 4-6
Before Getting In 4-6
After Getting In 4-6

Driving Tips 4-7
Break-In Period 4-7
Money-Saving Suggestions 4-7
Hazardous Driving 4-8
Floor Mat 4-9
Rocking the Vehicle 4-9
Winter Driving 4-10
Driving In Flooded Area 4-11
Overloading 4-12
Driving on Uneven Road 4-13
Turbocharger Information* 4-14

Towing 4-15
Trailer Towing 4-15

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuel Requirements

Vehicles with catalytic converters or oxygen sensors must use ONLY UNLEADED FUEL, which will reduce exhaust emissions and keep spark plug fouling to a minimum.

2.3-liter turbocharger engine
Your Mazda will perform best with fuel listed in the table.

Fuel	Octane Rating* (Anti-knock index)
Premium unleaded fuel	91 [(R+M)/2 method] or above (96 RON or above)

* U.S. federal law requires that octane ratings be posted on gasoline station pumps.

This vehicle is designed for and requires use of premium unleaded fuel. If 91 octane fuel [(R+M)/2 method] (96RON) is not available, gasoline as low as 87 octane [(R+M)/2 method] (91RON) can be used temporarily for emergency purposes. Use of gasoline lower than 91 octane [(R+M)/2 method] (96RON) can decrease performance during its use. Refueling the vehicle with the correct octane fuel a couple of times will restore vehicle performance.

Except 2.3-liter turbocharger engine
Your Mazda will perform best with fuel listed in the table.

Fuel	Octane Rating* (Anti-knock index)
Regular unleaded fuel	87 [(R+M)/2 method] or above (91 RON or above)

* U.S. federal law requires that octane ratings be posted on gasoline station pumps.

Fuel with a rating lower than 87 octane (91 RON) could cause the emission control system to lose effectiveness. It could also cause engine knocking and serious engine damage.

⚠ CAUTION

- *USE ONLY UNLEADED FUEL.*
  Leaded fuel is harmful to the catalytic converter and oxygen sensors and will lead to deterioration of the emission control system and or failures.
- *Your vehicle can only use oxygenated fuels containing no more than 10% ethanol by volume. Damage to your vehicle may occur when ethanol exceeds this recommendation, or if the gasoline contains any methanol. Stop using gasohol of any kind if your vehicle engine is performing poorly.*
- *Never add fuel system additives. Never add cleaning agents other than those specified by Mazda. Other cleaning agents and additives may damage the system. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.*

Gasoline blended with oxygenates such as alcohol or ether compounds are generally referred to as oxygenated fuels. The common gasoline blend that can be used with your vehicle is ethanol blended at no more than 10%. Gasoline containing alcohol, such as ethanol or methanol, may be marketed under the name “Gasohol”.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuel and Engine Exhaust Precautions

Vehicle damage and drivability problems resulting from the use of the following may not be covered by the Mazda warranty.

- Gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol.
- Gasoline or gasohol containing methanol.
- Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Emission Control System

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system (the catalytic converter is part of this system) that enables your vehicle to comply with existing exhaust emissions requirements.

⚠ WARNING

Never park over or near anything flammable:

Parking over or near anything flammable, such as dry grass, is dangerous. Even with the engine turned off, the exhaust system remains very hot after normal use and could ignite anything flammable. A resulting fire could cause serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring the following precautions could cause lead to accumulate on the catalyst inside the converter or cause the converter to get very hot. Either condition will damage the converter and cause poor performance.

- *USE ONLY UNLEADED FUEL.*
- *Do not drive your Mazda with any sign of engine malfunction.*
- *Do not coast with the ignition switch turned off.*
- *Do not descend steep grades in gear with the ignition switch turned off.*
- *Do not operate the engine at high idle for more than 2 minutes.*
- *Do not tamper with the emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by a qualified technician.*
- *Do not push-start or pull-start your vehicle.*

NOTE

Under U.S. federal law, any modification to the original-equipment emission control system before the first sale and registration of a vehicle is subject to penalties. In some states, such modification made on a used vehicle is also subject to penalties.

NOTE

While the engine is off, the sound of a valve opening and closing can be heard at the rear of the right side of the vehicle, however this does not indicate an abnormality. Your vehicle has a self-checking device and it operates while the engine is off.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Exhaust (Carbon Monoxide)

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle:

Engine exhaust gas is dangerous. This gas contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless, odorless, and poisonous. When inhaled, it can cause loss of consciousness and death. If you smell exhaust gas inside your vehicle, keep all windows fully open and contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer immediately.

Do not run the engine when inside an enclosed area:

Running the engine inside an enclosed area, such as a garage, is dangerous. Exhaust gas, which contains poisonous carbon monoxide, could easily enter the cabin. Loss of consciousness or even death could occur.

Open the windows or adjust the heating or cooling system to draw fresh air when idling the engine:

Exhaust gas is dangerous. When your vehicle is stopped with the windows closed and the engine running for a long time even in an open area, exhaust gas, which contains poisonous carbon monoxide, could enter the cabin. Loss of consciousness or even death could occur.

Clear snow from underneath and around your vehicle, particularly the tail pipe, before starting the engine:

Running the engine when a vehicle is stopped in deep snow is dangerous. The exhaust pipe could be blocked by the snow, allowing exhaust gas to enter the cabin. Because exhaust gas contains poisonous carbon monoxide, it could cause loss of consciousness or even death to occupants in the cabin.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Before Starting the Engine

Before Getting In

- Be sure the windows, outside mirrors, and outside lights are clean.
- Inspect inflation pressures and condition of tires.
- Look under the vehicle for any sign of fluid leaks.
- If you plan to back up, make sure nothing is in your way.

NOTE

Engine oil, engine coolant, brake/clutch fluid, washer fluid, and other fluid levels should be inspected. See Maintenance, Section 8.

After Getting In

- Are all doors closed and locked?
- Is the seat adjusted properly?
- Are the inside and outside mirrors adjusted?
- Is everyone's seat belt fastened?
- Check all gauges.
- Check all warning lights when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes off.

Always be thoroughly familiar with your Mazda.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Break-In Period

No special break-in is necessary, but a few precautions in the first 1,000 km (600 miles) may add to the performance, economy, and life of your Mazda.

- Do not race the engine.
- Do not maintain one constant speed, either slow or fast, for a long period of time.
- Do not drive constantly at full-throttle or high engine rpm for extended periods of time.
- Avoid unnecessary hard stops.
- Avoid full-throttle starts.

Money-Saving Suggestions

How you operate your Mazda determines how far it will travel on a tank of fuel. Use these suggestions to help save money on fuel and repairs.

- Avoid long warm-ups. Once the engine runs smoothly, begin driving.
- Avoid fast starts.
- Keep the engine tuned. Follow the maintenance schedule (page 8-3) and have an Authorized Mazda Dealer perform inspections and servicing.
- Use the air conditioner only when necessary.
- Slow down on rough roads.
- Keep the tires properly inflated.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Keep the wheels in correct alignment.
- Keep windows closed at high speeds.
- Slow down when driving in crosswinds and headwinds.

⚠ WARNING

Never stop the engine when going down a hill:

Stopping the engine when going down a hill is dangerous. This causes the loss of power steering and power brake control, and may cause damage to the drivetrain. Any loss of steering or braking control could cause an accident.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Hazardous Driving

⚠ WARNING

Be extremely careful if it is necessary to downshift on slippery surfaces:

Downshifting into lower gear while driving on slippery surfaces is dangerous. The sudden change in tire speed could cause the tires to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.

Do not rely on ABS as a substitute for safe driving:

The ABS cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), driving on ice and snow, and hydroplaning (reduced tire friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

When driving on ice or in water, snow, mud, sand, or similar hazards:

- Be cautious and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden braking and sudden maneuvering.
- If your vehicle is not equipped with ABS, brake with the pedal by using a light up-down motion. Do not hold the pedal down constantly.
  If your vehicle is equipped with ABS, do not pump the brakes. Continue to press down on the brake pedal.
  Refer to Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) on page 5-7.
- If you get stuck, select a lower gear and accelerate slowly. Do not spin the front wheels.
- For more traction in starting on slippery surfaces such as ice or packed snow, use sand, rock salt, carpeting, or other nonslip material under the front wheels.

NOTE

Use snow chains only on the front wheels.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Floor Mat

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the floor mats are hooked on the retention pins to prevent them from bunching up under the foot pedals:

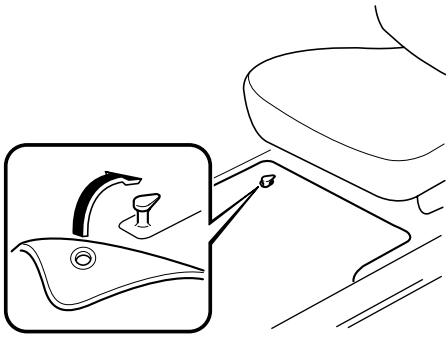
Using a floor mat that is not secured is dangerous as it will interfere with the accelerator and brake pedal operation, which could result in an accident.

Do not install two floor mats, one on top of the other, on the driver's side:

Installing two floor mats, one on top of the other, on the driver's side is dangerous as the retention pins can only keep one floor mat from sliding forward.

In using a heavy duty floor mat for winter use always remove the original floor mat.

Loose floor mat(s) will interfere with the foot pedal and could result in an accident.



When setting a floor mat, position the floor mat so that its eyelets and inserted over the pointed end of the retention posts.

Rocking the Vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Do not spin the wheels at more than 56 km/h (35 mph), and do not allow anyone to stand behind a wheel when pushing the vehicle:

When the vehicle is stuck, spinning the wheels at high speed is dangerous. The spinning tire could overheat and explode. This could cause serious injuries.

⚠ CAUTION

Too much rocking may cause engine overheating, transaxle failure, and tire damage.

If you must rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand or mud, depress the accelerator slightly and slowly move the shift lever from 1 (D) to R.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Winter Driving

- Carry emergency gear, including tire chains, window scraper, flares, a small shovel, jumper cables, and a small bag of sand or salt.

Ask an Authorized Mazda Dealer to perform the following precautions:

- Have the proper ratio of antifreeze in the radiator.
  Refer to Engine Coolant on page 8-21.
- Inspect the battery and its cables. Cold reduces battery capacity.
- Inspect the ignition system for damage and loose connections.
- Use washer fluid made with antifreeze—but do not use engine coolant antifreeze for washer fluid (page 8-27).
- Do not use the parking brake in freezing weather as it may freeze. Instead, shift to P with an automatic transaxle and to 1 or R with a manual transaxle. Block the rear wheels.

▼Snow Tires

Use snow tires on all four wheels

Do not go faster than 120 km/h (75 mph) while driving with snow tires. Inflate snow tires 30 kPa (0.3 kgf/cm^2, 4.3 psi) more than recommended on the tire pressure label (driver's door frame), but never more than the maximum cold-tire pressure shown on the tires.

Except 18-inch tires

Your vehicle is originally equipped with all season radials designed to be used all year around. In some extreme climates you may find it necessary to replace them with snow tires during the winter months to further improve traction on snow and ice covered roads.

18-inch tires

Your vehicle is originally equipped with summer tires designed for optimum traction on wet and dry roads. If your vehicle is to be used on snow and ice covered roads, Mazda recommends that you replace the tires originally equipped on your vehicle with snow tires during the winter months.

⚠ WARNING

Use only the same size and type tires (snow, radial, or non-radial) on all four wheels:

Using tires different in size or type is dangerous. Your vehicle's handling could be greatly affected and result in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

Check local regulations before using studded tires.

NOTE

If your vehicle is equipped with the tire pressure monitoring system, the system may not function correctly when using tires with steel wire reinforcement in the sidewalls (page 5-31).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Tire Chains

Check local regulations before using tire chains.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Chains may affect handling.*
- *Do not go faster than 50 km/h (30 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended limit, whichever is lower.*
- *Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, and sharp turns.*
- *Avoid locked-wheel braking.*
- *Do not use chains on a temporary spare tire; it may result in damage to the vehicle and to the tire.*
- *Do not use chains on roads that are free of snow or ice. The tires and chains could be damaged.*
- *Chains may scratch or chip aluminum wheels.*

NOTE

If your vehicle is equipped with the tire pressure monitoring system, the system may not function correctly when using tire chains.

Install the chains on the front tires.
Do not use chains on the rear tires.
Use only genuine Mazda tire chains.
Please consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Installing the chains

1. Secure the chains on the front tires as tightly as possible. Always follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.
2. Retighten the chains after driving 1/2 —1 km (1/4—1/2 mile).

Driving In Flooded Area

⚠ WARNING

Dry wet brakes by driving very slowly and applying the brakes lightly until brake performance returns to normal:

Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not drive the vehicle on flooded roads as it could cause short circuiting of electrical/electronic parts, or engine damage or stalling from water absorption. If the vehicle has been immersed in water, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Overloading

⚠ WARNING

Be careful not to overload your vehicle:
The gross axle weight rating (GAWR) and the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of your vehicle are on the Motor Vehicle Safety Standard Label on the driver's door frame. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can estimate the weight of your load by weighing the items (or people) before putting them in the vehicle.

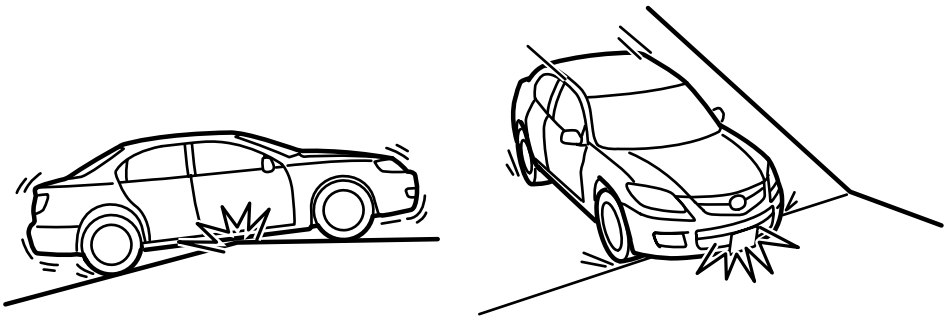
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving on Uneven Road

Your vehicle's suspension and underbody can be damaged if driven on rough/uneven roads or over speed bumps at excessive speeds. Use care and reduce speed when traveling on rough/uneven roads or over speed bumps.

Use care not to damage the vehicle's underbody, bumpers or muffler(s) when driving under the following conditions:

- Ascending or descending a slope with a sharp transition angle
- Ascending or descending a driveway or trailer ramp with a sharp transition angle



Your vehicle is equipped with low profile tires allowing class-leading performance and handling. As a result, the sidewall of the tires are very thin and the tires and wheels can be damaged if driven through potholes or on rough/uneven roads at excessive speeds. Use care and reduce speed when traveling on rough/uneven roads or through potholes.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Turbocharger Information *

The turbocharger greatly enhances engine power. Its advanced design provides improved operation and requires minimum additional maintenance. To get maximum performance from your turbocharged engine, take note of the following tips:

- The turbocharged engine is designed for optimal operation with premium unleaded gasoline (page 4-2). Do not use fuel with a lower octane rating. Extra fuel additives are NOT recommended.
- Change the engine oil and filter using the turbo engine interval outlined in the maintenance schedule (for your driving condition).
- Use only the recommended engine oil (page 8-18). Extra oil additives are NOT recommended.
- After driving at freeway speeds or up a long hill, idle the engine at least 30 seconds to cool the turbo before turning off the engine. Avoid simply shutting the engine off abruptly after a hard or long drive. Damage to the turbocharger may result.
- Do not race or over-rev the engine when starting. This should not be done with ANY engine, especially not with one that's turbocharged.
- Do not add any aftermarket devices to alter the engine's ignition timing, fuel delivery, or turbo boost pressure. This may lead to serious engine damage and may void your warranty.

* Some models.
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Trailer Towing

The Mazda3 is not designed for towing.
Never tow a trailer with your Mazda3.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5 Driving Your Mazda

Explanation of instruments and controls.

Starting and Driving 5-2
Ignition Switch 5-2
Starting the Engine 5-4
Brake System 5-5
Manual Transaxle Operation 5-9
Automatic Transaxle Controls 5-12
Power Steering 5-19
Cruise Control* 5-20
Traction Control System (TCS)* 5-23
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)* 5-24
Tire Pressure Monitoring System* 5-27

Instrument Cluster and Indicators 5-33
Meters and Gauges 5-33

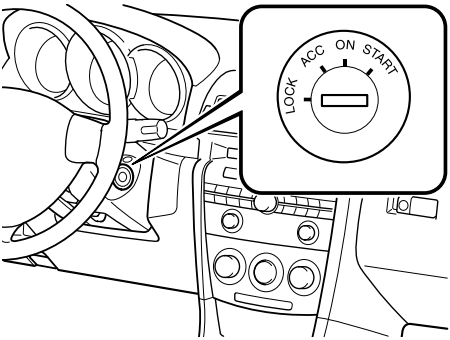
Warning/Indicator Lights and Beep Sounds 5-38
Warning/Indicator Lights 5-38
Beep Sounds 5-50

Switches and Controls 5-51
Lighting Control 5-51
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 5-54
Fog Lights* 5-55
Windshield Wipers and Washer 5-55
Rear Window Wiper and Washer (5 Door) 5-59
Rear Window Defroster 5-60
Horn 5-61
Hazard Warning Flasher 5-61

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Ignition Switch

▼Ignition Switch Positions

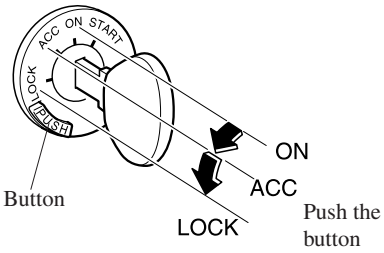


LOCK

The steering wheel locks to protect against theft. Only in this position can the key be removed.

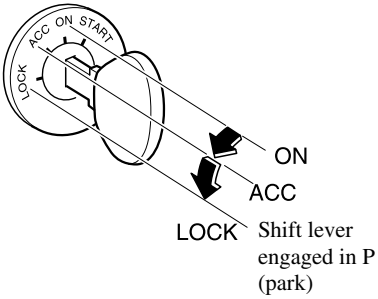
Manual transaxle

To turn the key from the ACC to the LOCK position, push the button when the key is at the ACC position, then turn the key to the LOCK position.



Automatic transaxle

To turn the key from the ACC to the LOCK position, the shift lever must be in the P position.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Remove the key only when the vehicle is parked:

Removing the key from the ignition switch while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Removing the key allows the steering wheel to lock. You will lose steering control and a serious accident could occur.

Before leaving the driver's seat, always put the key to LOCK position, set the parking brake and make sure the shift lever is in P with an automatic transaxle or in 1 or R with a manual transaxle:

It is important to place the key in the LOCK position even if you are not removing the key from the ignition or leaving the vehicle. Leaving the key in other positions will disable some of the vehicle security systems and run the battery down.
Leaving the driver's seat without putting the ignition switch in LOCK position, setting the parking brake and shifting the shift lever to P with an automatic transaxle, or to 1 or R with a manual transaxle is dangerous. Unexpected vehicle movement could occur. This could cause an accident.

NOTE

If turning the key is difficult, jiggle the steering wheel from side to side.
Leaving the key in any position but LOCK position also disables some of the security features and may run the battery down.

ACC (Accessory)

The steering wheel unlocks and some electrical accessories will operate.

ON

This is the normal running position after the engine is started. The warning lights (except brakes) should be inspected before the engine is started (page 5-38).

NOTE

When the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, the sound of the fuel pump motor operating near the fuel tank can be heard. This does not indicate an abnormality.

START

The engine is started in this position. It will crank until you release the key; then it returns to the ON position. The brake warning light can be checked after the engine is started (page 5-38).

▼Ignition Key Reminder

If the ignition switch is in the LOCK or ACC position with the key inserted, a continuous beep sound will be heard when the driver's door is opened.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting the Engine

NOTE

Engine-starting is controlled by the spark ignition system.
This system meets all Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

1. Occupants should fasten their seat belts.
2. Make sure the parking brake is on.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. **(Manual transaxle)**
   Depress the clutch pedal all the way and shift into neutral.
   Keep the clutch pedal depressed while cranking the engine.

   (Automatic transaxle)
   Put the vehicle in park (P). If you must restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift into neutral (N).

NOTE

(Manual transaxle)

The starter will not operate unless the clutch is depressed sufficiently.

(Automatic transaxle)

The starter will not operate if the shift lever is ***not*** *in P or N.*

5. Turn the ignition switch to the START position and hold (up to 10 seconds at a time) until the engine starts.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not try the starter for more than 10 seconds at a time. If the engine stalls or fails to start, wait 10 seconds before trying again. Otherwise, you may damage the starter and drain the battery.

6. After starting the engine, let it idle for about 10 seconds.

NOTE

- *In extremely cold weather or after the vehicle has not been driven in several days, let the engine warm up without operating the accelerator.*
- *Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started without use of the accelerator.*
- *If the engine does not start the first time, refer to Starting a Flooded Engine under Emergency Starting. If the engine still does not start, have your vehicle inspected by an Authorized Mazda Dealer (page 7-16).*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Brake System

▼Foot Brake

Your Mazda has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal use.

Should power-assist fail, you can stop by applying greater force than normal to the brake pedal. But the distance required to stop will be greater than usual.

⚠ WARNING

Do not coast with the engine stalled or turned off, find a safe place to stop:

Coasting with the engine stalled or turned off is dangerous. Braking will require more effort, and the brake's power-assist could be depleted if you pump the brake. This will cause longer stopping distances or even an accident.

Shift to a lower gear when going down steep hills:

Driving with your foot continuously on the brake pedal or steadily applying the brakes for long distances is dangerous. This causes overheated brakes, resulting in longer stopping distances or even total brake failure. This could cause loss of vehicle control and a serious accident. Avoid continuous application of the brakes.

Dry brakes that have become wet by driving very slowly and applying the brakes lightly until brake performance is normal:

Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Parking Brake

⚠ WARNING

Before leaving the driver's seat, always put the key to LOCK position, set the parking brake and make sure the shift lever is in P with an automatic transaxle or in 1 or R with a manual transaxle:

It is important to place the key in the LOCK position even if you are not removing the key from the ignition or leaving the vehicle. Leaving the key in other positions will disable some of the vehicle security systems and run the battery down.

Leaving the driver's seat without putting the ignition switch in LOCK position, setting the parking brake and shifting the shift lever to P with an automatic transaxle, or to 1 or R with a manual transaxle is dangerous. Unexpected vehicle movement could occur. This could cause an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

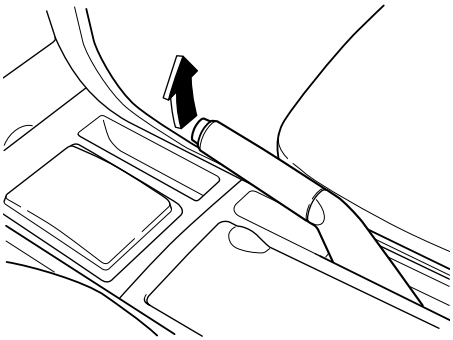
Driving with the parking brake on will cause excessive wear of the brake linings or pads.

NOTE

For parking in snow, refer to Winter Driving (page 4-10) regarding parking brake use.

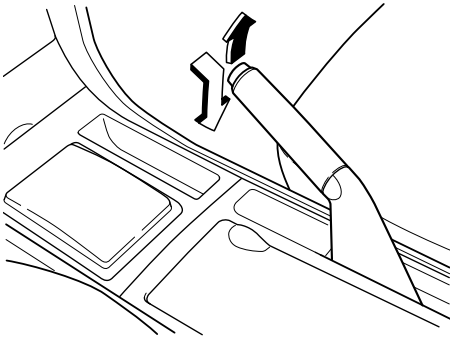
Setting the parking brake

Depress the brake pedal and then firmly pull the parking brake lever fully upwards with sufficient force to hold the vehicle in a stationary position.



Releasing the parking brake

Depress the brake pedal and pull the parking brake lever upwards, then press the release button. While holding the button, lower the parking brake lever all the way down to the released position.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Brake System Warning Light

This warning has the following functions:

Parking brake warning

The light illuminates when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position. It turns off when the parking brake is fully released.

Low brake fluid level warning

If the light stays on after the parking brake is fully released, you may have a brake problem.

Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way.

You may notice that the pedal is harder to depress or that it may go closer to the floor. In either case, it will take longer to stop the vehicle.

1. With the engine stopped, open the hood and check the brake fluid level immediately, and then add fluid if required (page 8-23).
2. After adding fluid, check the light again.

If the warning light remains on, or if the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle. Have it towed to an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Even if the light turns off have your brake system inspected as soon as possible by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

NOTE

Having to add brake fluid is sometimes an indicator of leakage. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible even if the brake light is no longer illuminated.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with the brake system warning light illuminated. Contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer to have the brakes inspected as soon as possible:

Driving with the brake system warning light illuminated is dangerous. It indicates that your brakes may not work at all or that they could completely fail at any time. If this light remains illuminated, after checking that the parking brake is fully released, have the brakes inspected immediately.

▼Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)*

The ABS control unit continuously monitors the speed of each wheel. If one is about to lock up, the ABS responds by automatically releasing and reapplying that wheel's brake.

The driver will feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal and may hear a chattering noise from the brake system. This is normal when the ABS operates. Continue to depress the brake pedal without pumping the brakes.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely on ABS as a substitute for safe driving:

The ABS cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), driving on ice and snow, and hydroplaning (reduced tire friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

NOTE

- *Braking distances may be longer on loose surfaces (snow or gravel, for example) which usually have a hard foundation. A vehicle with a normal braking system may require less distance to stop under these conditions because the tires will build up a wedge of surface layer when the wheels skid.*
- *The sound of the ABS operating may be heard when starting the engine or immediately after starting the vehicle. However, it does not indicate a malfunction.*

▼ABS Warning Light*

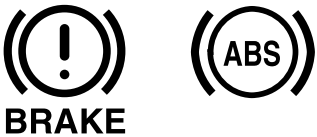
The warning light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

If the ABS warning light stays on while you're driving, the ABS control unit has detected a system malfunction. If this occurs, your brakes will function normally as if the vehicle had no ABS.
Should this happen, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.

NOTE

When the engine is jump-started to charge the battery, uneven rpm occurs and the ABS warning light may illuminate. If this occurs, it is the result of the weak battery and does not indicate an ABS malfunction.
Recharge the battery.

▼Electronic Brake Force Distribution System Warning*



If the electronic brake force distribution control unit determines that some components are operating incorrectly, the control unit may illuminate the brake system warning light and the ABS warning light on simultaneously. The problem is likely to be the electronic brake force distribution system.

*Some models.
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with both the ABS warning light and brake warning light illuminated. Have the vehicle towed to an Authorized Mazda Dealer to have the brakes inspected as soon as possible:

Driving when the brake system warning light and ABS warning light are illuminated simultaneously is dangerous.
When both lights are illuminated, the rear wheels could lock more quickly in an emergency stop than under normal circumstances.

▼Brake Assist*

During emergency braking situations when it is necessary to depress the brake pedal with greater force, the brake assist system provides braking assistance, thus enhancing braking performance.

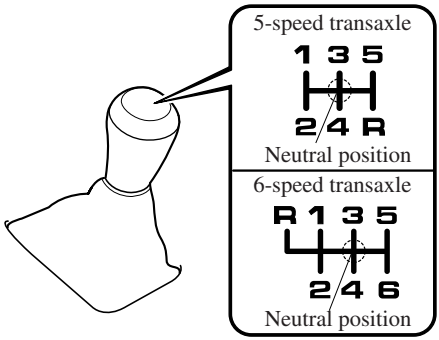
When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, the brakes apply more firmly.

NOTE

- *When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, the pedal will feel softer but the brakes will apply more firmly. This is a normal effect of the brake assist operation and does not indicate an abnormality.*
- *When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, a clicking noise from the brake booster may be heard. This is a normal effect of the brake assist and does not indicate an abnormality.*
- *The brake assist equipment does not supersede the functionality of the vehicle's main braking system.*

Manual Transaxle Operation

▼Manual Transaxle Shift Pattern



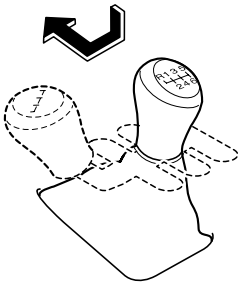
The vehicle is equipped with either a 5-speed or 6-speed manual transaxle. The shift pattern for each is shown above.

Depress the clutch pedal all the way down while shifting; then release it slowly.

(5-speed transaxle)
A safety feature prevents accidental shifting from 5 to R (reverse). The shift lever must be put in neutral before being shifted to R.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

(6-speed transaxle)
Vehicles with 6-speed transaxle are equipped with a device to prevent shifting to R (reverse) by mistake. Push the shift lever downward and shift to R.



⚠ WARNING

Do not use sudden engine braking on slippery road surfaces or at high speeds:

Shifting down while driving on wet, snowy, or frozen roads, or while driving at high speeds causes sudden engine braking, which is dangerous. The sudden change in tire speed could cause the tires to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.

Be sure to leave the shift lever in 1 or R position and set the parking brake when leaving the vehicle unattended:

Otherwise the vehicle could move and cause an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Keep your foot off the clutch pedal except when shifting gears. Also, do not use the clutch to hold the vehicle on an upgrade. Riding the clutch will cause needless clutch wear and damage.*
- *Make sure the vehicle comes to a complete stop before shifting to R. Shifting to R while the vehicle is still moving may damage the transaxle.*

NOTE

If shifting to R is difficult, shift back into neutral, release the clutch pedal, and try again.

▼Recommendations for Shifting

Upshifting

For normal acceleration, we recommend these shift points.

Gear	5-speed transaxle	6-speed transaxle
1 to 2	21 km/h (13 mph)	24 km/h (15 mph)
2 to 3	39 km/h (24 mph)	40 km/h (25 mph)
3 to 4	55 km/h (34 mph)	65 km/h (40 mph)
4 to 5	79 km/h (49 mph)	73 km/h (45 mph)
5 to 6	—	81 km/h (50 mph)

For cruising

Gear	5-speed transaxle	6-speed transaxle
1 to 2	18 km/h (11 mph)	24 km/h (15 mph)
2 to 3	29 km/h (18 mph)	40 km/h (25 mph)
3 to 4	47 km/h (29 mph)	65 km/h (40 mph)
4 to 5	68 km/h (42 mph)	73 km/h (45 mph)
5 to 6	—	81 km/h (50 mph)

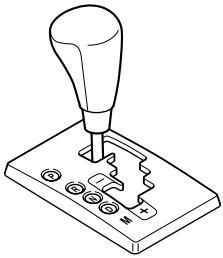
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

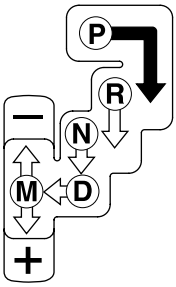
Downshifting

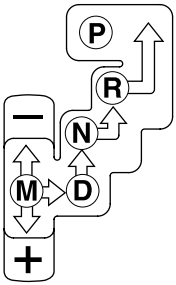
When you must slow down in heavy traffic or on a steep **upgrade**, downshift before the engine starts to overwork. This reduces the chance of stalling and gives better acceleration when you need more speed.
On a steep **downgrade**, downshifting helps maintain safe speed and prolongs brake life.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Transaxle Controls







Various Lockouts:

Indicates that you must depress the brake pedal to shift (The ignition switch must be in the ON position).

Indicates the shift lever can be shifted freely into any position.

NOTE

The Sport AT has an option that is not included in the traditional automatic transaxle - giving the driver the option of selecting each gear instead of leaving it to the transaxle to shift gears. Even if you intend to use the automatic transaxle functions as a traditional automatic, you should also be aware that you can inadvertently shift into manual shift mode and an inappropriate gear may be retained as the vehicle speed increases. If you notice the engine speed going higher or hear the engine racing, confirm you have not accidentally slipped into manual shift mode (page 5-14).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Transaxle Ranges

The shift lever must be in P or N to operate the starter.

P (Park)

P locks the transaxle and prevents the front wheels from rotating.

⚠ WARNING

Always set the shift lever to P and set the parking brake:

Only setting the shift lever to the P position without using the parking brake to hold the vehicle is dangerous. If P fails to hold, the vehicle could move and cause an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Shifting into P, N or R while the vehicle is moving can damage your transaxle.*
- *Shifting into a driving gear or reverse when the engine is running faster than idle can damage the transaxle.*

R (Reverse)

In position R, the vehicle moves only backward. You must be at a complete stop before shifting to or from R, except under rare circumstances as explained in Rocking the Vehicle (page 4-9).

N (Neutral)

In N, the wheels and transaxle are not locked. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or brakes are on.

⚠ WARNING

If the engine is running faster than idle, do not shift from N or P into a driving gear:

It's dangerous to shift from N or P into a driving gear when the engine is running faster than idle. If this is done, the vehicle could move suddenly, causing an accident or serious injury.

Do not shift into N when driving the vehicle:

Shifting into N while driving is dangerous. Engine braking cannot be applied when decelerating which could lead to an accident or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not shift into N when driving the vehicle. Doing so can cause transaxle damage.

NOTE

Apply the parking brake or depress the brake pedal before moving the shift lever from N to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

D (Drive)

D is the normal driving position. From a stop, the transaxle will automatically shift through a 4-gear/5-gear* sequence.
* 2.3-liter engine model

M (Manual)

M is the manual shift mode position. Gears can be shifted up or down by operating the shift lever.
Refer to Manual Shift Mode (page 5-14).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Shift-Lock System

The shift-lock system prevents shifting out of P unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift from P:

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine.
3. Move the shift lever.

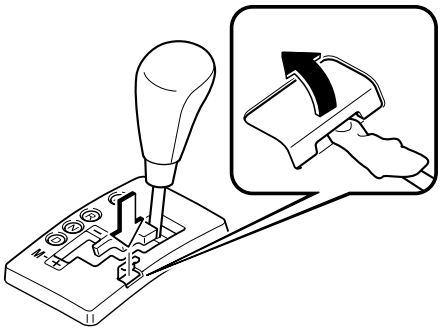
NOTE

- *When the ignition switch is in the ACC or LOCK position, the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.*
- *To be sure the vehicle is in park,* ***the ignition key cannot be removed unless the shift lever is in P.***

▼Shift-Lock Override

If the shift lever will not move from P using the proper shift procedure, continue to hold down the pedal.

1. Remove the shift-lock override cover using a cloth-wrapped flat head screwdriver.
2. Insert a screwdriver and push it down.



3. Move the shift lever.
4. Take the vehicle to an Authorized Mazda Dealer to have the system checked.

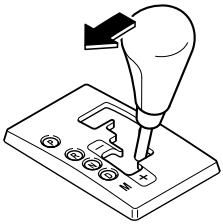
▼Manual Shift Mode

This mode gives you the feel of driving a manual transaxle vehicle by operating the shift lever and allows you to control engine rpm and torque to the front wheels much like a manual transaxle when more control is desired.

To change to manual shift mode, shift the lever from D to M.

NOTE

Changing to manual mode can be done while driving the vehicle with no damage occurring to the transaxle.



To return to automatic shift mode, shift the lever from M to D.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

- *If you change to manual shift mode when the vehicle is stopped, the gear will shift to M1.*
- *If you shift up once when the vehicle is stopped and the gear is at M1, the gear will shift to M2. M2 is helpful for starting on slippery surfaces.*
- ***(2.3-liter engine model)***
  If you change to manual shift mode without depressing the accelerator pedal when driving in D range, 5th gear, the gear will shift to M4.

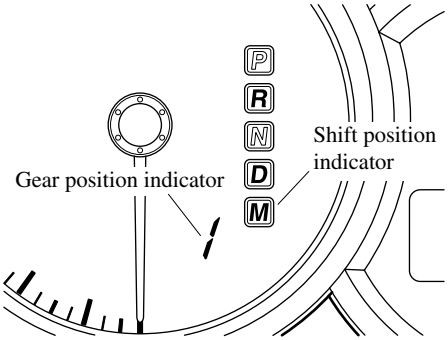
Indicators

Shift position indicator

In manual shift mode, the “M” of the shift position indicator in the instrument panel illuminates.

Gear position indicator

The numeral for the selected gear illuminates.



NOTE

- *If the gears cannot be shifted down when driving at higher speeds, the gear position indicator will flash twice to signal that the gears cannot be shifted down.*
- *If the automatic transaxle fluid (ATF) temperature becomes too high, there is the possibility that the transaxle will switch to automatic shift mode, canceling manual shift mode and turning off the gear position indicator illumination. This is a normal function to protect the AT. After the ATF temperature has decreased, the gear position indicator illumination turns back on and driving in manual shift mode is restored.*

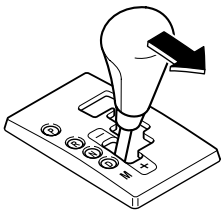
Shifting

Manually Shifting up

(M1→M2→M3→M4→M5*)

To shift up to a higher gear, tap the shift lever back (+) once.

* 2.3-liter engine model



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

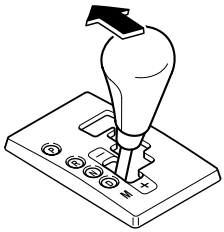
- *When driving slowly, the gears may not shift up depending on vehicle speed.*
- *In manual shift mode, gears do not shift up automatically. Don't run the engine with the tachometer needle in the RED ZONE. If the tachometer needle enters the RED ZONE, you may feel engine-braking because the fuel delivery will be stopped to protect the engine. However, this does not indicate an abnormality.*
- *When depressing the accelerator fully, the transaxle will shift to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed.*

Manually Shifting down

(M5*→M4→M3→M2→M1)

To shift down to a lower gear, tap the shift lever forward (−) once.

* 2.3-liter engine model



⚠ WARNING

Do not use sudden engine braking on slippery road surfaces or at high speeds:

Shifting down while driving on wet, snowy, or frozen roads, or while driving at high speeds causes sudden engine braking, which is dangerous. The sudden change in tire speed could cause the tires to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.

Be sure to leave the shift lever in 1 or R position and set the parking brake when leaving the vehicle unattended:

Otherwise the vehicle could move and cause an accident.

NOTE

- *When driving at high speeds, the gear may not shift down depending on vehicle speed.*
- *During deceleration, the gear may automatically shift down depending on vehicle speed.*
- *When depressing the accelerator fully, the transaxle will shift to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed.*

Second gear fixed mode

When the shift lever is tapped back (+) while the vehicle is stopped or driven at the following speeds, the transaxle is set in the second gear fixed mode.

2.0-liter engine model:
14 km/h (8 mph) or less
2.3-liter engine model:
20 km/h (12 mph) or less

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The gear is fixed in second while in this mode for easier starting and driving on slippery roads. If the shift lever is tapped back (+) or forward (−) while in the second gear fixed mode, the mode will be canceled.

Shifting specification (2.0-liter engine model)

Shifting up

If the vehicle speed is lower than the speed specified for each gear, the gear cannot be shifted up to a higher gear.

Gear	Vehicle speed
M1→M2	You can shift up to M2 whether the vehicle is stopped or moving.
M2→M3	20 km/h (12 mph)
M3→M4	40 km/h (24 mph)

Shifting down

If the vehicle speed is higher than the speed specified for each gear, the gear cannot be shifted to a lower gear so as to protect the transaxle.

Gear	Vehicle speed
M4→M3	180 km/h (112 mph)
M3→M2	119 km/h (74 mph)
M2→M1	47 km/h (30 mph)

During deceleration, the gears shift down automatically when speed is reduced to the following:

Gear	Vehicle speed
M4→M3	36 km/h (22 mph)
M3 or M2→M1	12 km/h (7 mph)

NOTE

The gear does not shift down to M1 automatically while in the second gear fixed mode.

If the vehicle is kicked down at the following speeds or lower, the gears shift down automatically:

Gear	Vehicle speed
M4→M3	170 km/h (105 mph)
M3→M2	72 km/h (44 mph)

Shifting specification (2.3-liter engine model)

Shifting up

If the vehicle speed is lower than the speed specified for each gear, the gear cannot be shifted up to a higher gear.

Gear	Vehicle speed
M1→M2	You can shift up to M2 whether the vehicle is stopped or moving.
M2→M3	20 km/h (12 mph)
M3→M4	33 km/h (21 mph)
M4→M5	

Shifting down

If the vehicle speed is higher than the speed specified for each gear, the gear cannot be shifted to a lower gear so as to protect the transaxle.

Gear	Vehicle speed
M5→M4	191 km/h (118 mph)
M4→M3	137 km/h (85 mph)
M3→M2	89 km/h (55 mph)
M2→M1	44 km/h (27 mph)

During deceleration, the gears shift down automatically when speed is reduced to the following:

Gear	Vehicle speed
M5 or M4→M3	30 km/h (18 mph)
M3 or M2→M1	10 km/h (6 mph)

NOTE

The gear does not shift down to M1 automatically while in the second gear fixed mode.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the vehicle is kicked down at the following speeds or lower, the gears shift down automatically:

Gear	Vehicle speed
M5→M4	182 km/h (113 mph)
M4→M3	133 km/h (82 mph)
M3→M2	48 km/h (30 mph)

Recommendations for shifting

Upshifting

For normal acceleration and cruising, we recommend these shift points.

(2.0-liter engine model)

Gear	Vehicle speed
M1 to M2	24 km/h (15 mph)
M2 to M3	40 km/h (25 mph)
M3 to M4	65 km/h (40 mph)

(2.3-liter engine model)

Gear	Vehicle speed
M1 to M2	24 km/h (15 mph)
M2 to M3	40 km/h (25 mph)
M3 to M4	65 km/h (40 mph)
M4 to M5	73 km/h (45 mph)

Downshifting

When you must slow down in heavy traffic or on a steep **upgrade**, downshift before the engine starts to overwork. This gives better acceleration when you need more speed.

On a steep **downgrade**, downshifting helps maintain safe speed and prolongs brake life.

▼Driving Tips

Passing

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing steep grades, depress the accelerator fully. The transaxle will shift to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed.

Climbing steep grades from a stop

To climb a steep grade from a stopped position:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift to D or M1, depending on the load weight and grade steepness.
3. Release the brake pedal while gradually accelerating.

Descending steep grades

When descending a steep grade, shift to lower gears, depending on load weight and grade steepness. Descend slowly, using the brakes only occasionally to prevent them from overheating.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Steering

Power steering is only operable when the engine is running. If the engine is off or if the power steering system is inoperable, you can still steer, but it requires more physical effort.

If the steering feels stiffer than usual during normal driving, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Never hold the steering wheel to the extreme left or right for more than 5 seconds with the engine running. This could damage the power steering system.

▼Power Steering Malfunction Indicator Light*

This indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position and goes off when the engine is started.

If the light stays illuminated after the engine is started or illuminates while driving, turn off the engine after parking in a safe place, and then start the engine again.
If the light does not illuminate after restarting the engine, this indicates that the power steering is restored and normal steering is possible.
If the light remains illuminated, the power steering is still inoperable. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

NOTE

The power steering system is inoperable when the power steering malfunction indicator light illuminates. Steering is possible, but requires more physical effort.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Cruise Control*

With cruise control, you can set and automatically maintain any speed of more than about 30 km/h (19 mph).

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the cruise control under the following conditions:

Using the cruise control under the following conditions is dangerous and could result in loss of vehicle control.

- *Hilly terrain*
- *Steep inclines*
- *Heavy or unsteady traffic*
- *Slippery or winding roads*
- *Similar restrictions that require inconsistent speed*

▼Cruise Main Indicator Light (Amber)/Cruise Set Indicator Light (Green)

CRUISE

The indicator light has two colors.

Cruise Main Indicator Light (Amber)

The indicator light illuminates amber when the ON/OFF switch is pressed and the cruise control system is activated.

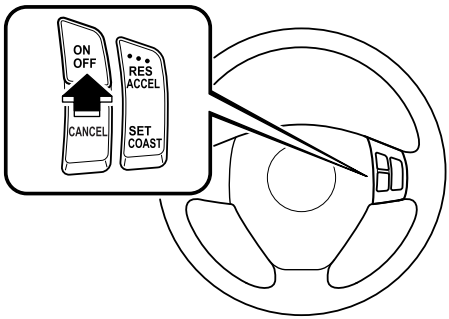
Cruise Set Indicator Light (Green)

The indicator light illuminates green when a cruising speed has been set.

▼Activation/Deactivation

To activate the system, press the ON/OFF switch.
The cruise main indicator light illuminates.

To deactivate the system, press the switch again.
The cruise main indicator light turns off.



⚠ WARNING

Keep the ON/OFF switch off when cruise control is not in use:

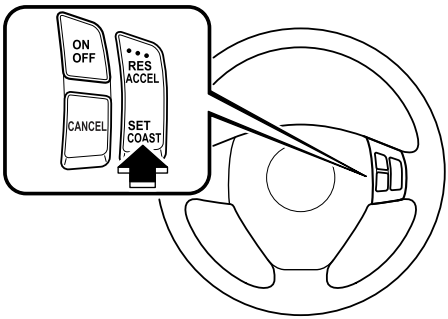
Leaving the ON/OFF switch on when not using the cruise control is dangerous as you may hit one of the other buttons and put the vehicle in cruise control unexpectedly. This could result in loss of vehicle control.

▼To Set Speed

1. Activate the cruise control system by pressing the ON/OFF switch.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 30 km/h (19 mph).

*Some models.
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Press the SET/COAST switch and release it at the speed you want. Release the accelerator simultaneously.



Do not continue to hold in the switch. Until you release it, speed will continue to drop (unless you continue to accelerate) and you'll miss the desired speed.

NOTE

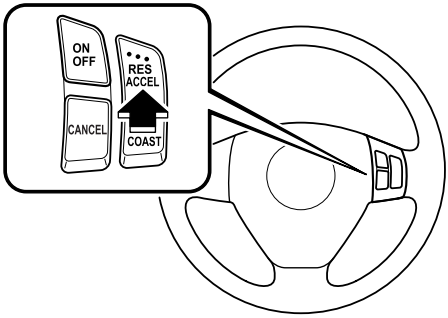
- *The SET function cannot be activated until about 2 seconds after the ON/OFF switch has been engaged.*
- *On a steep grade, the vehicle may momentarily slow down while ascending, or speed up while descending.*
- *Cruise control will turn off if vehicle speed drops below 25 km/h (16 mph) when cruise is activated, such as when climbing a steep grade.*

▼To Increase Cruising Speed

Follow either of these procedures.

To increase speed using cruise control switch

Press the RES/ACCEL switch and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate.
Release the switch at the speed you want.

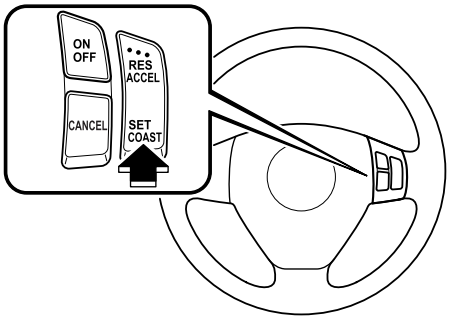


Your vehicle has a tap-up feature that allows you to increase your current speed in increments of 1.6 km/h (1 mph) by a momentary tap of the RES/ACCEL switch. Multiple taps will increase your vehicle speed 1.6 km/h (1 mph) for each tap.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To increase speed using accelerator pedal

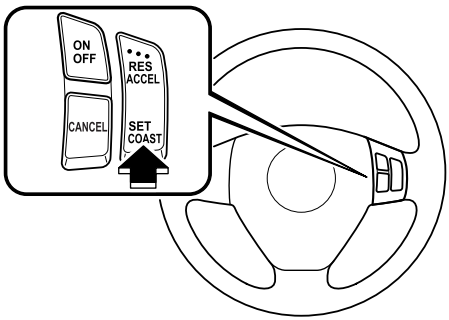
Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate to the desired speed.
Press the SET/COAST switch and release it immediately.



NOTE
Accelerate if you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on. Greater speed will not interfere with or change the set speed. Take your foot off the accelerator to return to the set speed.

▼To Decrease Cruising Speed

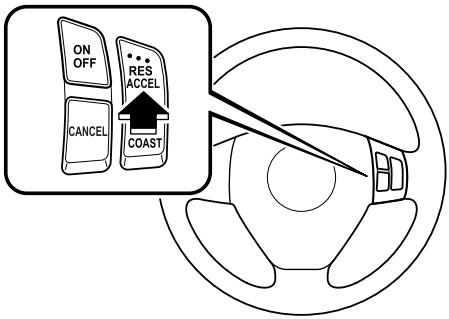
Press the SET/COAST switch and hold it.
The vehicle will gradually slow.
Release the switch at the speed you want.



Your vehicle has a tap-down feature that allows you to decrease your current speed in decrements of 1.6 km/h (1 mph) by a momentary tap of the SET/COAST switch. Multiple taps will decrease your vehicle speed 1.6 km/h (1 mph) for each tap.

▼To Resume Cruising Speed at More Than 30 km/h (19 mph)

If some other method besides the ON/OFF switch was used to cancel cruising speed (such as applying the brake pedal) and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when the RES/ACCEL switch is pressed. If vehicle speed is below 30 km/h (19 mph), increase the vehicle speed up to 30 km/h (19 mph) or more and press the RES/ACCEL switch.

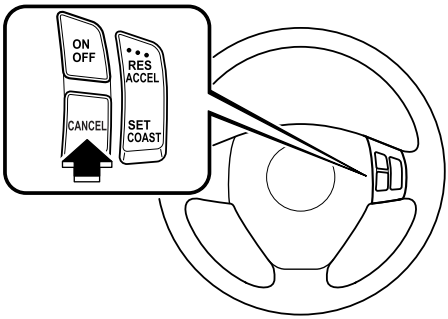


▼To Cancel

To cancel the system, use **one** of these methods:
- Press the ON/OFF switch.
- Slightly depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal (Manual transaxle only).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Press the CANCEL switch.



The system turns off when the ignition is off.

NOTE

Cruise control will cancel at about 15 km/h (9 mph) below the preset speed (such as may happen when climbing a long, steep grade) or below 25 km/h (16 mph).

Traction Control System (TCS)*

The Traction Control System (TCS) enhances traction and safety by controlling engine torque and braking*. When the TCS detects driving wheel slippage, it lowers engine torque and operates the brakes* to prevent loss of traction.

This means that on a slick surface, the engine adjusts automatically to provide optimum power to the drive wheels without causing them to spin and lose traction.

* DSC-equipped vehicles only

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely on the traction control system as a substitute for safe driving:

The traction control system (TCS) cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), and hydroplaning (reduced tire friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

Use snow tires or tire chains and drive at reduced speeds when roads are covered with ice and/or snow:

Driving without proper traction devices on snow and/or ice-covered roads is dangerous. The traction control system (TCS) alone cannot provide adequate traction and you could still have an accident.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE
To turn off the TCS, press the DSC OFF switch (page 5-25).

▼TCS/DSC Indicator Light

This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position. If the TCS or DSC is operating, the indicator light flashes.

If the light stays on, the TCS or DSC may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

NOTE
- *In addition to the indicator light flashing, a slight lugging sound will come from the engine. This indicates that the TCS is operating properly.*
- *On slippery surfaces, such as fresh snow, it will be impossible to achieve high rpm when the TCS is on.*

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)*

The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) automatically controls braking and engine torque in conjunction with systems such as ABS and TCS to help control side slip when driving on slippery surfaces, or during sudden or evasive maneuvering, enhancing vehicle safety.

Refer to ABS (page 5-7) and TCS (page 5-23).

DSC operation is possible at speeds greater than20 km/h (12 mph).

⚠ WARNING

Do not rely on the dynamic stability control as a substitute for safe driving:
The dynamic stability control (DSC) cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), and hydroplaning (reduced tire friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

*Some models.
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- *The DSC may not operate correctly unless the following are observed:*
  - *Use tires of the correct size specified for your Mazda on all four wheels.*
  - *Use tires of the same manufacturer, brand and tread pattern on all four wheels.*
  - *Do not mix worn tires.*
- *The DSC may not operate correctly when tire chains are used or a temporary spare tire is installed because the tire diameter changes.*

NOTE

After turning the ignition switch to the ON position, a clicking sound may be heard behind the dashboard. This sound is the result of the DSC system self-check operation and does not indicate an abnormality.

▼TCS/DSC Indicator Light

This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position. If the TCS or DSC is operating, the indicator light flashes.

If the light stays on, the TCS or DSC may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

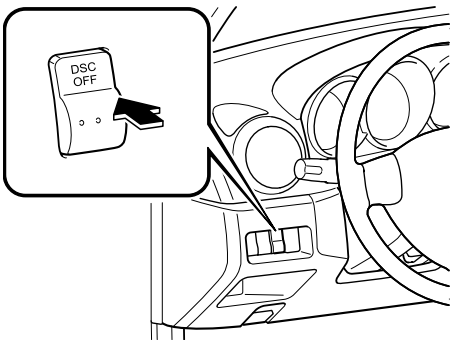
▼DSC OFF Indicator Light

This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
It also illuminates when the DSC OFF switch is pressed and TCS/DSC is switched off (page 5-25).

If the light stays on when the TCS/DSC is not switched off, take your vehicle to an Authorized Mazda Dealer. The dynamic stability control may have a malfunction.

▼DSC OFF Switch

To turn off the TCS/DSC, press and hold the DSC OFF switch until the DSC OFF indicator light illuminates.



Press the switch again to turn the TCS/DSC back on. The DSC OFF indicator light will go out.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

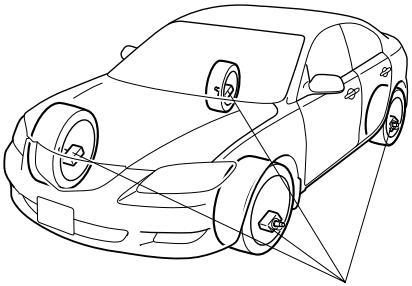
- *When DSC is on and you attempt to free the vehicle when it is stuck, or drive it out of freshly fallen snow, the TCS (part of the DSC system) will activate. Depressing the accelerator will not increase engine power and freeing the vehicle may be difficult. When this happens, turn off the TCS/DSC.*
- *If the TCS/DSC is off when the engine is turned off, it automatically activates when the ignition switch is turned on.*
- *Leaving the TCS/DSC on will provide the best stability.*

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Pressure Monitoring System*

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) monitors the pressure for each tire.
If tire pressure is too low in one or more tires, the system will inform the driver via the warning light in the instrument panel and by the warning beep sound.

The tire pressure sensors installed on each wheel send tire pressure data by radio signal to the receiver unit in the vehicle.



Tire pressure sensors

NOTE

When the ambient temperature is low due to seasonal changes, tire temperatures are also lower. When the tire temperature decreases, the air pressure decreases as well. The TPMS warning light may illuminate more frequently. Visually inspect the tires daily before driving, and check tire pressures monthly with a tire pressure gauge. When checking tire pressures, use of a digital tire pressure gauge is recommended.

TPMS does not alleviate your need to check the pressure and condition of all four tires regularly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- *Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)*
  As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.
  Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.
- *Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.*
  The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.
- *To avoid false readings, the system samples for a little while before indicating a problem. As a result it will not instantaneously register a rapid tire deflation or blow out.*

NOTE

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Tire Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light

This warning light illuminates for a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

Thereafter, the warning light illuminates and a beep is heard when tire pressure is too low in one or more tires, and flashes when there is a system malfunction.

⚠ WARNING

If the tire pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tire pressure warning beep sound is heard, decrease vehicle speed immediately and avoid sudden maneuvering and braking:

If the tire pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tire pressure warning beep sound is heard, it is dangerous to drive the vehicle at high speeds, or perform sudden maneuvering or braking. Vehicle drivability could worsen and result in an accident. To determine if you have a slow leak or a flat, pull over to a safe position where you can check the visual condition of the tire and determine if you have enough air to proceed to a place where air may be added and the system monitored again, an Authorized Mazda Dealer or a tire repair station.

Do not ignore the TPMS Warning Light:

Ignoring the TPMS warning light is dangerous, even if you know why it is illuminated. Have the problem taken care of as soon as possible before it develops into a more serious situation that could lead to tire failure and a dangerous accident.

Warning light illuminates/Warning beep sounds

When the warning light illuminates, and the warning beep sound is heard (about 3 seconds), tire pressure is too low in one or more tires.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjust the tire pressure to the correct tire pressure. Refer to the specification charts (page 10-8).

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing/repairing the tires or wheels or both, have the work done by an Authorized Mazda Dealer, or the tire pressure sensors may be damaged.

NOTE

- *Perform tire pressure adjustment when the tires are cold. Tire pressure will vary according to the tire temperature, therefore let the vehicle stand for 1 hour or only drive it 1.6 km (1 mile) or less before adjusting the tire pressures. When pressure is adjusted on hot tires to the cold inflation pressure, the TPMS warning light/beep may turn on after the tires cool and pressure drops below specification.*
  Also, an illuminated TPMS warning light, resulting from the tire air pressure dropping due to cold ambient temperature, may turn off if the ambient temperature rises. In this case, it will also be necessary to adjust the tire air pressures. If the TPMS warning light illuminates due to a drop in tire air pressure, make sure to check and adjust the tire air pressures.
- *After adjusting the tire air pressures, it may require some time for the TPMS warning light to turn off. If the TPMS warning light remains illuminated, drive the vehicle at a speed of at least 25 km/h (16 mph) for 10 minutes, and then verify that it turns off.*
- *Tires loose air naturally over time and the TPMS cannot tell if the tires are getting too soft over time or you have a flat. However, when you find one low tire in a set of four- that is an indication of trouble; you should have someone drive the vehicle slowly forward so you can inspect any low tire for cuts and any metal objects sticking through tread or sidewall. Put a few drops of water in the valve stem to see if it bubbles indicating a bad valve. Leaks need to be addressed by more than simply refilling the trouble tire as leaks are dangerous - take it to an Authorized Mazda Dealer which has all the equipment to fix tires, TPMS systems and order the best replacement tire for your vehicle.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the warning light illuminates again even after the tire pressures are adjusted, there may be a tire puncture. Replace the punctured tire with the temporary spare tire (page 7-8).

NOTE

A tire pressure sensor is not installed to the temporary spare tire. The warning light will flash continuously while the temporary spare tire is being used.

Warning light flashes

When the warning light flashes, there may be a system malfunction. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

▼System Error Activation

When the warning light flashes, there may be a system malfunction. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.
A system error activation may occur in the following cases:

- When there is equipment or a device near the vehicle using the same radio frequency as that of the tire pressure sensors.
- When a large metallic object (e.g. a large electric household appliance or a desk-top computer) is placed on the right side of the rear seat, which may block radio signals from the tire pressure sensor to the receiver unit.
- When using the following devices in the vehicle that may cause radio interference with the receiver unit.
  - A digital device such as a personal computer.
  - A current converter device such as a DC-AC converter.
- When excess snow or ice adheres to the vehicle, especially around the wheels.
- When the tire pressure sensor batteries are exhausted.
- When using a wheel with no tire pressure sensor installed.
- When using tires with steel wire reinforcement in the side walls.
- When using tire chains.

▼Tires and Wheels

⚠ CAUTION

When inspecting or adjusting the tire air pressures, do not apply excessive force to the stem part of the wheel unit. The stem part could be damaged.

Changing tires and wheels

The following procedure allows the TPMS to recognize a tire pressure sensor's unique ID signal code whenever tires or wheels are changed, such as changing to and from winter tires.

NOTE

Each tire pressure sensor has a unique ID signal code. The signal code must be registered with the TPMS before it can work. The easiest way to do it is to have an Authorized Mazda Dealer change your tire and complete ID signal code registration.

When having tires changed at an Authorized Mazda Dealer

Tire pressure sensor ID signal code registration is completed when an Authorized Mazda Dealer changes your vehicle's tires.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When changing tires yourself

If you or someone else changes tires, you or someone else can also undertake the steps for the TPMS to complete the ID signal code registration.

1. After tires have been changed, turn the ignition switch to the ON position, then turn it back to the ACC or LOCK position.
2. Wait for about 15 minutes.
3. After about 15 minutes, drive the vehicle at a speed of at least 25 km/h (16 mph) for 10 minutes and the tire pressure sensor ID signal code will be registered automatically.

NOTE

If the vehicle is driven within about 15 minutes of changing tires, the tire pressure monitoring system warning light will flash because the sensor ID signal code would not have been registered. If this happens, park the vehicle for about 15 minutes, after which the sensor ID signal code will register upon driving the vehicle for 10 minutes.

Replacing tires and wheels

⚠ CAUTION

- *When replacing/repairing the tires or wheels or both, have the work done by an Authorized Mazda Dealer, or the tire pressure sensors may be damaged.*
- *The wheels equipped on your Mazda are specially designed for installation of the tire pressure sensors. Do not use non-genuine wheels, otherwise it may not be possible to install the tire pressure sensors.*

Be sure to have the tire pressure sensors installed whenever tires or wheels are replaced.
When having a tire or wheel or both replaced, the following types of tire pressure sensor installations are possible.

- The tire pressure sensor is removed from the old wheel and installed to the new one.
- The same tire pressure sensor is used with the same wheel. Only the tire is replaced.
- A new tire pressure sensor is installed to a new wheel.

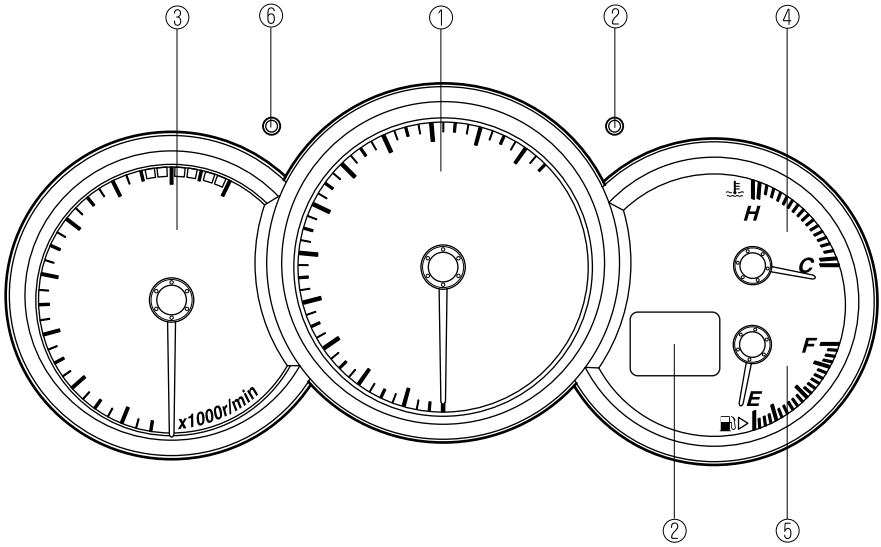
NOTE

- *The tire pressure sensor ID signal code must be registered when a new tire pressure sensor is purchased. For purchase of a tire pressure sensor and registration of the tire pressure sensor ID signal code, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.*
- *When reinstalling a previously removed tire pressure sensor to a wheel, replace the grommet (seal between valve body/sensor and wheel) for the tire pressure sensor.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Meters and Gauges

(Black-out meter)
When the ignition switch is in the ON position, the dashboard gauges illuminate.



① Speedometer ..... page 5-34
② Odometer, Trip Meter and Trip Meter Selector ..... page 5-34
③ Tachometer ..... page 5-35
④ Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge ..... page 5-35
⑤ Fuel Gauge ..... page 5-36
⑥ Instrument Cluster Dimmer Select Button (Black-out meter) ..... page 5-36

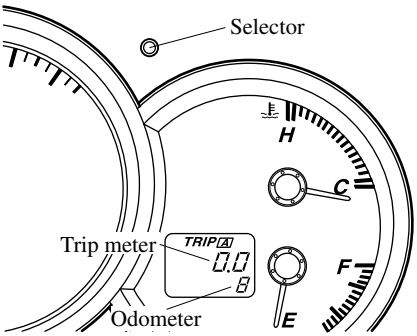
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

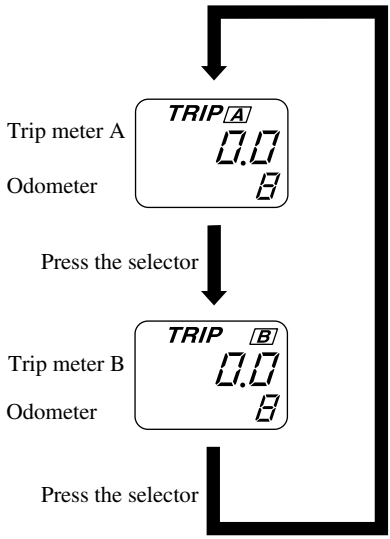
▼Speedometer

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle.

▼Odometer, Trip Meter and Trip Meter Selector

The display mode can be changed between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the selector while one of them is displayed. The selected mode will be displayed.





NOTE

- ***(Standard meter)***
  The odometer and trip meter can be displayed as follows even when the ignition switch is in the ACC or LOCK position.
  - *Displays for 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned to the ACC or LOCK position from the ON position.*
  - *Displays for 10 minutes after the driver's door is opened.*
- ***(Black-out meter)***
  When the ignition switch is in the ACC or LOCK position, the odometer or trip meters cannot be displayed, however, pressing the selector button can inadvertently switch the trip meters or reset them during an approximate ten-minute period in the following cases:
  - *After the ignition switch is turned to the ACC or LOCK position from the ON position.*
  - *After the driver's door is opened.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Odometer

The odometer records the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

Trip meter

The trip meter can record the total distance of two trips. One is recorded in trip meter A, and the other is recorded in trip meter B.

For instance, trip meter A can record the distance from the point of origin, and trip meter B can record the distance from where the fuel tank is filled.

When trip meter A is selected, pressing the selector again within one second will change to trip meter B mode.

When trip meter A is selected, TRIP A will be displayed. When trip meter B is selected, TRIP B will be displayed.

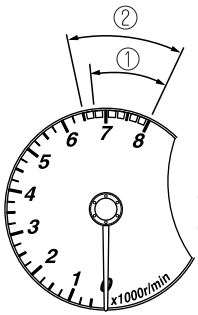
The trip meter records the total distance the vehicle is driven until the meter is again reset. Return it to "0.0" by holding the selector depressed for 1 second or more. Use this meter to measure trip distances and to compute fuel consumption.

NOTE

- *Only the trip meters record tenths of kilometers (miles).*
- *The trip record will be erased when:*
  - *The power supply is interrupted (blown fuse or the battery is disconnected).*
  - *The vehicle is driven over 999.9 km (mile).*

▼Tachometer

The tachometer shows engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).



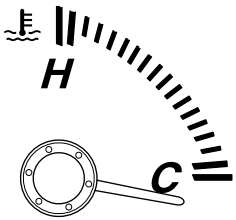
Red zone
① With turbocharger
② Without turbocharger

⚠ CAUTION

Do not run the engine with the tachometer needle in the RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.

▼Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

The engine coolant temperature gauge shows the temperature of the engine coolant.



If the needle is near H, it indicates overheating.

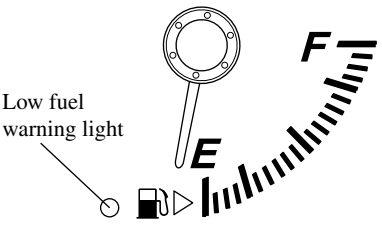
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Driving with an overheated engine can cause serious engine damage (page 7-14).

▼Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge shows approximately how much fuel is remaining in the tank when the ignition switch is in the ON position. We recommend keeping the tank over 1/4 full. When the low fuel warning light illuminates or when the needle is near E, refuel as soon as possible.

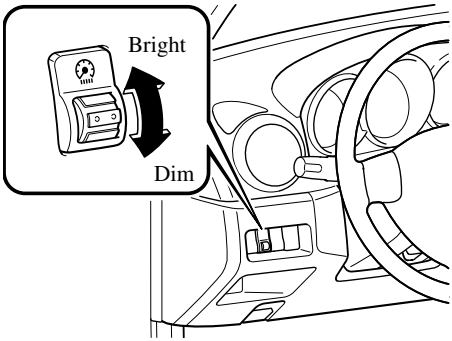


NOTE

- *After refueling, it may require some time for the needle to stabilize. In addition, the needle may deviate while driving on a slope or curve since the fuel moves in the tank.*
- *The direction of the arrow (⛽▸) shows next to the low fuel warning light indicates that the fuel-filler lid is on the right side of the vehicle.*

▼Dashboard Illumination

When the exterior lights are on, rotate the thumb-wheel to adjust the brightness of the dashboard lights.



NOTE

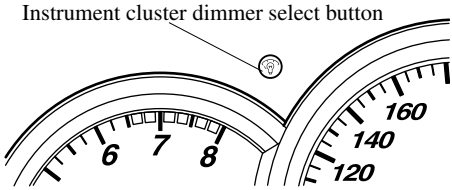
Black-out meter

When the instrument cluster dimmer is canceled, the instrument cluster illumination intensity will not change by rotating the thumb-wheel.

Refer to Instrument Cluster Dimmer Select Button on page 5-36.

▼Instrument Cluster Dimmer Select Button (Black-out meter)

The instrument cluster dimmer select button is operable when the ignition switch is in the ON position.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the instrument cluster illumination intensity (With exterior lights off)

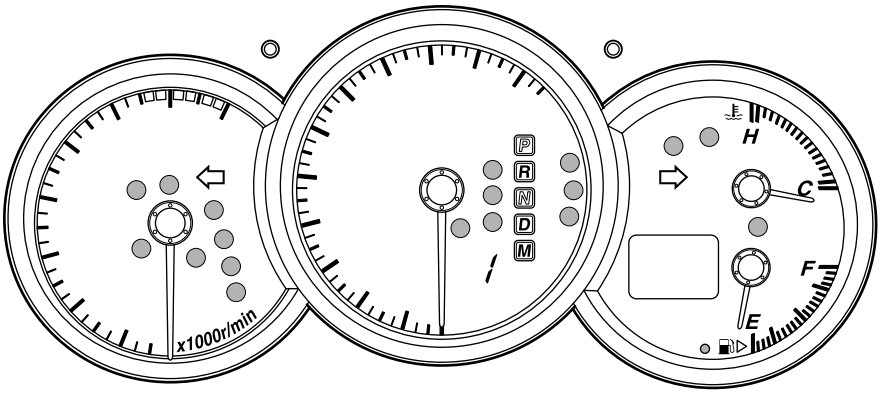
When the exterior lights are off, the instrument cluster illumination can be adjusted to one of five levels by successively pressing the instrument cluster dimmer select button.

Canceling the instrument cluster illumination dimmer (With exterior lights on)

When the exterior lights are on, the instrument cluster illumination dims. When driving on snowy or foggy roads, or in other situations when the instrument cluster's visibility is reduced due to glare from surrounding brightness, the instrument cluster dimmer select button increases the illumination intensity. Press the button to increase the intensity of the instrument cluster illumination. Press the button again to return to the previous illumination intensity.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning/Indicator Lights



Warning/Indicator lights will appear in any of the highlighted areas

Signal	Warning/Indicator Lights	Page
BRAKE	Brake System Warning Light	5-40
	Charging System Warning Light	5-41
	Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light	5-41
	Check Engine Light	5-42
ABS	ABS Warning Light	5-40
	Air Bag/Front Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light	5-42
○	Low Fuel Warning Light	5-43

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Signal	Warning/Indicator Lights	Page
	Seat Belt Warning Light/Beep	5-43
	Door-Ajar Warning Light	5-44
	Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Light	5-44
AT	Automatic Transaxle Warning Light	5-45
	Tire Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light	5-45
	Security Indicator Light	5-47
	Headlight High-Beam Indicator Light	5-47
PRNDM	Shift Position Indicator Light	5-47
	TCS/DSC Indicator Light	5-48
DSC OFF	DSC OFF Indicator Light	5-48
CRUISE	Cruise Main Indicator Light (Amber)/Cruise Set Indicator Light (Green)	5-48
	Lights-On Indicator Light	5-48
	Power Steering Malfunction Indicator Light	5-49
	Turn Signal/Hazard Warning Indicator Lights	5-49

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Brake System Warning Light

This warning has the following functions:

Parking brake warning

The light illuminates when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position. It turns off when the parking brake is fully released.

Low brake fluid level warning

If the light stays on after the parking brake is fully released, you may have a brake problem.

Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way.

You may notice that the pedal is harder to depress or that it may go closer to the floor. In either case, it will take longer to stop the vehicle.

1. With the engine stopped, open the hood and check the brake fluid level immediately, and then add fluid if required (page 8-23).
2. After adding fluid, check the light again.

If the warning light remains on, or if the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle. Have it towed to an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Even if the light turns off have your brake system inspected as soon as possible by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

NOTE

Having to add brake fluid is sometimes an indicator of leakage. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible even if the brake light is no longer illuminated.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with the brake system warning light illuminated. Contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer to have the brakes inspected as soon as possible:

Driving with the brake system warning light illuminated is dangerous. It indicates that your brakes may not work at all or that they could completely fail at any time. If this light remains illuminated, after checking that the parking brake is fully released, have the brakes inspected immediately.

▼ABS Warning Light*

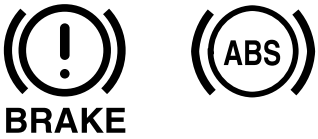
The warning light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

If the ABS warning light stays on while you're driving, the ABS control unit has detected a system malfunction. If this occurs, your brakes will function normally as if the vehicle had no ABS.
Should this happen, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.

*Some models.
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE
When the engine is jump-started to charge the battery, uneven rpm occurs and the ABS warning light may illuminate. If this occurs, it is the result of the weak battery and does not indicate an ABS malfunction.
Recharge the battery.

▼Electronic Brake Force Distribution System Warning*



If the electronic brake force distribution control unit determines that some components are operating incorrectly, the control unit may illuminate the brake system warning light and the ABS warning light on simultaneously. The problem is likely to be the electronic brake force distribution system.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with both the ABS warning light and brake warning light illuminated. Have the vehicle towed to an Authorized Mazda Dealer to have the brakes inspected as soon as possible:

Driving when the brake system warning light and ABS warning light are illuminated simultaneously is dangerous.
When both lights are illuminated, the rear wheels could lock more quickly in an emergency stop than under normal circumstances.

▼Charging System Warning Light

This warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position and turns off when the engine is started.

If the warning light illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction of the alternator or of the charging system. Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not continue driving when the charging system warning light is illuminated because the engine could stop unexpectedly.

▼Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light

This warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position and turns off when the engine is started.

This warning light indicates low engine oil pressure.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the light illuminates while driving:

1. Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way on level ground.
2. Turn off the engine and wait 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil pan.
3. Inspect the engine oil level (page 8-20). If it's low, add the appropriate amount of engine oil while being careful not to overfill.
4. Start the engine and check the warning light.

If the light remains illuminated even after you add oil, stop the engine immediately and have your vehicle towed to an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not run the engine if the oil pressure is low. It could result in extensive engine damage.

▼Check Engine Light

This indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position and turns off when the engine is started.

If this light illuminates while driving, the vehicle may have a problem. It is important to note the driving conditions when the light illuminated and consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

The check engine light may illuminate in the following cases:

- The fuel tank level being very low or approaching empty.
- The engine's electrical system has a problem.
- The emission control system has a problem.
- The fuel-filler cap is missing or not tightened securely.

If the check engine light remains on or flashes continuously, do not drive at high speeds and consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.

▼Air Bag/Front Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light

If the air bag/front seat belt pretensioner system is working properly, the warning light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or after the engine is cranked. The warning light turns off after a specified period of time.

A system malfunction is indicated if the warning light constantly illuminates or does not illuminate at all when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position. If any of these occur, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible. The system may not work in an accident.

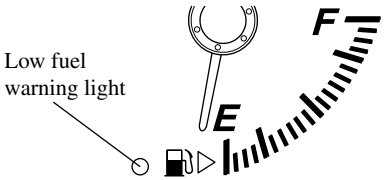
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Never tamper with the air bag/ pretensioner systems and always have an Authorized Mazda Dealer perform all servicing and repairs:

Self-servicing or tampering with the systems is dangerous. An air bag/ pretensioner could accidentally activate or become disabled causing serious injury or death.

▼Low Fuel Warning Light



This warning light in the fuel gauge signals that the fuel tank will soon be empty.
Refuel as soon as possible.

▼Seat Belt Warning Light/Beep

The seat belt warning light illuminates and a beep sound will be heard if the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

Conditions of operation

Condition	Result
The driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.	The warning light flashes and a beep sound will be heard for about 6 seconds.
The driver's seat belt is fastened while the warning light and the beep sound are activated.	The warning light turns off and the beep sound stops.
The driver's seat belt is fastened before the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.	The warning light will not illuminate and the beep sound will not be heard.

Belt minder

NOTE

The belt minder can be deactivated. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer to deactivate or restore the seat belt minder.

Driver seated/Front passenger not seated

The belt minder is a supplemental warning to the seat belt warning function. If the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, the warning light/beep operates to give you further reminders according to the chart below.

Condition	Vehicle speed			
	Between 0 — 20 km/h (0 — 12 mph)		20 km/h (12 mph) or more	
Seat belt	○	×	○	×
Indicator		Illuminated		Flashing
Beep				♪

○ : Fastened
× : Unfastened
Illuminated : Illuminated
Flashing : Flashing
♪ : Beep

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Once the beep sound is heard, it continues sounding even if the vehicle speed lowers to 20 km/h (12 mph) or less until the seatbelt is fastened or the beep sound period has passed.

Driver seated/Front passenger seated

The seat belt warning function reminds the front passenger to fasten the seat belt according to the chart below.

Condition	Vehicle speed							
	Between 0 — 20 km/h (0 — 12 mph)				20 km/h (12 mph) or more			
Seat belt (Driver)	○	○	×	×	○	○	×	×
Seat belt (Passenger)	○	×	○	×	○	×	○	×
Indicator			Illuminated	Illuminated		Illuminated	Flashing	Flashing
Beep							♪	♪

○ : Fastened
× : Unfastened
: Illuminated
: Flashing
♪ : Beep

Placing heavy items on the front passenger seat may cause the front passenger seat belt warning function to operate depending on the weight of the item.

Once the beep sound is heard, it continues sounding even if the vehicle speed lowers to 20 km/h (12 mph) or less until the seatbelt is fastened or the beep sound period has passed.

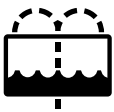
NOTE

- *To allow the front passenger seat weight sensor to function properly, do not place and sit on an additional seat cushion on the front passenger seat. The sensor may not function properly because the additional seat cushion could cause sensor interference.*
- *When a small child sits on the front passenger seat, it is possible that neither the warning light nor the warning beep operate.*

▼Door-Ajar Warning Light

This warning light illuminates when any door, trunk, or liftgate is not securely closed.
Close the door, trunk, or liftgate securely before driving the vehicle.

▼Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Light*



This warning light indicates that little washer fluid remains. Add fluid (page 8-27).

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Automatic Transaxle Warning Light

AT

This warning light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
The light illuminates when the transaxle has a problem.

⚠ CAUTION

If the automatic transaxle warning light illuminates, the transaxle has an electrical problem. Continuing to drive your Mazda in this condition could cause damage to your transaxle. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.

▼Tire Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light*

This warning light illuminates for a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

Thereafter, the warning light illuminates and a beep is heard when tire pressure is too low in one or more tires, and flashes when there is a system malfunction.

⚠ WARNING

If the tire pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tire pressure warning beep sound is heard, decrease vehicle speed immediately and avoid sudden maneuvering and braking:

If the tire pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tire pressure warning beep sound is heard, it is dangerous to drive the vehicle at high speeds, or perform sudden maneuvering or braking. Vehicle drivability could worsen and result in an accident. To determine if you have a slow leak or a flat, pull over to a safe position where you can check the visual condition of the tire and determine if you have enough air to proceed to a place where air may be added and the system monitored again, an Authorized Mazda Dealer or a tire repair station.

Do not ignore the TPMS Warning Light:

Ignoring the TPMS warning light is dangerous, even if you know why it is illuminated. Have the problem taken care of as soon as possible before it develops into a more serious situation that could lead to tire failure and a dangerous accident.

Warning light illuminates/Warning beep sounds

When the warning light illuminates, and the warning beep sound is heard (about 3 seconds), tire pressure is too low in one or more tires.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjust the tire pressure to the correct tire pressure. Refer to the specification charts (page 10-8).

⚠ CAUTION

When replacing/repairing the tires or wheels or both, have the work done by an Authorized Mazda Dealer, or the tire pressure sensors may be damaged.

NOTE

- *Perform tire pressure adjustment when the tires are cold. Tire pressure will vary according to the tire temperature, therefore let the vehicle stand for 1 hour or only drive it 1.6 km (1 mile) or less before adjusting the tire pressures. When pressure is adjusted on hot tires to the cold inflation pressure, the TPMS warning light/beep may turn on after the tires cool and pressure drops below specification.*
  Also, an illuminated TPMS warning light, resulting from the tire air pressure dropping due to cold ambient temperature, may turn off if the ambient temperature rises. In this case, it will also be necessary to adjust the tire air pressures. If the TPMS warning light illuminates due to a drop in tire air pressure, make sure to check and adjust the tire air pressures.
- *After adjusting the tire air pressures, it may require some time for the TPMS warning light to turn off. If the TPMS warning light remains illuminated, drive the vehicle at a speed of at least 25 km/h (16 mph) for 10 minutes, and then verify that it turns off.*
- *Tires loose air naturally over time and the TPMS cannot tell if the tires are getting too soft over time or you have a flat. However, when you find one low tire in a set of four- that is an indication of trouble; you should have someone drive the vehicle slowly forward so you can inspect any low tire for cuts and any metal objects sticking through tread or sidewall. Put a few drops of water in the valve stem to see if it bubbles indicating a bad valve. Leaks need to be addressed by more than simply refilling the trouble tire as leaks are dangerous - take it to an Authorized Mazda Dealer which has all the equipment to fix tires, TPMS systems and order the best replacement tire for your vehicle.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If the warning light illuminates again even after the tire pressures are adjusted, there may be a tire puncture. Replace the punctured tire with the temporary spare tire (page 7-8).

NOTE

A tire pressure sensor is not installed to the temporary spare tire. The warning light will flash continuously while the temporary spare tire is being used.

Warning light flashes

When the warning light flashes, there may be a system malfunction. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

▼Security Indicator Light

This indicator light starts flashing every 2 seconds when the ignition switch is turned from the ON to the ACC position and the immobilizer system is armed.

The light stops flashing when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position with the correct ignition key.
At this time, the immobilizer system is disarmed and the light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then turns off.

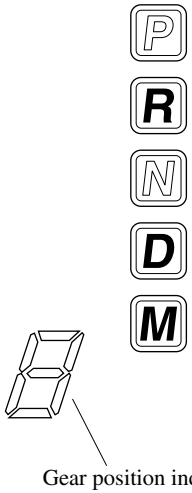
If the engine does not start with the correct ignition key, and the security indicator light keeps illuminating or flashing, the system may have a malfunction. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

▼Headlight High-Beam Indicator Light

This light indicates one of two things:
- The high-beam headlights are on.
- The turn signal lever is in the flash-to-pass position.

▼Shift Position Indicator Light (Automatic Transaxle)

This indicates the selected shift position when the ignition switch is in the ON position.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Gear position indicator

When the shift lever is in the D or M position, the numeral for the selected gear displays.

▼TCS/DSC Indicator Light*

This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position. If the TCS or DSC is operating, the indicator light flashes.

If the light stays on, the TCS or DSC may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

▼DSC OFF Indicator Light*

This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.
It also illuminates when the DSC OFF switch is pressed and TCS/DSC is switched off (page 5-25).

If the light stays on when the TCS/DSC is not switched off, take your vehicle to an Authorized Mazda Dealer. The dynamic stability control may have a malfunction.

▼Cruise Main Indicator Light (Amber)/Cruise Set Indicator Light (Green)*

The indicator light has two colors.

Cruise Main Indicator Light (Amber)

The indicator light illuminates amber when the ON/OFF switch is pressed and the cruise control system is activated.

Cruise Set Indicator Light (Green)

The indicator light illuminates green when a cruising speed has been set.

▼Lights-On Indicator Light (Black-out meter)

This indicator light illuminates when the exterior lights and dashboard illumination are on.

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

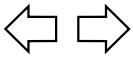
▼Power Steering Malfunction Indicator Light*

This indicator light illuminates when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position and goes off when the engine is started.

If the light stays illuminated after the engine is started or illuminates while driving, turn off the engine after parking in a safe place, and then start the engine again.
If the light does not illuminate after restarting the engine, this indicates that the power steering is restored and normal steering is possible.
If the light remains illuminated, the power steering is still inoperable. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

NOTE
The power steering system is inoperable when the power steering malfunction indicator light illuminates. Steering is possible, but requires more physical effort.

▼Turn-Signal/Hazard Warning Indicator Lights



When operating the turn signal lights, the left or right turn signal indicator light flashes to indicate which turn signal light is operating (page 5-54).

When operating the hazard warning lights, both turn signal indicator lights flash (page 5-61).

NOTE
If an indicator light remains illuminated (does not flash) or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Beep Sounds

▼Air Bag/Front Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep

If a malfunction is detected in both the air bag/front seat belt pretensioner system and the warning light, a warning beep sound will be heard for about 1 minute. After that, the one-minute beep will be repeated every 30 minutes.

Have your vehicle inspected at an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with the air bag/front seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding:

Driving the vehicle with the air bag/front seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding is dangerous. In a collision, the air bags and the front seat belt pretensioner system will not deploy and this could result in death or serious injury.
Contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer to have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible.

▼Seat Belt Warning Beep

If the driver's seat belt is not fastened when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, a beep sound will be heard for about 6 seconds.
If the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the vehicle is driven at a speed faster than about 20 km/h (12 mph), a beep sound will be heard again for a specified period of time.
Refer to Seat Belt Warning Light/Beep on page 5-43.

▼Ignition Key Reminder

If the ignition switch is in the LOCK or ACC position with the key inserted, a continuous beep sound will be heard when the driver's door is opened.

▼Lights-On Reminder

If lights are on and the key is removed from the ignition switch, a continuous beep sound will be heard when the driver's door is opened.

▼Tire Inflation Pressure Warning Beep*

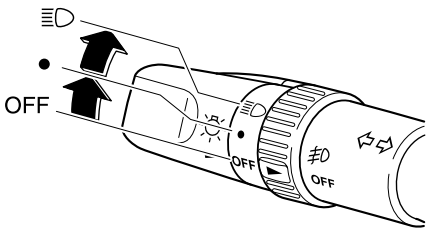
The warning beep sound will be heard for about 3 seconds when there is any abnormality in tire inflation pressures (page 5-27).

*Some models.
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Lighting Control

▼Headlights

Type A (Without AUTO position)



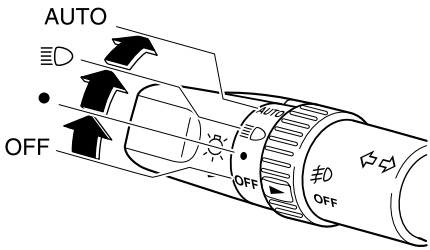
Turn the headlight switch to turn the headlights, other exterior lights and dashboard illumination on or off.

Switch Position	OFF	●	≣D
Headlights	Off	Off	On
Taillights Parking lights License lights Side-marker lights Dashboard illumination	Off	On	On

NOTE

To prevent discharging the battery, do not leave the lights on while the engine is off unless safety requires them.

Type B (With AUTO position)



Turn the headlight switch to turn the headlights, other exterior lights and dashboard illumination on or off.

Switch Position	OFF	●	≣D	AUTO
Headlights	Off	Off	On	Auto
Taillights Parking lights License lights Side-marker lights Dashboard illumination	Off	On	On	

NOTE

To prevent discharging the battery, do not leave the lights on while the engine is off unless safety requires them.

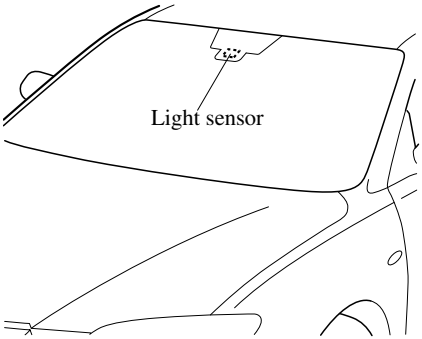
AUTO (Auto-light control)

When the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the ignition switch is in the ON position, the light sensor senses the surrounding lightness or darkness and automatically turns on or off the headlights, other exterior lights and dashboard illumination (see chart above).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not shade the light sensor by adhering a sticker or a label on the windshield. Otherwise the light sensor will not operate correctly.*



- *The light sensor also works as a rain sensor for the auto-wiper control. Keep hands and scrapers clear of the windshield when the ignition switch is in the ON position as fingers could be pinched or the wipers and wiper blades damaged when the wipers activate automatically. If you are going to clean the windshield, be sure the wipers are turned off completely - this is particularly important when clearing ice and snow - when it is particularly tempting to leave the engine running.*

NOTE

- *The light may not turn off immediately even if the surrounding area becomes well-lit because the light sensor determines that it is nighttime if the surrounding area is continuously dark for several minutes such as inside long tunnels, traffic jams inside tunnels, or in indoor parking lots.*
  In this case, the light turns off if the light switch is turned to the OFF position.
- *When the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the ignition switch is turned to the ACC or LOCK position, the headlights, other exterior lights and dashboard illumination will turn off.*
- *The timing for turning on the headlights, other exterior lights and dashboard illumination can be delayed by adjusting the sensitivity of the light sensor. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer regarding sensor adjustment.*
- *The sensitivity of the AUTO lights may be changed by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.*

Xenon fusion headlight bulbs*

The low-beam bulbs of the headlights have xenon fusion bulbs that produce a bright white beam over a wide area.

⚠ WARNING

Do not replace the xenon fusion bulbs yourself:

Replacing the xenon fusion bulbs yourself is dangerous. Because the xenon fusion bulbs require high voltage, you could receive an electric shock if the bulbs are handled incorrectly. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer when the replacement is necessary.

*Some models.
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

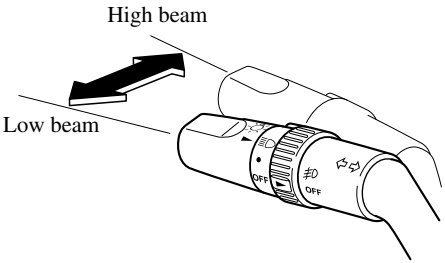
NOTE
If the headlights flicker, or the brightness weakens, the bulb-life may be depleted and a replacement is necessary. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

▼Lights-On Reminder

If lights are on and the key is removed from the ignition switch, a continuous beep sound will be heard when the driver's door is opened.

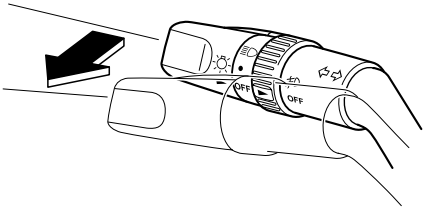
▼Headlight High-Low Beam

Push the lever forward for high beam. Pull back to original position for low beam.



▼Flashing the Headlights

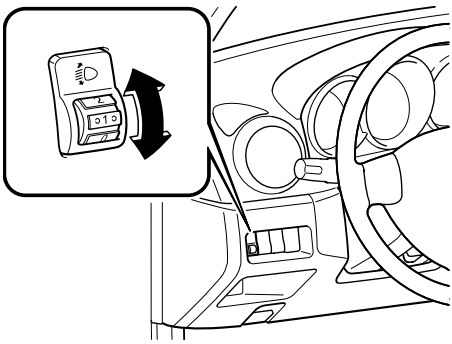
To flash the headlights, pull the lever fully toward you. The headlight switch does not need to be on, and the lever will return to the normal position when released.



▼Headlight Leveling*

The number of passengers and weight of cargo in the luggage compartment change the angle of the headlights.

The headlight leveling switch adjusts this angle.



Select the proper setting from the following chart.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Without turbocharger

Front seat		Rear seat	Load	Switch Position
Driver	Passenger			
×	—	—	—	0
×	×	—	—	0
×	×	×	—	1
×	×	×	×	2
×	—	—	×	3

×: Yes
—: No

With turbocharger

Front seat		Rear seat	Load	Switch Position
Driver	Passenger			
×	—	—	—	0
×	×	—	—	0
×	×	×	—	1
×	×	×	×	1
×	—	—	×	2

×: Yes
—: No

▼Daytime Running Lights (Canada)

In Canada, vehicles must be driven with the headlights on during daytime operation.

For that reason, the daytime running lights automatically turn on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

NOTE

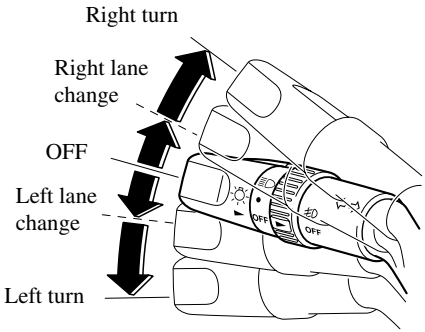
The Daytime Running Lights turn off when the parking brake is applied.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals

▼Turn Signal

Move the signal lever down (for a left turn) or up (for a right turn) to the stop position. The signal will self-cancel after the turn is completed.

If the indicator light continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to its original position.



Green indicators on the dashboard show which signal is working.

Lane-change signals

Move the lever slightly toward the direction of the change —until the indicator flashes— and hold it there. It will return to the off position when released.

NOTE

If an indicator light stays on without flashing or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out.

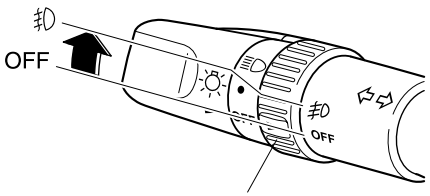
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fog Lights*

The front fog lights help you to see as well as to be seen.

The headlights must be turned on to turn on the front fog lights.

To turn the front fog lights on, rotate the fog light switch to the position.



Fog light switch

To turn the front fog lights off, rotate the fog light switch to the OFF position or turn the headlights off.

NOTE

- *The fog lights will turn off when the headlights are set at high beam.*
- ***(With auto-light control)***
  If the headlight switch is in the AUTO position, the front fog lights can be turned on when the headlights, the exterior lights and dashboard illumination are on.

Windshield Wipers and Washer

The ignition switch must be in the ON position.

⚠ WARNING

Use only windshield washer fluid or plain water in the reservoir:

Using radiator antifreeze as washer fluid is dangerous. If sprayed on the windshield, it will dirty the windshield, affect your visibility, and could result in an accident.

Only use windshield washer fluid mixed with anti-freeze protection in freezing weather conditions:

Using windshield washer fluid without anti-freeze protection in freezing weather conditions is dangerous as it could freeze on the windshield and block your vision which could cause an accident.
In addition, make sure the windshield is sufficiently warmed using the defroster before spraying the washer fluid.

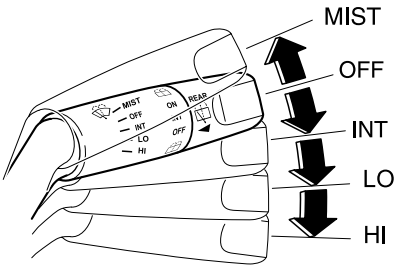
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

Because heavy ice and snow can jam the wiper blades, the wiper motor is protected from motor breakdown, overheating and possible fire by a circuit breaker. This mechanism will automatically stop operation of the blades, but only for about 5 minutes.
If this happens, turn off the wiper switch and park off the right-of-way, and remove the snow and ice.
After 5 minutes, turn on the switch and the blades should operate normally. If they do not resume functioning, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible. Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way. Wait until the weather clears before trying to drive with the wipers inoperative.

▼Windshield Wipers

Type A (With INT position)

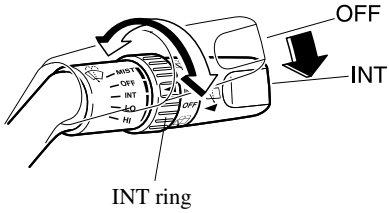


Turn the wipers on by pulling the lever down.
INT — Intermittent
LO — Low speed
HI — High speed

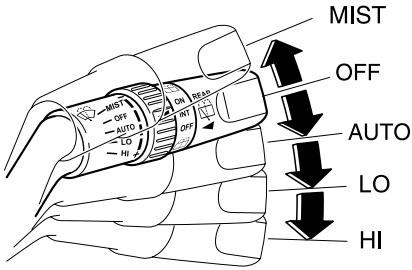
For a single wiping cycle, press the lever up to MIST.
MIST — Mist

Variable-speed intermittent wipers*

Set the lever to INT and choose the interval timing by rotating the ring.



Type B (With AUTO position)



Turn the wipers on by pulling the lever down.
AUTO — Auto control
LO — Low speed
HI — High speed

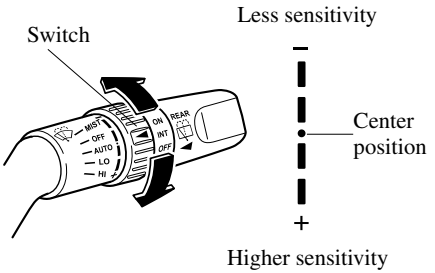
For a single wiping cycle, press the lever up to MIST.
MIST — Mist

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

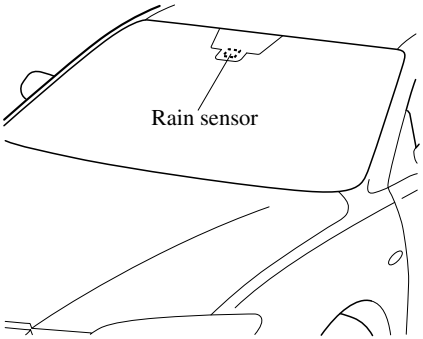
AUTO (Auto-wiper control)
When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, the rain sensor senses the amount of rainfall on the windshield and turns the wiper on or off automatically (off—intermittent—low speed—high speed).

The sensitivity of the rain sensor can be adjusted by turning the switch on the wiper lever.
From the center position (normal), turn the switch towards (+) for higher sensitivity (faster response) or turn the switch towards (–) for less sensitivity (slower response).



⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not shade the rain sensor by adhering a sticker or a label on the windshield. Otherwise the rain sensor will not operate correctly.*



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- *When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition switch is in the ON position, the wipers may move automatically in the following cases:*
  - *If the windshield above the rain sensor is touched.*
  - *If the windshield above the rain sensor is wiped with a cloth.*
  - *If the windshield is struck with a hand or other object.*
  - *If the rain sensor is struck with a hand or other object from inside the vehicle.*

  Keep hands and scrapers clear of the windshield when the ignition switch is in the ON position as fingers could be pinched or the wipers and wiper blades damaged when they activate automatically. If you are going to clean the windshield, be sure the wipers are turned off completely - this is particularly important when clearing ice and snow - when it is particularly tempting to leave the engine running.

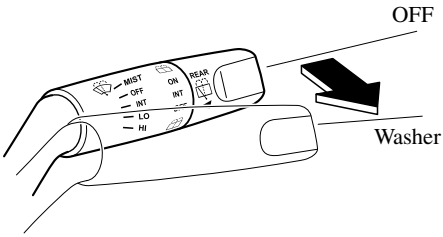
NOTE

- *Switching the auto-wiper lever from the OFF to the AUTO position while driving at a vehicle speed of 4 km/h (2 mph) or higher (or after driving the vehicle) activates the windshield wipers once, after which they operate according to the rainfall amount.*
- *The auto-wiper control may not operate when the rain sensor temperature is about –10 °C (14 °F) or lower, or about 85 °C (185 °F) or higher.*
- *If the windshield is coated with water repellent, the rain sensor may not be able to sense the amount of rainfall correctly and auto-wiper control may not operate properly.*
- *If dirt or foreign matter (e.g. ice or matter containing salt water) adheres to the windshield above the rain sensor or if the windshield is iced, it could cause the wipers to move automatically. However, if the wipers cannot remove this ice, dirt or foreign matter, the auto-wiper control will stop operation. In this case, pull the wiper lever to the low speed or high speed position for manual operation, or remove the ice, dirt or foreign matter by hand to restore the auto-wiper operation.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Windshield Washer

Pull the lever toward you and hold it to spray washer fluid.



NOTE

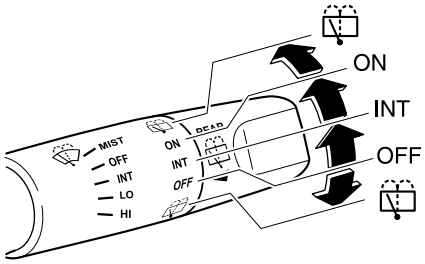
With the wiper lever in the OFF or INT (Type A)/AUTO (Type B) position, the wipers will operate continuously until the lever is released.

If the washer does not work, inspect the fluid level (page 8-27). If it's normal, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Rear Window Wiper and Washer (5 Door)

The ignition switch must be in the ON position.

▼Rear Window Wiper



Turn the wiper on by turning the rear wiper/washer switch.
ON — Normal
INT — Intermittent

▼Rear Window Washer

To spray washer fluid, turn the rear wiper/washer switch to the position. After the switch is released, the washer will stop.
If the washer doesn't work, inspect the fluid level (page 8-27). If it's OK and the washer still doesn't work, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Window Defroster

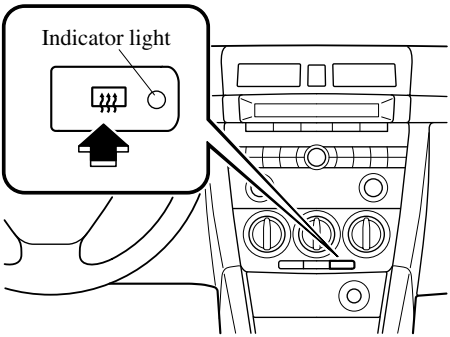
The rear window defroster clears frost, fog, and thin ice from the rear window.

The ignition switch must be in the ON position.

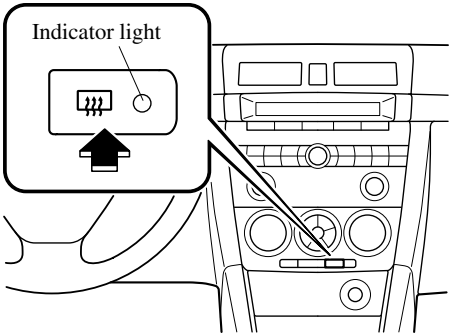
Press the switch to turn on the rear window defroster. The rear window defroster operates for about 10—15 minutes and turns off automatically. The indicator light illuminates during operation.

To turn off the rear window defroster before the 10—15 minutes has elapsed, press the switch again.

Manual Type Air-Conditioning



Fully Automatic Type Air-Conditioning



⚠CAUTION

Do not use sharp instruments or window cleaners with abrasives to clean the inside of the rear window surface. They may damage the defroster grid inside the window.

NOTE

This defroster is not designed for melting snow. If there is an accumulation of snow on the rear window, remove it before using the defroster.

▼Mirror Defroster*

To turn on the mirror defrosters, turn the ignition switch to the ON position and press the rear window defroster switch (page 5-60).

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

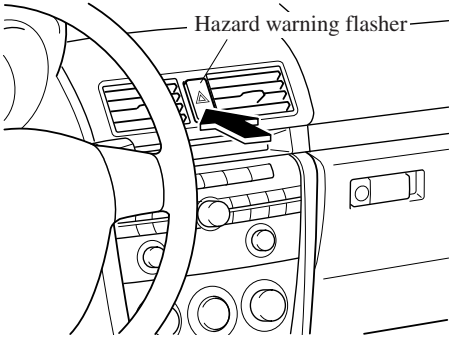
Horn

To sound the horn, press the mark on the steering wheel.

Hazard Warning Flasher

The hazard warning lights should always be used when you stop on or near a roadway in an emergency.

The hazard warning lights warn other drivers that your vehicle is a traffic hazard and that they must take extreme caution when near it.



Depress the hazard warning flasher and all the turn signals will flash.

NOTE

- *The turn signals do not work when the hazard warning lights are on.*
- *Check local regulations about the use of hazard warning lights while the vehicle is being towed to verify that it is not in violation of the law.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

6 Interior Comfort

Use of various features for drive comfort, including air-conditioning and audio system.

Climate Control System 6-2
- Operating Tips 6-2
- Vent Operation 6-3
- Types of the Climate Control System* 6-5
- Manual Type* 6-6
- Fully Automatic Type* 6-11

Audio System 6-16
- Antenna 6-16
- Operating Tips for Audio System 6-17
- Audio Set 6-27
- Audio Control Switch Operation (Steering Wheel)* 6-56
- AUX Mode (Auxiliary input) 6-58
- Safety Certification 6-61

Interior Equipment 6-62
- Sunvisors 6-62
- Interior Lights 6-62
- Information Display 6-65
- Lighter 6-70
- Ashtray 6-70
- Cup Holder 6-71
- Bottle Holder 6-72
- Storage Compartments 6-72
- Accessory Sockets 6-76

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating Tips

▼Operating the Climate Control System

Operate the climate control system with the engine running.

NOTE
To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the fan control dial on for a long period of time with the ignition switch in the ON position when the engine is not running.

▼Clearing the Air Inlet

Clear all obstructions such as leaves, snow and ice from the hood and the air inlet in the cowl grille to improve the system efficiency.

▼Foggy Windows

The windows may fog up easily in humid weather. Use the climate control system to defog the windows.

To help defog the windows, operate the air conditioner to dehumidify the air.

NOTE
The air conditioner may be used along with the heater to dehumidify the air.

▼Outside/Recirculated Air Position

Use the outside air position in normal conditions. The recirculated air position should be used only when driving on dusty roads or for quick cooling of the interior.

▼Parking in Direct Sunlight

If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows to let warm air escape, then run the climate control system.

▼Not Using for a Long Period

Run the air conditioner about 10 minutes at least once a month to keep internal parts lubricated.

▼Check the Refrigerant before the Weather Gets Hot

Have the air conditioner checked before the weather gets hot. Lack of refrigerant may make the air conditioner less efficient. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer for refrigerant inspection.

The air conditioner is filled with HFC134a (R134a), a refrigerant that will not damage the ozone layer.
If the air conditioner is low on refrigerant or has a malfunction, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

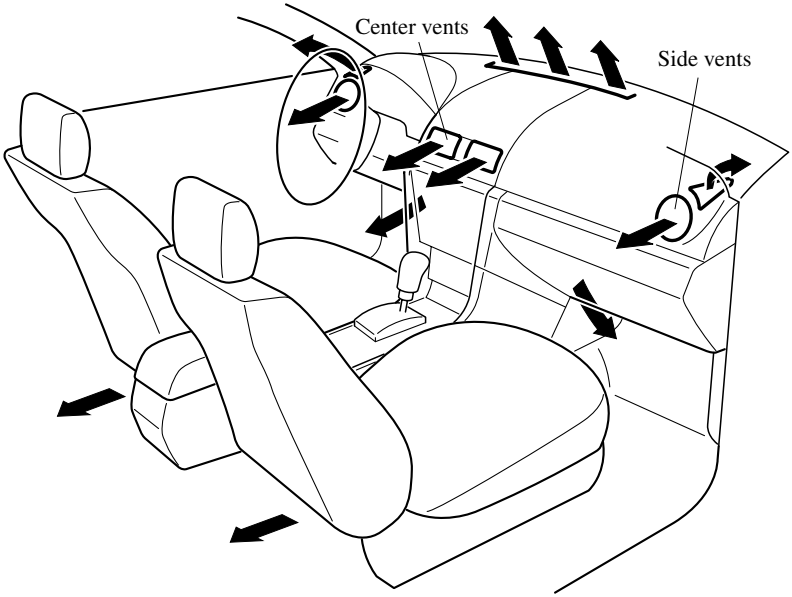
▼Replacement of the Cabin Air Filter*

If your vehicle is equipped with an air filter for the air conditioner, it is necessary to change the filter periodically as indicated in scheduled maintenance (page 8-3). Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer for replacement of the cabin air filter.

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Vent Operation

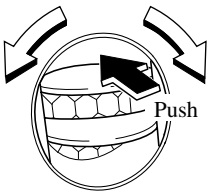


▼Adjusting the Vents

Directing airflow

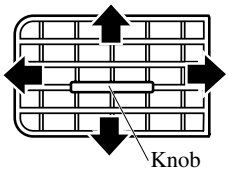
Side Vents

To adjust the direction of airflow, open the vents and rotate them left and right.



Center Vents

To adjust the direction of airflow, move the adjustment knob.



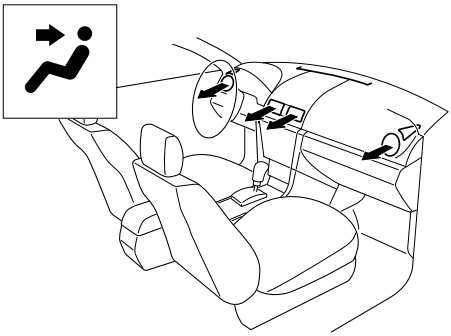
NOTE

When using the air conditioner under humid ambient temperature conditions, the system may blow condensed air (fog) from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.

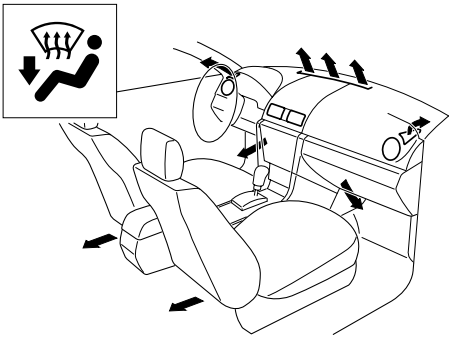
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Selecting the Airflow Mode

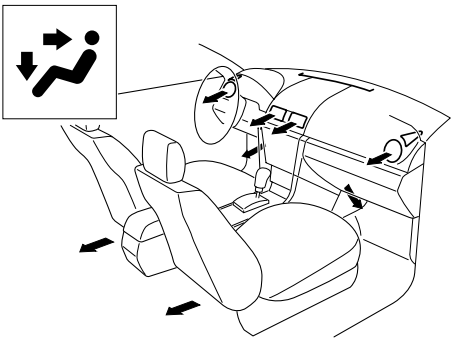
Dashboard Vents



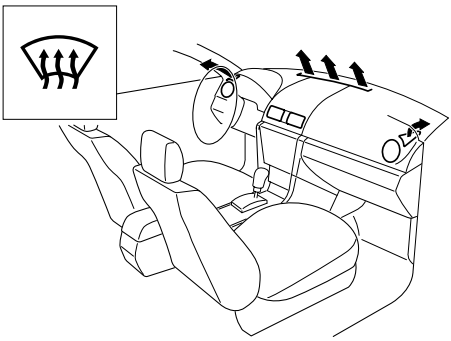
Defroster and Floor Vents



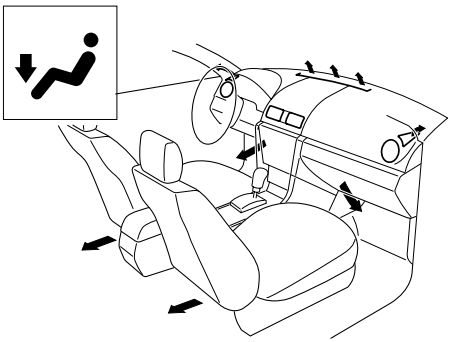
Dashboard and Floor Vents



Defroster Vents



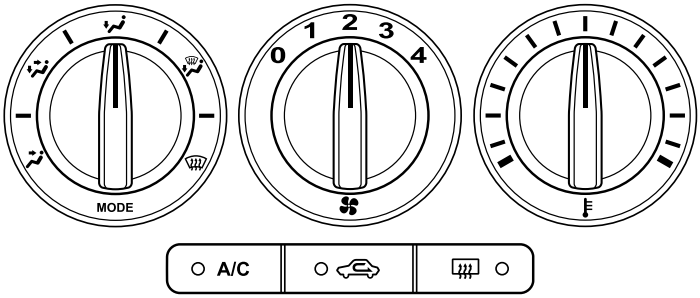
Floor Vents



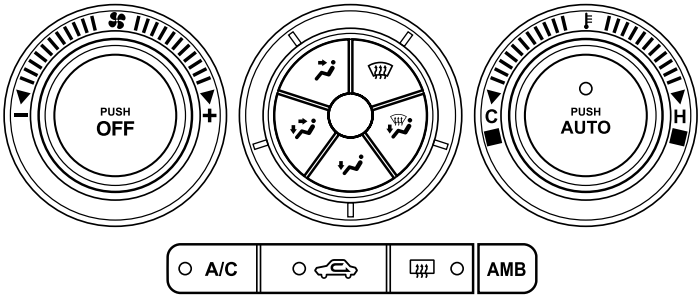
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Types of the Climate Control System*

Manual type and fully automatic type climate control systems are explained separately.
Check your vehicle's climate control type and read the appropriate pages.
Manual Type ..... page 6-6



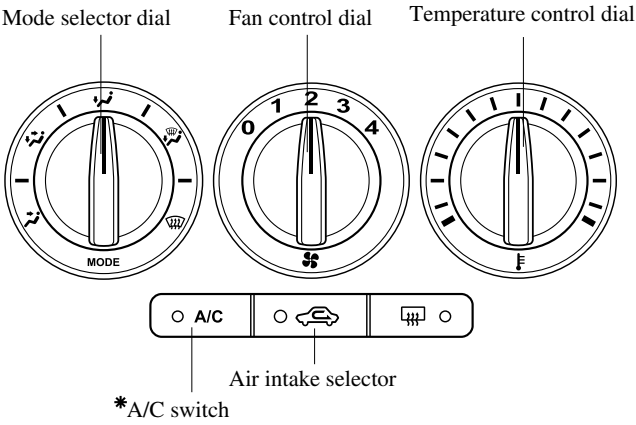
Fully Automatic Type ..... page 6-11



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Climate Control System

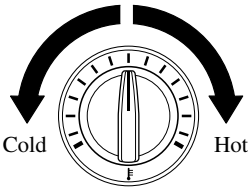
Manual Type*



*Some models.

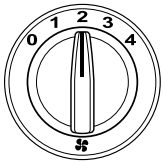
▼Control Switches

Temperature control dial



This dial controls temperature. Turn it clockwise for hot and counterclockwise for cold.

Fan control dial

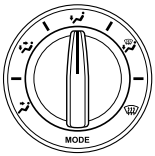


This dial allows variable fan speeds.
0—Fan off
1—Low speed
2—Medium low speed
3—Medium high speed
4—High speed

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Mode selector dial



Turn the mode selector dial to select airflow mode (page 6-4).

NOTE

- *The mode selector dial can be set at the intermediate positions (▌) between each mode. Set the dial to a intermediate position if you want to slightly adjust the airflow amount.*
- *For example, when the mode selector dial is at the ▌ position between the and positions, airflow from the floor vent is less than that of the position.*

A/C switch *

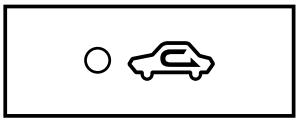
Press the A/C switch to turn the air conditioner on. The indicator light on the switch will illuminate when the fan control dial is set at position 1, 2, 3, or 4.

Press the switch once again to turn the air conditioner off.

NOTE

- *The air conditioner may not function when the outside temperature approaches 0 °C (32 °F).*
- ***(U.S.A., Canada)***
  When the mode is set to or with the fan control dial in a position other than 0 and the temperature control dial in the maximum cold position, the air intake selector switches to the recirculated air mode and the A/C turns on automatically. If A/C is not desired, press the A/C switch to turn it off.
  If recirculated air mode is not desired, press the air intake selector to switch to outside air mode.

Air intake selector



This switch controls the source of air entering the vehicle.

Press the switch to alternate between the outside air and recirculated air modes.

It is recommended that under normal conditions the switch be kept in the outside air mode.

Outside air mode (indicator light turned off)

Outside air is taken into the vehicle. Use this mode for normal ventilation and heating.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Recirculated air mode (indicator light illuminated)

Outside air is shut off. Air within the vehicle is recirculated.

This mode can be used when driving on a dusty road or in similar conditions. It also helps to provide quicker cooling of the interior.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the recirculated air mode in cold or rainy weather:

Using the recirculated air mode in cold or rainy weather is dangerous as it will cause the windows to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

▼Heating

1. Set the mode selector dial to the position.
2. Set the temperature control dial to the hot position.
3. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.

NOTE

- *If the windshield fogs up easily, set the mode selector dial to the position.*
- *If cooler air is desired at face level, set the mode selector dial at the position and adjust the temperature control dial to maintain maximum comfort.*
- *The air to the floor is warmer than air to the face (except when the temperature control dial is set at the extreme hot or cold position).*
- *In the , , or position, the air conditioner is automatically turned on (however, the indicator light does not illuminate) and the outside air mode is automatically selected to defrost the windshield.*
  In the or position, the outside air mode cannot be changed to the recirculated air mode.

▼Cooling (With Air Conditioner)

1. Set the mode selector dial to the position.
2. Set the temperature control dial to the cold position.
3. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.
4. Turn on the air conditioner by pressing the A/C switch.
5. Adjust the fan control dial and temperature control dial to maintain maximum comfort.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

When using the air conditioner while driving up long hills or in heavy traffic, closely monitor the temperature gauge (page 5-35). The air conditioner may cause engine overheating. If the gauge indicates overheating, turn the air conditioner off (page 7-14).

NOTE

- *When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control dial to the extreme cold position and set the air intake selector to the recirculated air mode, then set the fan control dial to position 4.*
- *If warmer air is desired at floor level, set the mode selector dial at the position and adjust the temperature control dial to maintain maximum comfort.*
- *The air to the floor is warmer than air to the face (except when the temperature control dial is set at the extreme hot or cold position).*

▼Ventilation

1. Set the mode selector dial to the position.
2. Set the air intake selector to the outside air mode.
3. Set the temperature control dial to the desired position.
4. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.

▼Windshield Defrosting and Defogging

1. Set the mode selector dial to the position.
2. Set the temperature control dial to the desired position.
3. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.

⚠ WARNING

Do not defog the windshield using the position with the temperature control set to the cold position:

Using the position with the temperature control set to the cold position is dangerous as it will cause the outside of the windshield to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident. Set the temperature control to the hot or warm position when using the position.

NOTE

- *For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control dial to the extreme hot position and the fan control dial to position 4.*
- *If warm air is desired at the floor, set the mode selector dial to the position.*
- *In the , , or position, the air conditioner is automatically turned on (however, the indicator light does not illuminate) and the outside air mode is automatically selected to defrost the windshield.*
  In the or position, the outside air mode cannot be changed to the recirculated air mode.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Dehumidifying (With Air Conditioner)

Operate the air conditioner in cool or cold weather to help defog the windshield and side windows.

1. Set the mode selector dial to the desired position.
2. Set the air intake selector to the outside air mode.
3. Set the temperature control dial to the desired position.
4. Set the fan control dial to the desired speed.
5. Turn on the air conditioner by pressing the A/C switch.

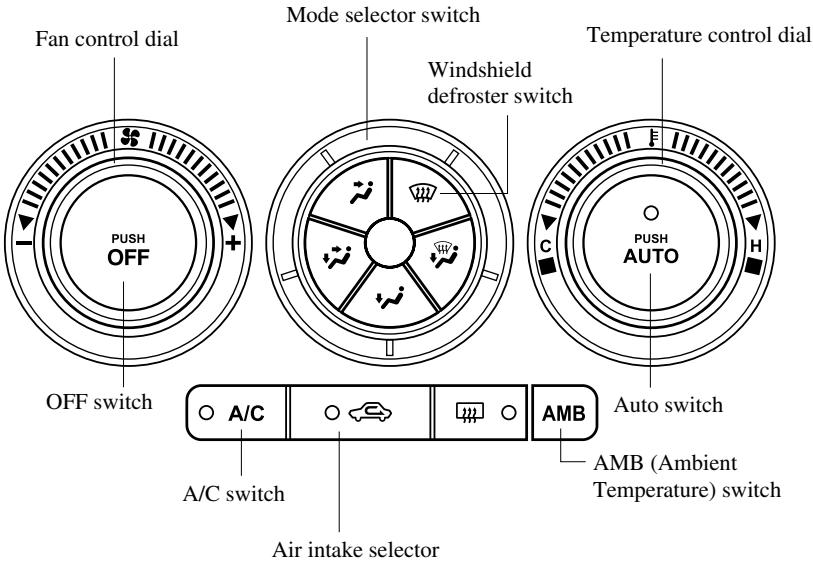
NOTE

One of the functions of the air conditioner is dehumidifying the air and, to use this function, the temperature does not have to be set to cold. Therefore, set the temperature control dial to the desired position (hot or cold) and turn on the air conditioner when you want to dehumidify the cabin air.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fully Automatic Type*

Climate control information is displayed on the information display.



▼Control Switches

AUTO switch

By pressing the AUTO switch the following functions will be automatically controlled in accordance with the selected set temperature:

- Airflow temperature
- Amount of airflow
- Selection of airflow mode
- Outside/Recirculated air selection
- Air conditioner operation

NOTE

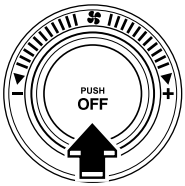
AUTO switch indicator light

- *When on, it indicates AUTO operation, and the system will function automatically.*
- *When off, it indicates the operation of other switches such as the mode selector switch, fan control dial, A/C switch and windshield defroster switch. Other functions will continue to operate automatically.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

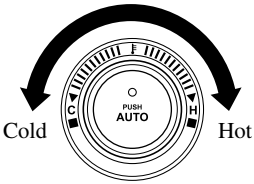
Climate Control System

OFF switch



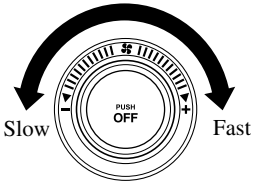
Pressing the OFF switch shuts off the climate control system.

Temperature control dial



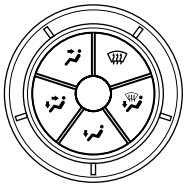
This dial controls temperature.Turn it clockwise for hot and counterclockwise for cold.

Fan control dial



The fan has seven speeds. The selected speed will be displayed.

Mode selector switch



The desired airflow mode can be selected (page 6-4).

NOTE

With the airflow mode set to position and the temperature control dial set at a medium temperature, heated air is directed to the feet and a comparably lower air temperature will flow through the central, left and right vents.

A/C switch

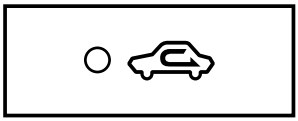
Pressing the A/C switch while the AUTO switch is turned on will turn off the air conditioning (cooling/dehumidifying functions). The air conditioning can be turned on and off by pressing the A/C switch while the fan control dial is on.

NOTE

The air conditioner may not function when the outside temperature approaches 0 °C (32 °F). (Indicator remains on even when system is off.)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Air intake selector



Outside or recirculated air positions can be selected. Press the switch to select outside/recirculated air positions.

Recirculated air position (indicator light illuminated)

Use this position when going through tunnels, driving in congested traffic (high engine exhaust areas), high ambient humidity conditions, or when quick cooling is desired.

Outside air position (indicator light turned off)

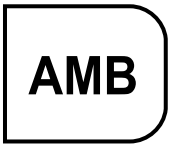
Use this position for normal conditions and defogging.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use the position in cold or rainy weather:

Using the position in cold or rainy weather is dangerous as it will cause the windows to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

AMB (Ambient Temperature) switch

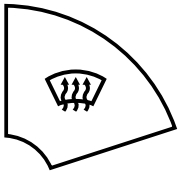


Press the AMB switch to display the ambient temperature.

NOTE

- *The displayed ambient temperature may vary from the actual ambient temperature depending on the surrounding area and vehicle conditions.*
- *Press the AMB switch again to switch the display from ambient temperature to the temperature set for the air conditioner.*

Windshield defroster switch

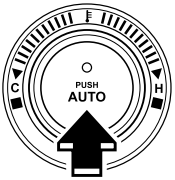


Press the switch to defrost the windshield and front door windows.

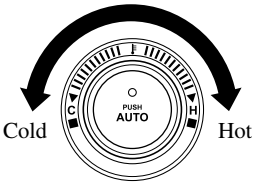
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Operation of Automatic Air Conditioning

1. Press the AUTO switch. Selection of the airflow mode, air intake selector and amount of airflow will be automatically controlled.



2. Use the temperature control dial to select a desired temperature.

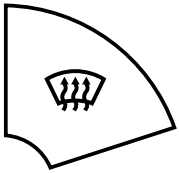


To turn off the system, press the OFF switch.

NOTE

- *Setting the temperature to maximum high or low will not provide the desired temperature at a faster rate.*
- *When selecting heat, the system will restrict airflow until it has warmed to prevent cold air from blowing out of the vents.*

▼Windshield Defrosting and Defogging



Press the windshield defroster switch. In this position, the outside air position is automatically selected, and the air conditioner automatically turns on. The air conditioner will directly dehumidify the air to the front windshield and side windows (page 6-4). Airflow amount will be increased.

⚠ WARNING

Set the temperature control to the hot or warm position when defogging (position):

Using the position with the temperature control set to the cold position is dangerous as it will cause the outside of the windshield to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

NOTE

Use the temperature control dial to increase the air flow temperature and defog the windshield more quickly.

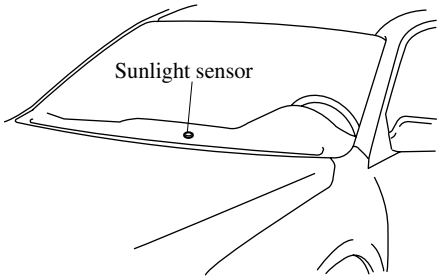
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

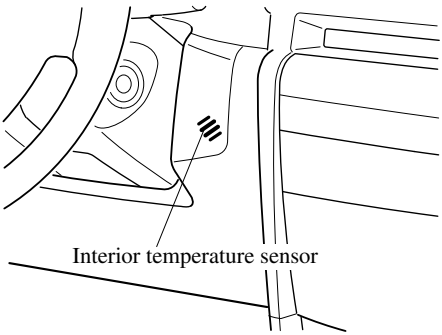
▼Sunlight/Temperature Sensor

The fully automatic air conditioner function measures inside and outside temperatures, and sunlight. It then sets temperatures inside the passenger compartment accordingly.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not obstruct either sensor, otherwise the automatic air conditioner will not operate properly.





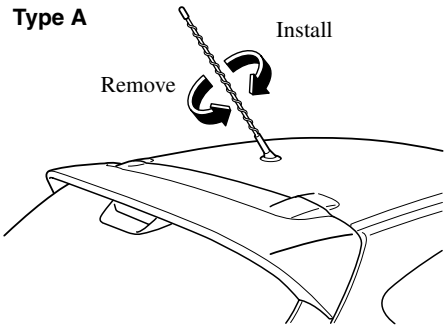
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Antenna

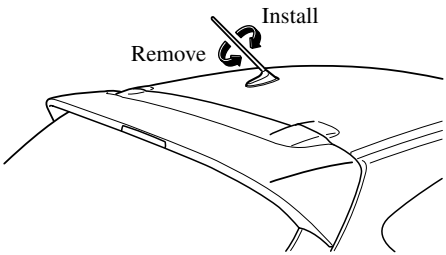
▼Detachable Type

To remove the antenna, turn it counterclockwise.
To install the antenna, turn it clockwise.
Make sure the antenna is securely installed.

Type A



Type B



⚠CAUTION

- *To prevent damage to the antenna, remove it before entering a car wash facility or passing beneath a low overhead clearance.*
- *Be careful around the antenna when removing snow from the roof. Otherwise the antenna could be damaged.*

NOTE

When leaving your vehicle unattended, we recommend that you remove the antenna and store it inside the vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating Tips for Audio System

⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the audio control switches while driving the vehicle:

Adjusting the audio while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident. Always adjust the audio while the vehicle is stopped. Even if the audio control switches are equipped on the steering wheel, learn to use the switches without looking down at them so that you can keep your maximum attention on the road while driving the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

For the purposes of safe driving, adjust the audio volume to a level that allows you to hear sounds outside of the vehicle including car horns and particularly emergency vehicle sirens.

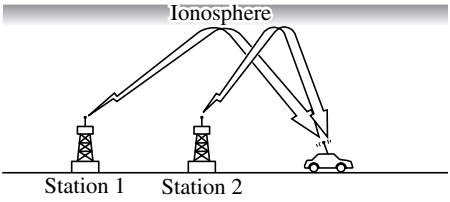
NOTE

- *To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio system on for a long period of time when the engine is not running.*
- *If a cellular phone or CB radio is used in or near the vehicle, it could cause noise to occur from the audio system, however, this does not indicate that the system has been damaged.*

▼Radio Reception

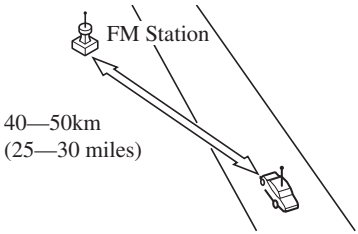
AM characteristics

AM signals bend around such things as buildings or mountains and bounce off the ionosphere. Therefore, they can reach longer distances than FM signals. Because of this, two stations may sometimes be picked up on the same frequency at the same time.



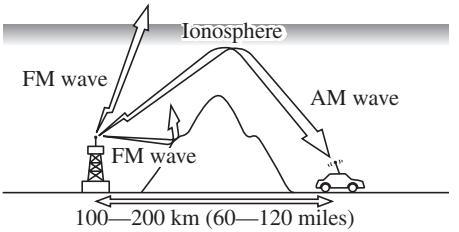
FM characteristics

An FM broadcast range is usually about 40—50 km (25—30 miles) from the source. Because of extra coding needed to break the sound into two channels, stereo FM has even less range than monaural (non-stereo) FM.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

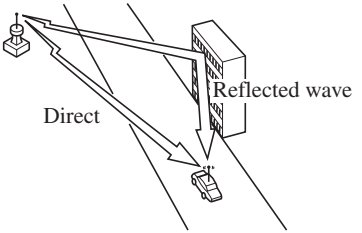
Signals from an FM transmitter are similar to beams of light because they do not bend around corners, but they do reflect. Unlike AM signals, FM signals cannot travel beyond the horizon. Therefore, FM stations cannot be received at the great distances possible with AM reception.



Atmospheric conditions can also affect FM reception. High humidity will cause poor reception. However, cloudy days may provide better reception than clear days.

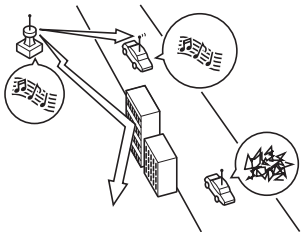
Multipath noise

Since FM signals can be reflected by obstructions, it is possible to receive both the direct signal and the reflected signal at the same time. This causes a slight delay in reception and may be heard as a broken sound or a distortion. This problem may also be encountered when in close proximity to the transmitter.



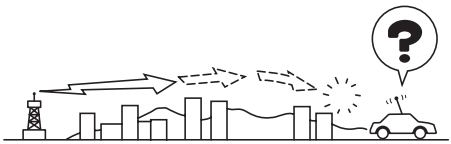
Flutter/Skip noise

Signals from an FM transmitter move in straight lines and become weak in valleys between tall buildings, mountains, and other obstacles. When a vehicle passes through such an area, the reception conditions may change suddenly, resulting in annoying noise.



Weak signal noise

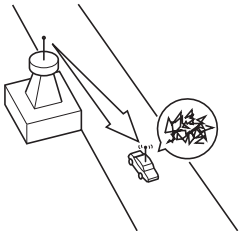
In suburban areas, broadcast signals become weak because of distance from the transmitter. Reception in such fringe areas is characterized by sound breakup.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

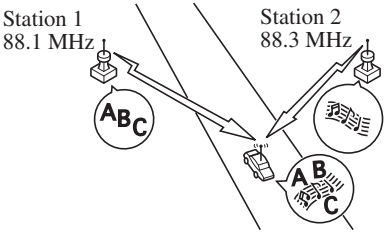
Strong signal noise

This occurs very close to a transmitter tower. The broadcast signals are extremely strong, so the result is noise and sound breakup at the radio receiver.



Station drift noise

When a vehicle reaches the area of two strong stations broadcasting at similar frequencies, the original station may be temporarily lost and the second station picked up. At this time there will be some noise from this disturbance.



▼Operating Tips for CD Player/In-Dash CD Changer

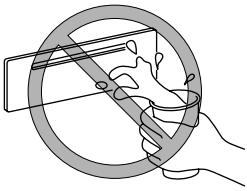
Condensation phenomenon

Immediately after turning on the heater when the vehicle is cold, the CD or optical components (prism and lens) in the CD player/In-dash CD changer may become clouded with condensation. At this time, the CD will eject immediately when placed in the unit. A clouded CD can be corrected simply by wiping it with a soft cloth. Clouded optical components will clear naturally in about an hour. Wait for normal operation to return before attempting to use the unit.

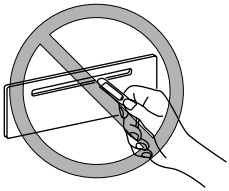
Handling the CD player/In-dash CD changer

The following precautions should be observed.

- Do not spill any liquid on the audio system.

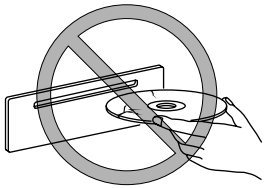


- Do not insert any objects, other than CDs, into the slot.

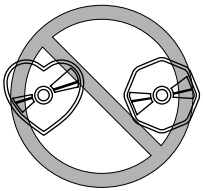


Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

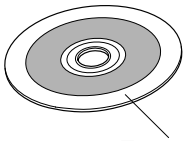
- The CD revolves at high speed within the unit. Defective (cracked or badly bent) CDs should never be used.



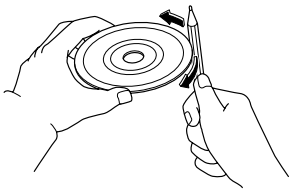
- Do not use non-conventional discs such as heart-shaped, octagonal discs, etc. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.



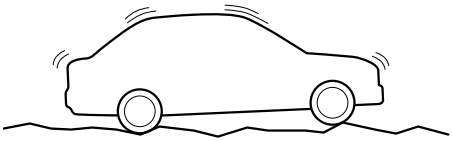
- If the memory portion of the CD is transparent or translucent, do not use the disc.



- A new CD may have rough edges on its inner and outer perimeters. If a disc with rough edges is used, proper setting will not be possible and the CD player/In-dash CD changer will not play the CD. In addition, the disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction. Remove the rough edges in advance by using a ball-point pen or pencil as shown below. To remove the rough edges, rub the side of the pen or pencil against the inner and outer perimeter of the CD.



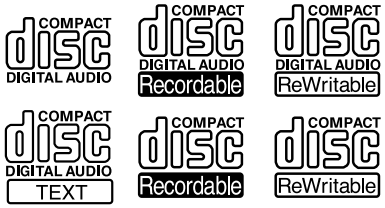
- When driving over uneven surfaces, the sound may jump.



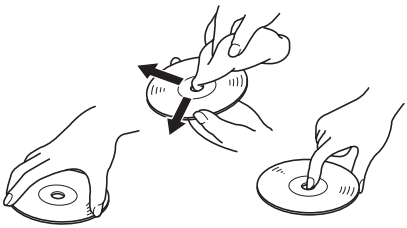
- The CD player/In-dash CD changer has been designed to play CDs bearing the identification logo as shown. No other discs can be played.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Use discs that have been legitimately produced. If illegally-copied discs such as pirated discs are used, the system may not operate properly.



- Be sure never to touch the signal surface when handling the CDs. Pick up a CD by grasping the outer edge or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.



- Do not stick paper or tape on the CD. Avoid scratching the reverse side (the side without a label). The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.
- Dust, finger smudges, and dirt can decrease the amount of light reflected from the signal surface, thus affecting sound quality. If the CD should become soiled, gently wipe it with a soft cloth from the center of the CD to the edge.
- Do not use record sprays, antistatic agents, or household spray cleaners. Volatile chemicals such as benzine and thinner can also damage the surface of the CD and must not be used. Anything that can damage, warp, or fog plastic should never be used to clean CDs.
- Insert discs one by one. If two discs are inserted at the same time, the system may not operate properly.
- CD TEXT textual information cannot be displayed by audio units other than the CD player/In-dash CD changer. (Only playback is possible.)
- The following player can play MP3 files recorded in CD-ROM, CD-R, and CD-RW.
  · CD player
  · In-dash CD changer
- The CD player/In-dash CD changer ejects the CD if the CD is inserted upside down. Also dirty and/or defective CDs may be ejected.
- An 8 cm (3 in) CD can be played in the CD player.
  The In-dash CD changer is specially made for 12 cm (5 in) CDs.
  An 8 cm (3 in) CD can be played in the In-dash CD changer if an 8 cm (3 in) CD adapter is used.
  If an 8 cm (3 in) CD adapter is not used, the In-dash CD changer may be damaged. Always use a CD adapter.
- Do not insert cleaning discs in the CD player/In-dash CD changer.
- Do not insert any disc with a peel-off seal affixed to it.
- This unit may not be able to play certain CD-R/CD-RWs made using a computer or music CD recorder due to disc characteristics, scratches, smudges, dirt, etc., or due to dust or condensation on the lens inside the unit.
- Storing CDs in the vehicle exposed to direct sunlight or high temperature may damage the CD-R/CD-RWs, and make them unplayable.
- CD-R/CD-RW exceeding 700 MB cannot be played.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- This unit may not be able to play certain discs made using a computer due to the application (writing software) setting used. (For details, consult the store where the application was purchased.)
- It is possible that certain text data, such as titles, recorded on a CD-R/CD-RW may not be displayed when musical data (CD-DA) is playing.
- The period from when a CD-RW is inserted to when it begins playing is longer than a normal CD or CD-R.
- Completely read the instruction manual and cautions for CD-R/CD-RWs.
- Do not use discs with cellophane tape adhering, partially peeled off labels, or adhesive material exuding from the edges of the CD label. Also, do not use discs with a commercially-available CD-R label affixed. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.

▼Operating tips for MP3

NOTE

Supply of this product only conveys a license for private, non-commercial use and does not convey a license nor imply any right to use this product in any commercial (i.e. revenue-generating) real time broadcasting (terrestrial, satellite, cable and/or any other media), broadcasting/streaming via the Internet, intranets and/or other networks or in other electronic content distribution systems, such as pay-audio or audio-on-demand applications. An independent license for such use is required. For details, please visit http://www.mp3licensing.com.

- This audio system handles MP3 files that have been recorded on CD-R/CD-RW/CD-ROMs. Discs that have been recorded using the following formats can be played:
  - ISO 9660 level 1
  - ISO 9660 level 2
  - Joliet extended format
  - Romeo extended format
- This unit handles MP3 files conforming to the MP3 format containing both header frames and data frames.
- This unit can play multi-session recorded discs that have up to 40 sessions.
- This unit can play MP3s with sampling frequencies of 16/22.05/24/32/44.1/48 kHz.
- This unit can play MP3 files that have been recorded in bit rates of 8 kbps to 320 kbps. Nonetheless, to insure enjoyment of music with consistent sound quality, it is recommended to use discs that have been recorded at a bit rate of 128 kbps or more.
- If a disc has both music data (CD-DA) and MP3 files, playback of the two file types differs depending on how the disc was recorded.
- Packet written discs cannot be played on this unit.
- This unit does not play CDs recorded using MP3i (MP3 interactive), MP3 PRO and RIFF MP3 formats.

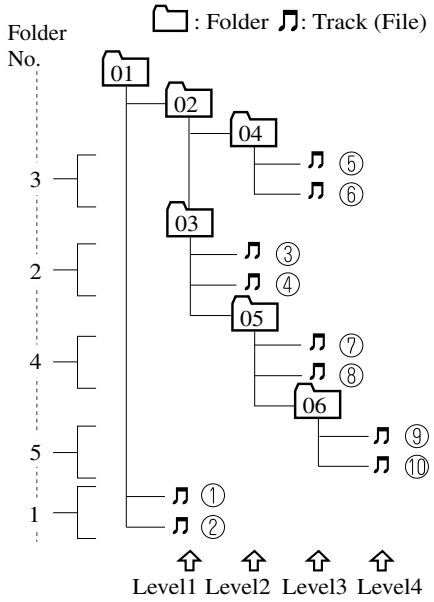
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

About folders and files

- The order of hierarchy for MP3 files and folders during playback or other functions is from shallow to deep. The arrangement and playing order of a recorded disc containing MP3 files is as follows:
  - File number
    A numerical file number is assigned to each file in a folder in the order of hierarchy from shallow to deep.
  - Folder number
    A numerical folder number is assigned to each folder in the order of hierarchy from shallow to deep.

NOTE

Folders and tracks (files) within the same hierarchy play in the order they were written to the disc depending on the write software.



- The folder order is automatically assigned and this order cannot be optionally set.
- Any folder without an MP3 file will be ignored. (It will be skipped and the folder number will not be displayed.)
- MP3 files not conforming to the MP3 format containing both header frames and data frames will be skipped and not played.
- This unit will play MP3 files that have up to eight levels. However, the more levels a disc has, the longer it will take to initially start playing. It is recommended to record discs with two levels or less.
- A single disc with up to 512 files can be played and a single folder with up to 255 files can be played.
- When naming an MP3 file, be sure to add an MP3 file extension (.mp3) after the file name.
- The maximum number of characters that can be used for file names is as follows. However, this unit will only display up to 30 characters, including the file extension (.mp3).

	Maximum number of characters in a file name (including a separator "." and the three letters of the file extension)
ISO9660 level 1	12*
ISO9660 level 2	31*
Joliet extended format	64
Romeo extended format	128

* English one-byte characters (capitalized only) and underbar "_" are available.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

This unit can only play MP3 files that have an MP3 file extension (.mp3) attached. Do not attach an MP3 file extension to any other type file as it could cause noise to be emitted or a malfunction in the unit.

About ID3 Tag display

- This unit can only display ID3 Tag album, track and artist names that have been input using Ver.1.0/1.1/2.2/2.3 formats. Any other data that may have been input cannot be displayed.
- This unit can only display English (including numerals) one-byte characters. Use only English (including numerals) one-byte characters when inputting ID3 tags. Two-byte characters and some special symbols cannot be displayed.

Specialized glossary

MP3

Abbreviation for "MPEG Audio Layer 3". A technical standard for audio compression as decided by an ISO (International Organization for Standardization) MPEG working group. Use of MP3 allows for audio data to be compressed to approximately a tenth of the source data size.

ISO 9660

An international standard for logical formatting of CD-ROM files and folders. It is divided into three separate levels based on differences in file naming procedures, data configuration and other characteristics.

Multi-session

A session is the complete amount of data recorded from the beginning to the end of a single period of CD-ROM, CD-R/CD-RW data recording. Multi-session refers to the existence of data from two or more sessions on a single disc.

Sampling

Refers to the process of encoding analog audio data at regular intervals and converting it to digital data. The sampling rate refers to the number of times a sample is taken in one second and is expressed in Hz units. Increasing the sampling rate improves the sound quality but also increases the data size.

Bit rate

Refers to the volume of data per second, expressed in bps (bits per second). Generally, the larger the number of the transfer bit rate when compressing an MP3 file, the more information regarding musical reproduction it carries, and therefore the better the sound quality.

Packet writing

A general term for the method, similar to that used for floppy discs or hard drives, of recording the required file in a single increment on a CD-R and similar.

ID3 Tag

ID3 tag is a method for storing information related to the music in an MP3 file. Information such as track, artist and album name can be stored. This content can be freely edited using ID3 editing function software.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

VBR

Abbreviation for Variable Bit Rate. While CBR (Constant Bit Rate) is generally used, VBR varies the bit rate for audio compression according to compression conditions and this allows for compression with preference given to sound quality.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

MEMO

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Audio Set

Audio information is displayed on the information display.

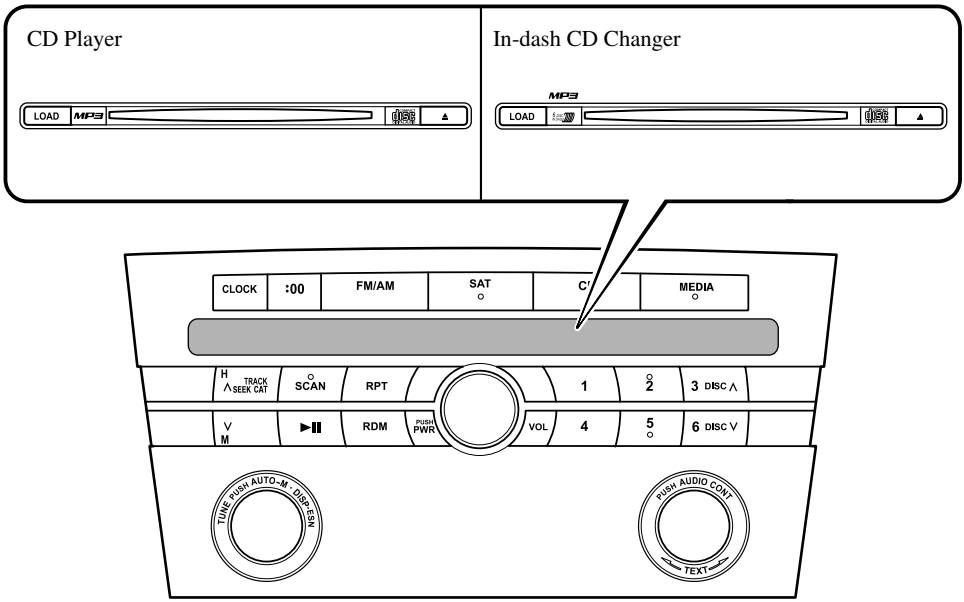
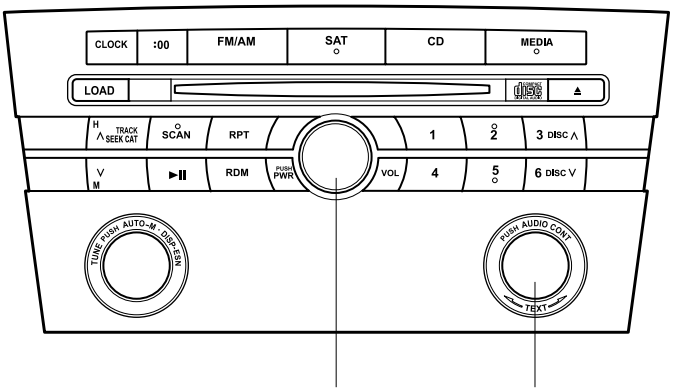


Illustration is of a representative audio unit.

Power/Volume/Sound Controls ..... page 6-28
Operating the Radio ..... page 6-30
Operating the Satellite Radio ..... page 6-32
Operating the Compact Disc (CD) Player ..... page 6-46
Operating the In-Dash CD Changer ..... page 6-50
Operating the Auxiliary jack ..... page 6-54
Error Indications ..... page 6-55

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Power/Volume/Sound Controls



Power ON/OFF

Turn the ignition switch to the ACC or ON position.

Press the power/volume dial to turn the audio system on.
Press the power/volume dial again to turn the audio system off.

NOTE

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio system on for a long period of time when the engine is not running.

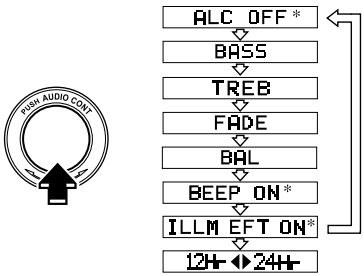
Volume adjustment

To adjust the volume, turn the power/volume dial.

Turn the power/volume dial to the right to increase volume, to the left to decrease it.

Audio sound adjustment

1. Press the audio control dial to select the function. The selected function will be indicated.



* Depending on the mode selected, the indication changes.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Turn the audio control dial to adjust the selected functions as follows:

Indication	Turn Left	Turn Right
ALC	Select mode	
BASS	Decrease bass	Increase bass
TREB	Decrease treble	Increase treble
FADE	Shift the sound to the front	Shift the sound to the rear
BAL	Shift the sound to the left	Shift the sound to the right
BEEP	OFF	ON
ILLM EFT	OFF	ON
12Hr ◆▶24Hr	12Hr (Flashing)	24Hr (Flashing)

NOTE

About 5 seconds after selecting any mode, the volume function will be automatically selected. To reset bass, treble, fade, and balance, press the audio control dial for 2 seconds. The unit will beep and "CLEAR" will be displayed.

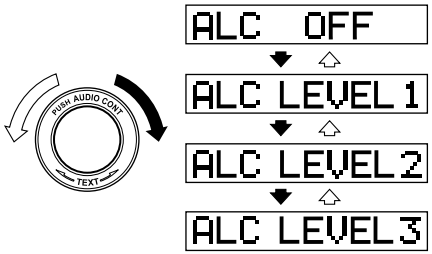
Automatic Level Control (ALC)

The automatic level control is a feature that automatically adjusts audio volume and sound quality according to the vehicle speed.
The volume increases in accordance with the increase in vehicle speed, and decreases as vehicle speed decreases.

Select the desired ALC mode.

Mode	Volume change
ALC OFF	No change
ALC LEVEL1	Minimum
ALC LEVEL2	Medium
ALC LEVEL3	Maximum

Turn the audio control dial to select ALC OFF or ALC LEVEL1—3 modes. The selected mode will be indicated.



BEEP setting

The beep-sound when operating the audio system can be set on or off.

ILLM EFT setting (Illumination setting during operation)

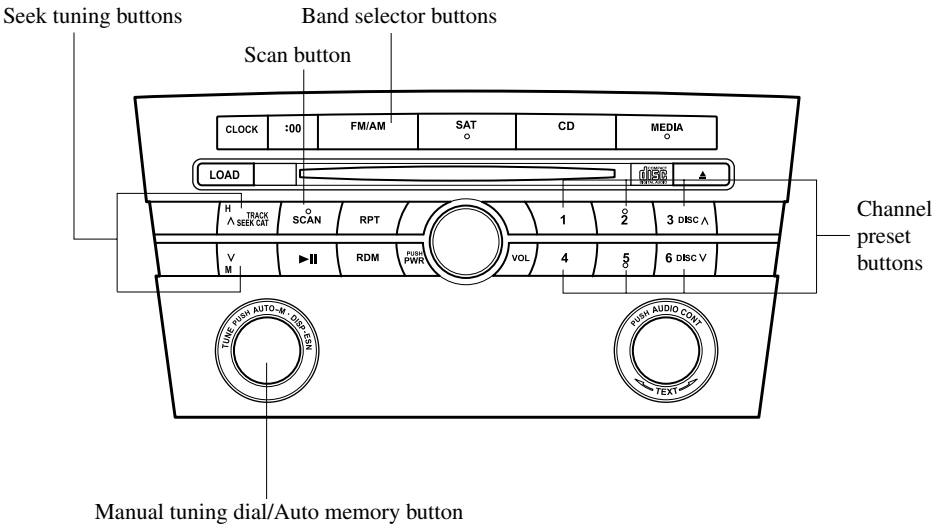
The audio system illumination during operation can be set on or off.

Time adjustment

Rotating the audio control dial switches the display between 12 and 24-hour clock time (page 6-66).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Operating the Radio



Radio ON

Press a band selector button (**FM/AM**) to turn the radio on.

Band selection

Successively pressing the band selector button (**FM/AM**) switches the bands as follows: FM1→FM2→AM.

The selected mode will be indicated. If FM stereo is being received, “ST” will be displayed.

NOTE

If the FM broadcast signal becomes weak, reception automatically changes from STEREO to MONO for reduced noise, and the “ST” indicator will go out.

Tuning

The radio has the following tuning methods: Manual, Seek, Scan, Preset channel, and Auto memory tuning. The easiest way to tune stations is to set them on preset channels.

NOTE

If the power supply is interrupted (fuse blows or the battery is disconnected), the preset channels will be erased.

Manual tuning

Turning the manual tuning dial will change the frequency higher or lower.

Seek tuning

Pressing the seek tuning button (∧ , ∨) will cause the tuner to seek a higher or lower frequency automatically.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE
If you continue to press and hold the button, the frequency will continue changing without stopping.

Scan tuning

Press the scan button (**SCAN**) to automatically sample strong stations. Scanning stops at each station for about 5 seconds. To hold a station, press the scan button (**SCAN**) again during this interval.

Preset channel tuning

The 6 preset channels can be used to store 6 AM and 12 FM stations.

1. To set a channel first select AM, FM1, or FM2. Tune to the desired station.
2. Depress a channel preset button for about 2 seconds until a beep sound is heard. The preset channel number and station frequency will be displayed. The station is now held in the memory.
3. Repeat this operation for the other stations and bands you want to store. To tune one in the memory, select AM, FM1, or FM2 and then press its channel preset button. The station frequency and the channel number will be displayed.

NOTE
If the power supply is interrupted (fuse blows or the battery is disconnected), the preset channels will be erased.

Auto memory tuning

This is especially useful when driving in an area where the local stations are not known. Additional AM/FM stations can be stored without disturbing the previously set channels.

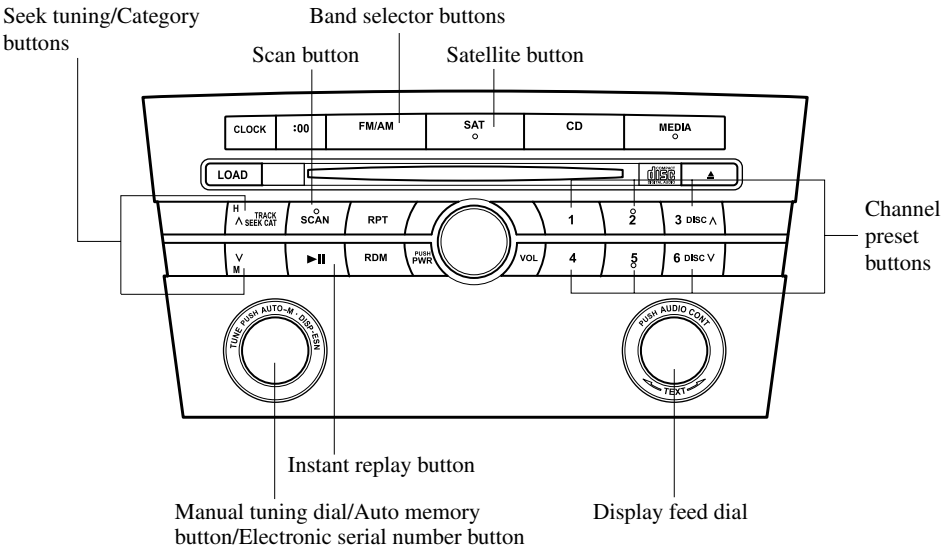
Press and hold the auto memory button (**AUTO-M**) for about 2 seconds until a beep sound is heard; the system will automatically scan and temporarily store up to 6 stations with the strongest frequencies in each selected band in that area.

After scanning is completed, the station with the strongest frequency will be tuned and its frequency displayed.
Press and release the auto memory button (**AUTO-M**) to recall stations from the auto-stored stations. One stored station will be selected each time; its frequency and channel number will be displayed.

NOTE
If no stations can be tuned after scanning operations, "A" will be displayed.

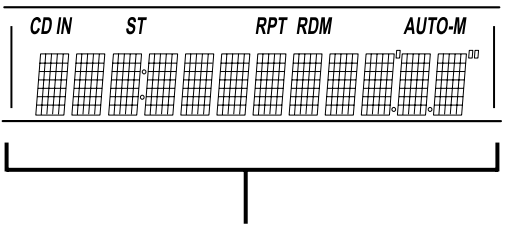
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Operating the Satellite Radio*



Information display

All operations of the satellite radio are displayed on the Information display.



Channel number, Channel name, Category name, Artist name, Song title, ID code, Preset channel number, Bank number, Error signs

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, If not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Increase the separation between the equipment and tuner.

- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the tuner is connected.

- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/ TV technician for help.

What is satellite radio?

SIRIUS is radio the way it was meant to be: More than 100 new channels of digital quality programming delivered to listeners coast to coast via satellite. That means channels of completely commercial-free music plus more channels of news, sports, and entertainment from names like CNBC, Discovery, SCI-FI Channel, A&E, House of Blues, E!, NPR, Speed vision and ESPN.

SIRIUS is live, dynamic entertainment, completely focused on listeners. Every minute of every day of every week will be different. All commercial-free music channels are created in-house and hosted by DJs who know and love the music. Do you like Reggae? How about Classic Rock or New Rock? SIRIUS has an array of choices spanning a vast range of musical tastes including the hits of the 50's, 60's, 70's, & 80's as well as Jazz, Country, Blues, Pop, Rap, R&B, Bluegrass, Alternative, Classical, Heavy Metal, Dance and many others.

From its state-of-the-art, digital broadcasting facility in Rockefeller Center, New York City, SIRIUS will deliver the broadest, deepest mix of radio entertainment from coast to coast.

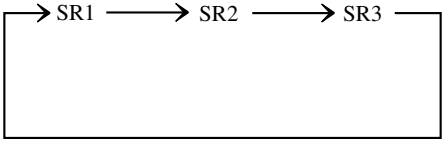
SIRIUS will bring you music and entertainment programming that is simply not available on traditional radio in any market across the country. It's radio like you've never heard before.

Sign up for SIRIUS Radio today! For more information, visit siriusradio.com. Satellite radio can be subscribed to and received in the United States. (Except Alaska and Hawaii) and Canada.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting SIRIUS radio mode (Satellite button)

When the satellite button is pressed, it will play the last selected SIRIUS channel. Every time the satellite button is pressed, the bank is changed over in the order shown below.



NOTE

SR1, SR2 and SR3: six stations can be stored in each bank for convenient access to your favorite stations.

Channel selection (Manual tuning dial)

Turning the manual tuning dial allows you to select the desired channel.

- Turn the manual tuning dial clockwise: Channel Up
- Turn the manual tuning dial counterclockwise: Channel Down

Preset channel programming (Channel preset buttons or display button)

1. Channels can be programmed with either a “channel number” or “text” display.
2. Press the display button to select the channel number or desired text (e.g. channel name) display mode.
3. Select the desired channel to be programmed.
4. Hold down a channel preset button for 1.5 seconds or more, and release when the beep is heard.
5. The programming process is complete after the channel number or text blinks.

Preset channel call-up (Channel preset buttons)

Press a channel preset button.

Category change (Category button)

Press the category button (UP or DOWN) and select the desired category.

- Press the category button (UP): Category up
- Press the category button (DOWN): Category down

At this time, the lowest (smallest-number) channel within the category indicated is received.
When the highest (or lowest) category is reached, the display of the category is changed over in the order shown below.
Highest category→Category all→Lowest category

NOTE

While in “CATEGORY ALL” mode, all channels covering a category can be accessed (Category off condition).

Channel selection within a category (Manual tuning dial)

NOTE

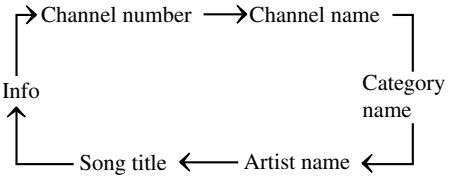
If the category is not in “ALL”, turning the manual tuning dial moves the channel number up/down in the present category.

- *Turn the knob clockwise: Channel Up*
- *Turn the knob counterclockwise: Channel Down*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Channel number, channel, category, artist, and song title display (Display button, display feed dial)

Each time the display button is briefly pressed during SIRIUS reception, the display of the text data changes in the order shown below.



NOTE

- *Eight characters can be displayed on 1 screen.*
- *By turning the display feed dial counterclockwise, it is possible to display the remaining part of the title one character at a time each time the dial is rotated one increment.*

How to subscribe to satellite radio

Once the system is installed you must first subscribe to the SIRIUS Radio service to activate the system.
The SIRIUS Radio service uses an ID code to identify your radio. This code is needed to subscribe to SIRIUS Radio, and if needed, is also used to report any problems should there be any in the future. Listeners can subscribe using any of the following methods:

- Visiting SIRIUS on the web at www.sirius.com
- Subscribing to SIRIUS customer care, available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.
- Calling (888) 539-7474
- E-mail at: customercare@sirius-radio.com
- Writing to: SATELLITE RADIO
  1221 Avenue of the Americas
  New York, NY 10020
  Attention: Customer Care

Customers should have their SIRIUS Radio ID Electronic Serial Number (ESN#) ready.

NOTE

Your ESN# should have been recorded at the time of installation. If not, refer to "DISPLAYING THE SIRIUS ID (ESN)" to retrieve your ESN#.

Satellite radio activation

For activation and subscription information call toll-free at 1-888-539-SIRI (7474). A SIRIUS Customer Care representative will take the necessary information and walk you through the activation process. Or you can visit SIRIUS online at WWW.siriusradio.com and click on the "Join" button.
When you call the SIRIUS Customers Care number you have two options available.

(1) The full package which allows you access to all SIRIUS content except pay- per-view.
(2) The family package which allows access to certain channels. Please see the website: www.sirius.com for details.

Please have the following information ready when attempting to activate your service:

- SIRIUS ID (ESN*)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Valid credit card information (type, number, expiration date)

When you are ready to receive the on-air activation signals you will be instructed (for activation via phone) to turn on your tuner, have the antenna pointed skyward, and to set the channel to channel 184. Once the signal is sent from the national studio it may take up to 10 minutes to be received by your unit.

NOTE

On-air activation is completed after the procedure, in most cases from 10 seconds to 10 minutes.

*ESN: Electronic Serial Number

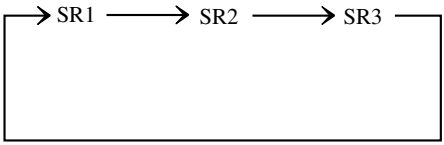
SIRIUS operation

All operations of the satellite radio are conducted by means of the audio unit.

SIRIUS radio mode selection

When the satellite button is pressed during ACC ON, it will play the last SIRIUS channel in use before the mode was switched over to another mode or the power was turned off.
When the satellite button is pressed in a mode other than the SIRIUS mode, the last channel in use will be received.

Every time the satellite button is pressed, the bank changes in the order shown below.



NOTE

SR1, SR2 and SR3: 6 stations can be stored in each bank for convenient access to your favorite stations.

Operation in the initial state

It may take some time to start up the equipment when it is in the initial state, when there is a change in the user's subscription condition, or when the SIRIUS channel map is changed. “UPDATING xx%” is displayed when the SIRIUS channel map is changed. If the unit is initialized or the user contract content is changed, “UPDATING” is displayed. Updating could take as long as 3 minutes depending on the geographical area. When the unit is in an initialized state, channel 184 is displayed after the display indicates “UPDATING 100%”. If the SIRIUS channel map or the user contract content is changed, the channel prior to the change is displayed after “UPDATING” is displayed. After the initialization display, it may take as long as 12 seconds to receive channel 184.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When the SIRIUS mode is switched to another mode, or when the power is turned off, the present channel which is being received is stored as the last channel.

Channel selection

Turning the manual tuning dial allows you to select the desired receiving channel.

- Turn the knob clockwise: Channel Up
- Turn the knob counterclockwise: Channel Down

Unsubscribed channel

When a selected station has not been subscribed to, the display indicates the following:
[CALL + 888] and [539 + SIRI] (Flashes alternately)

NOTE

When the subscription contract is canceled, all of the channels including channel 184 appear as unsubscribed.

Invalid channel

When a selected channel is not broadcasting, [SR + (bank number) + INVALID] is displayed for 1 second, followed by [SR + (bank number) + CHANNEL], which is also displayed for 1 second. The display then returns to the previous valid channel.

NOTE

If the last channel selected has become unavailable because of a channel update the above indication is displayed until any button is pressed.

Preset channel programming

(Programming with "channel number" display)

1. Press the display button to select the channel number display mode.
   Select the desired channel to be programmed. At this point, the following is displayed:
   [SR + (bank number) + (channel number)]
2. Keep pressing the channel preset button for 1.5 seconds or more.
   The programming process is complete after the channel number flashes. Then, [SR + (bank number)] is displayed and a beep sound is heard at the same time.
3. [SR + (bank number) + CH + (preset number) + (channel number)] are displayed.

(Programming with "text" display (e.g. channel name))

1. Press the display button to select the desired text display mode (e.g. channel name).
   Select the desired channel to be programmed. At this point, the following is displayed:
   [SR + (bank number) + (selected text (e.g. channel name))]
2. Keep pressing the channel preset button for 1.5 seconds or more.
   The programming process is complete after the text (e.g. channel name) flashes. Then, [SR + (bank number)] is displayed and you will hear beep sound at the same time.
3. SR + (bank number) + CH + (preset number) + (channel number)] are displayed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Three seconds later, it returns to normal display. [SR + (bank number) + (text (e.g. channel name))]

NOTE
Six stations can be stored in each bank, SR1, SR2, and SR3 for convenient access to your favorite stations.

Preset channel call-up

Press and release the channel preset button,
[SR + (bank number) + CH + (preset number) + (channel number)] appears.
When the preset button is pressed during text mode, its channel number is displayed first for 3 second and then its text is displayed.

NOTE
In the initial setting, all channels are preset to 184.

Category change

Press the category button (UP or DOWN) and select the desired category.
- Press the category button (UP): Category up
- Press the category button (DOWN): Category down

Every time the category (UP) button is pressed for 1.5 second or less, the category is changed over in the order shown below.
At this time, the lowest (smallest-number) channel within the category indicated is received.
When the highest (or lowest) category is reached, the category is changed over in the order shown below.
Highest category→Category all→Lowest category

NOTE
While in "CATEGORY ALL" mode, all channels covering a category can be accessed (Category off condition).

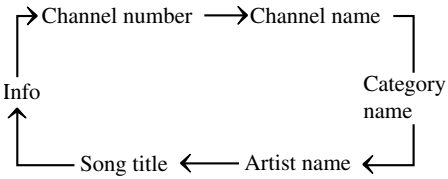
Channel selection within a category

If category is not in "ALL" and the channel number is displayed, turning the manual tuning dial moves the channel number up/down in the present category.
- Turn the manual tuning dial clockwise: Channel Up
- Turn the manual tuning dial counterclockwise: Channel Down

NOTE
The channel number needs to be indicated in the display to use manual tuning dial for this function.

Channel number, channel name, category, artist, song titles and info display

Each time the display button is briefly pressed during SIRIUS reception, the display of the text data is changed over in the order shown below.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE
- *Eight characters are displayed on 1 screen.*
- *By turning the display feed dial counterclockwise, it is possible to display the remaining part of the title one character at a time each time the display feed dial is rotated one increment counterclockwise.*

(Channel number display)
- When the display button is briefly pressed while in info display mode, the mode changes to the channel number display mode.

(Channel name display)
- When the display button is briefly pressed while in channel number display mode, it changes to channel name display mode.
- There are short (8 fixed characters) and long names for the channel name.
- The long name is displayed first, and 3 seconds later the short name is displayed. If there is no short name, the long name is displayed.
- If there are more than 8 characters in the channel name, it is possible to display the remaining part of the channel name one character at a time each time the display feed dial is rotated one increment clockwise.
- While the short name is displayed, turning the display feed dial switches the display to the long name.
- Three seconds after scrolling the long name, the display automatically returns to the first part of the long name. Three more seconds and the short name appears.
- If there is no channel name, “No TITLE” is displayed.

(Category name display)
- When the display button is briefly pressed while in channel name display mode, it changes to the category name display mode.
- There are short (8 fixed characters) and long names for the category name.
- The long name is displayed first, and 3 seconds later the short name is displayed. If there is no short name, the long name is displayed.
- If there are more than 8 characters in the category name, it is possible to display the remaining part of the category name one character at a time each time the display feed dial is rotated one increment clockwise.
- While the short name is displayed, turning the display feed dial switches the display to the long name.
- Three seconds after scrolling the long name, the display automatically returns to display the first part of the long name. Three more seconds and the short name appears.
- If there is no category name, “No CATEGORY” is displayed.

(Artist name display)
- When the display button is briefly pressed while in category name display mode, it changes to the artist name display mode.
- If there are more than 8 characters in the artist's name, it is possible to display the remaining part of the artist name one character at a time each time the display feed dial is rotated one increment clockwise.
- Three seconds after scrolling the artist name, the display automatically return to display the first part of the artist's name.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- If there is no artist's name, “No ARTIST” is displayed.

(Song title display)
- When the display button is briefly pressed while in artist name display mode, it changes to the song title display mode.
- If there are more than 8 characters in the song title, it is possible to display the remaining part of the song title one character at a time each time the display feed dial is rotated one increment clockwise.
- Three more seconds after scrolling the song title, the display automatically returns to display the first part of the song title.
- If there is no song title, “No SONG” is displayed.

(INFO (such as composer's name) display)
- When the display button is briefly pressed while in song title display mode, it changes to the INFO display mode.
- If there are more than 8 characters in the composer's name, it is possible to display the remaining part of the name one character at a time each time the display feed dial is rotated one increment clockwise.
- Three seconds after scrolling the text, the display automatically returns to display the first part of the text.
- If there is no composer name, “No INFO” is displayed.

Instant replay

This function allows you to rewind and replay the program that you were previously or are currently listening to. Press the instant replay button.

When the category button (DOWN) is briefly pressed (about 0.5 seconds), playback starts from the beginning of the current program.
When the category button (DOWN) is pressed twice, playback starts from the beginning of the previous program.
When the category button (DOWN) is pressed for about 0.5 seconds or longer, the program is reversed while the button is being pressed.
When the category button (UP) is briefly pressed (about 0.5 seconds), playback starts from the beginning of the next program. When the category button (UP) is briefly pressed (about 0.5 seconds) while the last program is being played, the instant replay mode is cancelled.
When the category button (UP) is pressed for 0.5 seconds or longer, the program is fast-forwarded while the button is being pressed. When pressing and holding the button until the end of the program, the instant replay mode is cancelled.
When the instant replay button is pressed again, playback is temporarily stopped, or playback starts if it has been temporarily stopped.

Instant replay (PAUSE)

If the instant replay button is pressed while the instant replay mode is off, instant replay mode is turned on in a paused condition (PAUSE). Press the instant replay button again to resume playback from the point at which it was paused.

NOTE
- *If the channel is changed, the instant replay buffer data is deleted.*
- *After turning on the power and switching to SIRIUS digital satellite radio mode, the instant replay mode is not available for several seconds after changing channels.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

(How to cancel the instant replay)
- Turn off the ACC or POWER.
- Press any one of the following buttons: FM/AM, CD, MEDIA, SAT, SEEK/ CAT/TRACK, or a channel preset button.
- Insert or play a CD.

Displaying the SIRIUS ID (ESN)

When the ESN button is pressed for 1.5 seconds or longer, a 12-digit Electronic Serial Number (ESN) for the SIRIUS tuner is displayed.

[SR + (bank number) + (first 8 digits of SIRIUS ID (ESN))] are displayed.
The 4 digits following the first 8 digits are displayed by turning the display feed dial clockwise.
While the last 4 digits of the 12-digit SIRIUS ID (ESN) are displayed, turning the display feed dial displays the first 8 digits of SIRIUS ID (ESN).

(How to clear the message)
- Turn off the ACC.
- Turn off the POWER.
- Press any one of the following buttons: FM/AM, CD, MEDIA, SAT, ESN/ DISP, CAT, SCAN, Instant replay, or a channel preset button.
- Insert or play a CD.

(If the SIRIUS ID (ESN) for the tuner does not display)
If "ESN + FAIL" is displayed after pressing the ESN button for 1.5 seconds or longer, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Initialization of ID code

If the registered ID code is forgotten, return the ID code to the default [0000] by performing the following steps:
Setting condition: SAT mode

(Master code input preparation)

1. Hold the scan button, then press channel preset button 4, hold both buttons together for 1.5 seconds.
2. "ENTER PIN" appears for 2 seconds which indicates that it is in code input mode.
3. "SR1 - - - -" appears, which indicates that it is ready for code input.

(Master code input)

4. Input the master code using the channel preset buttons 1-4.
   Press the scan button inputting the code.
   (The master code is already set at the time of factory shipment.)

(Master code input determination)

5. Determine the master code which has been input by pressing the scan button briefly.
6. "PIN CLEARED" appears which indicates that the master code input has been completed.
7. The ID code is set to the default [0000] and the initialization process is completed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

Master code:

The Master Code is used to initialize or re-initialize the ID code in the event that the code is not set to [0000] and/or the personalized ID code is not known. The initialization process resets the ID code to [0000]. The master code can potentially defeat the intent of the security of the parental lock if it is located by persons not authorized by the owner to access certain channels.

SIRIUS Satellite Radio Master Code: [0913]

(How to clear the message)

- Press any of the following FM/AM, SAT, CD, MEDIA, CAT, ESN/DISP, Instant replay, POWER buttons.
- Turn the ACC off or insert a CD.
- Change a channel.

NOTE

- *When a numeric value other than the master code is input and the scan button is pressed, "SR1 Err" is displayed and then it returns to the "SR1 - - - -" display again.*
- *If an ID code is not input for 10 seconds, "Err" is displayed and it returns to the former display.*
- *Channel preset buttons 1, 2, 3, 4 and the scan button are used for inputting the ID code. Buttons 5 and 6 cannot be used.*

Change of ID code

Setting condition: SAT mode
When changing the ID code, the new ID code is input after the previous one is input first.

(Registered ID code input)

1. Hold the scan button, then press channel preset button 5, hold both buttons together for 1.5 seconds.
2. "ENTER PIN" appears for 2 seconds which indicates that it is in code input mode.
3. "SR1 - - - -" appears, which indicates that it is ready for code input.
4. Input the registered ID code using channel preset buttons 1-4. Then press the scan button.
   Example: When the registered ID code is "2323", input "2323". At this time "SR1 2323" is displayed.
   Press 1 for the first digit, 2 for the second, 3 for the third, and 4 for the last digit. For example, if your number is 2323, press 1 three times, 2 four times, 3 three, and 4 four times. If the display goes off while inputting, begin from Step 1.

NOTE

The registered ID code is the default [0000] at the time of factory shipment. If [0000] results in "Err" on the display, go to the "INITIALIZATION OF ID CODE" section to reset to [0000].

(Verification with the registered ID code)

5. Determine the input code by pressing the scan button briefly.
6. If it does not match with the previously registered code, "SR1 Err" is displayed and then it returns to "SR1 - - - -".
7. If it matches with the previously registered code, "ENTER PIN" appears again and it switches to code input mode.
8. "SR1 - - - -" appears, and it is ready for input of the new ID code.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

(New ID code input)

9. Input the new ID code using channel preset buttons 1-4.
   Example: If "1234" is input as the new code, "SR1 1234" is displayed.
   Press the scan button after the code is input.

(New ID code input determination)

10. Determine the new ID code which has been input by pressing the scan button briefly.
11. "PIN CHANGED" appears for 3 seconds which indicates that the new ID code input has been completed.
12. It returns to the former display.

(How to clear the message)

- Press any of the following FM/AM, SAT, CD, MEDIA, CAT, ESN/DISP, Instant replay, POWER buttons.
- Turn the ACC off or insert a CD.
- Change a channel.

NOTE

- *If an ID code is not input for 10 seconds, "Err" is displayed and it returns to the former display.*
- *Channel preset buttons 1, 2, 3, 4 and the scan button are used for input of the ID code. Buttons 5 and 6 cannot be used.*

Individual channel locking

If a channel is locked, the channel is muted.

NOTE

If the registered ID code is forgotten, return the ID code to the default [0000]. (See "INTIALIZATION OF ID CODE" section)

(Locking a channel)

1. Select a channel to be locked by pressing the category button. Example: Select channel 100

(Registered ID code input preparation)

2. Hold the scan button, then press channel preset button 6, hold both buttons together for 1.5 seconds.
3. "ENTER PIN" appears for 2 seconds which indicates that it is in code input mode.
4. "SR1 - - - -" appears which indicates that it is ready for code input.

(Registered ID code input)

5. Input the registered ID code using channel preset buttons 1-4. Example: If the registered ID code is "2323", input "2323". At this time "SR1 2323" is displayed. Press the scan button after the code is input.

(Registered ID code input determination)

6. Determine the code which has been input by pressing the scan button briefly.
7. If it does not match the registered code, "SR1 Err" is displayed and then it returns to "SR1 - - - -".
8. If it matches the registered code, "SR1 LOCK" appears for 3 seconds which indicates that the code input has been completed.
9. "SR1 LOCK 100" appears which indicates that the parental lock is activated. At this time, mute is on and no sound is heard.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

(How to clear the message)
- Press any of the following FM/AM, SAT, CD, MEDIA, CAT, ESN/DISP, Instant replay, POWER buttons.
- Turn the ACC off or insert a CD.
- Change a channel.

NOTE
- *If an ID code is not input for 10 seconds, "Err" is displayed and it returns to the former display.*
- *Channel preset buttons 1, 2, 3, 4 and the scan button are used for input of the ID code. Buttons 5 and 6 cannot be used.*

Lock cancellation

Setting condition: SAT mode

(Releasing a locked channel)

1. Select a channel to be released by pressing the category button. Example: Select the locked channel (i.e. 100). At this time, "SR1 LOCK 100" is displayed.

(Registered ID code input preparation)

2. Hold the scan button, then press channel preset button 6, hold both buttons together for 1.5 seconds.
3. "ENTER PIN" appears for 2 seconds which indicates that it is in code input mode.
4. "SR1 - - - -" appears, which indicates that it is ready for code input.

(Registered ID code input)

5. Input the registered ID code using channel preset buttons 1-4. Example: When the registered ID code is "2323", input "2323". At this time "SR1 2323" is displayed. Press the scan button after the code is input.

NOTE
If "Err" is displayed, go to the "INITIALIZATION OF ID CODE" section to reset the ID code to [0000].

(Registered ID code input determination)

6. Determine the input code by pressing the scan button briefly.
7. If it does not match the registered code, "SR1 Err" is displayed and then it returns to "SR1 - - - -".
8. If it matches the registered code, "SR1 UNLOCK" appears for 3 seconds which indicates that the code input has been completed.
9. "SR1 100" appears which indicates that the parental lock is off. At this time, sound is heard.

(How to clear the message)
- Press any of the following FM/AM, SAT, CD, MEDIA, CAT, ESN/DISP, Instant replay, POWER buttons.
- Turn the ACC off or insert a CD.
- Change a channel.

NOTE
- *If an ID code is not input for 10 seconds, "Err" is displayed and it returns to the former display.*
- *Channel preset buttons 1, 2, 3, 4 and the scan button are used for input of the ID code. Buttons 5 and 6 cannot be used.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Error signs

(1) Depending on the surrounding conditions (such as large trees, buildings, or tunnels) and special weather conditions, the reception of SIRIUS radio waves may be decreased or temporarily interrupted. “ACQUIRING SIGNAL” may appear.
(2) In case of an antenna malfunction, “ANTENNA FAIL” is displayed. Check the satellite radio antenna (type B), antenna cable and DLP antenna connector.

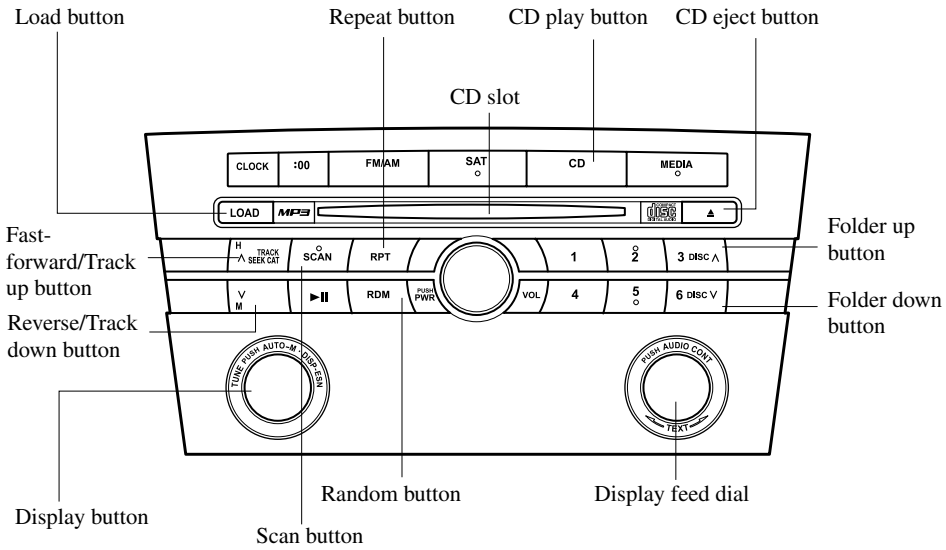
NOTE

If a broken DLP unit is replaced with a new unit, cancel the license for the broken unit and make sure to carry out new registration for the replaced unit. If the license for the broken unit is not canceled, you will be charged a reception fee for both units.*

* DLP: Down Link Processor (SATELLITE RADIO Module)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Operating the Compact Disc (CD) Player



Type	Playable data
Music/MP3 CD player	· Music data (CD-DA) · MP3 file

NOTE

If a disc has both music data (CD-DA) and MP3 files, playback of the two file types differs depending on how the disc was recorded.

Inserting the CD

Insert the CD into the slot, label-side up. The auto-loading mechanism will set the CD and begin play.

NOTE

There will be a short lapse before play begins while the player reads the digital signals on the CD.

Ejecting the CD

Press the CD eject button (⏏) to eject the CD.

Playback

Press the CD play button (**CD**) to start play when a CD is in the unit.
If a CD is not in the unit when the CD play button (**CD**) is pressed, "NO DISC" will flash on and off.

NOTE

*When the load button (**LOAD**) is pressed, the CD will load and play even if the CD eject button (⏏) had been previously pressed.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fast-forward/Reverse

Press and hold the fast-forward button (∧) to advance through a track at high speed.
Press and hold the reverse button (∨) to reverse through a track at high speed.

Track search

Press the track up button (∧) once to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press the track down button (∨) once to skip back to the beginning of the current track.

Folder search (during MP3 CD playback)

To change to the previous folder, press the folder down button (DISC∨), or press the folder up button (DISC∧) to advance to the next folder.

Music scan

This feature helps to find a program by playing about the first 10 seconds of each track.

Press the scan button (SCAN) during playback to start the scan play operation (the track number will flash).
Press the scan button (SCAN) again to cancel scan playback.

NOTE
If the unit is left in scan, normal playback will resume where scan was selected.

Repeat playback

During music CD playback

1. Press the repeat button (RPT) during playback to play the current track repeatedly. “RPT” is displayed.
2. Press the button again to cancel the repeat playback.

During MP3 CD playback

(Track repeat)

1. Press the repeat button (RPT) during playback to play the current track repeatedly. “RPT” is displayed.
2. To cancel the repeat playback, press the button again after 3 seconds.

(Folder repeat)

1. Press the repeat button (RPT) during playback, and then press the button again within 3 seconds to play the tracks in the current folder repeatedly. “RPT” is displayed.
2. Press the button again to cancel the repeat playback.

Random playback

Tracks are randomly selected and played.

During music CD playback

1. Press the random button (RDM) during playback to play the tracks on the CD randomly. “RDM” is displayed.
2. Press the button again to cancel the random playback.

During MP3 CD playback

(Folder random)

1. Press the random button (RDM) during playback to play the tracks in the folder randomly. “RDM” is displayed.
2. To cancel the random playback, press the button again after 3 seconds.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

(CD random)

1. Press the random button (RDM) during playback, and then press the button again within 3 seconds to play the tracks on the CD randomly. “RDM” is displayed.
2. Press the button again to cancel the random playback.

Switching the display

For files with a file name or other name that have been input, the display changes in the order of the file names or other names each time the display button (DISP) is pressed during playback.

Music CD

Track number/Elapsed time display

File name display

Album name display

Artist name display

MP3 CD

File number/Elapsed time display

Folder number/Track number

File name

Folder name

Album name (ID3 Tag)

Song name (ID3 Tag)

Artist name (ID3 Tag)

NOTE

(MP3 CD)

This unit can only read English (including numerals) one-byte characters. Depending on the CD writing software used, proper display may not be possible.

Display scroll

Only 12 characters can be displayed at one time. To display the rest of the characters of a long title, turn the display feed dial (TEXT) to the right. Hidden titles can be scrolled into the display one character at a time.

NOTE

The displayable number of characters is limited. If the number of characters, including the file extension (.mp3), exceeds 32 characters, it may not be fully displayed.

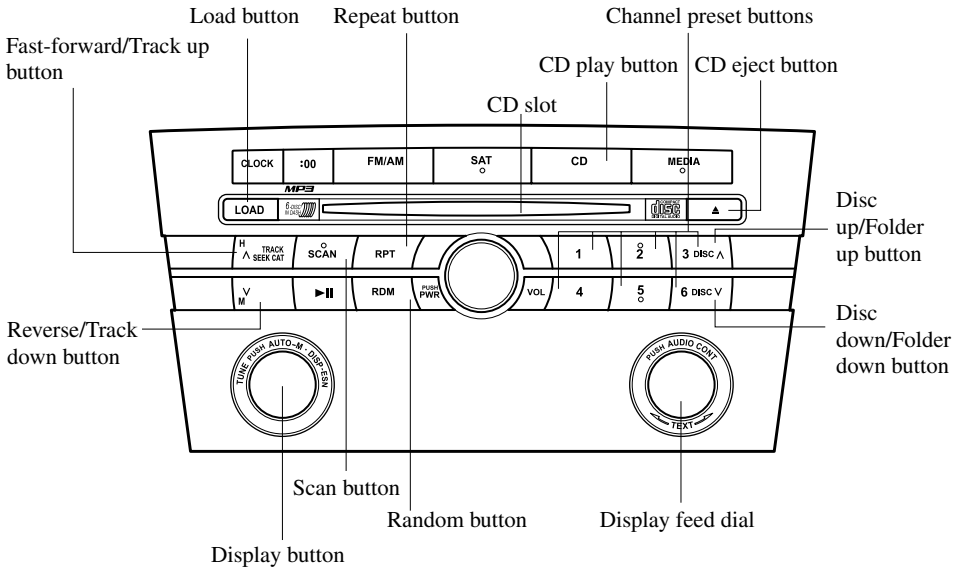
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Message display

If “CHECK CD” is displayed, it means that there is some CD malfunction. Check the CD for damage, dirt, or smudges, and then properly reinsert. If the message appears again, take the unit to an Authorized Mazda Dealer for service.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Operating the In-Dash CD Changer



Type	Playable data
Music/MP3 CD player	·Music data (CD-DA) ·MP3 file

NOTE

If a disc has both music data (CD-DA) and MP3 files, playback of the two file types differs depending on how the disc was recorded.

Inserting the CD

The CD must be label-side up when inserting. The auto-loading mechanism will set the CD and begin play.
The disc number and the track number will be displayed.

NOTE

The CD will begin playback automatically after insertion.
A CD cannot be inserted while the display reads "WAIT". A beeping sound can be heard during this waiting time.
There will be a short lapse before play begins while the player reads the digital signals on the CD.

Normal insertion

1. Press the load button (LOAD).
2. When "IN" is displayed, insert the CD.

Inserting CDs into desired tray number

1. Press and hold the load button (LOAD) for about 2 seconds until a beep sound is heard.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Press the channel preset button for the desired tray number while “WAIT” is displayed.
3. When “IN” is displayed, insert the CD.

NOTE
The CD cannot be inserted to the desired tray number if the number is already occupied.

Multiple insertion

1. Press and hold the load button (LOAD) for about 2 seconds until a beep sound is heard.
2. When “IN” is displayed, insert the CD.
3. When “IN” is displayed again, insert the next CD.

NOTE
The first-inserted CD will be played automatically when:
- *No other CD is inserted within 15 seconds after “IN” is displayed.*
- *The CD trays are full.*

Displaying the CD-inserted tray number

The tray number is displayed for 5 seconds when the display button (DISP) is pressed while the disc number/file number/elapsed time is displayed in the information display.

Ejecting the CD

Normal ejection

1. Press the CD eject button (⏏). The disc number and “DISC OUT” will be displayed.
2. Pull out the CD.

NOTE
When the CD is ejected during play, the next CD will be played automatically.

Ejecting CDs from desired tray number

1. Press and hold the CD eject button (⏏) for about 2 seconds until a beep sound is heard.
   The “DISC OUT” display flashes.
2. Press the channel preset button for the desired CD number for less than 5 seconds after the beep sound is heard.
3. Pull out the CD.

Multiple ejection

1. Press and hold the CD eject button (⏏) for about 2 seconds until a beep sound is heard.
   The “DISC OUT” display flashes.
2. Press the CD eject button (⏏) again for less than 5 seconds after the beep sound is heard.

NOTE
If the button is not pressed and about 5 seconds have elapsed while “DISC OUT” is flashing, CDs are automatically ejected.

3. Pull out the CD, then the next CD will be ejected.

NOTE
- *CDs will be ejected starting with the one with the lowest number.*
- *All CDs in the tray will be ejected continuously.*
- *CDs can be ejected when the ignition switch is off. Press and hold the CD eject button (⏏) for about 2 seconds and all CDs will eject.*

Playback

Press the CD play button (CD) to start play when a CD is in the unit.
If a CD is not in the unit when the CD play button (CD) is pressed, “NO DISC” will flash on and off.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fast-forward/Reverse

Press and hold the fast-forward button (∧) to advance through a track at high speed.
Press and hold the reverse button (∨) to reverse through a track at high speed.

Track search

Press the track up button (∧) once to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.
Press the track down button (∨) once to skip back to the beginning of the current track.

Disc search

During music CD playback

To change the disc, press the DISC button (DISC∧ or DISC∨) during playback.

During MP3 CD playback

To change the disc, press the DISC button (DISC∧ or DISC∨) for 1.5 seconds or more during playback.

Folder search (during MP3 CD playback)

To change to the previous folder, press the folder down button (DISC∨) for less than 1.5 seconds, or press the folder up button (DISC∧) for less than 1.5 seconds to advance to the next folder.

Music scan

This feature helps to find a program by playing about the first 10 seconds of each track.

Press the scan button (SCAN) during playback to start the scan play operation (the track number will flash).
Press the scan button (SCAN) again to cancel scan playback.

NOTE
If the unit is left in scan, normal playback will resume where scan was selected.

Repeat playback

During music CD playback

1. Press the repeat button (RPT) during playback to play the current track repeatedly. “RPT” is displayed.
2. Press the button again to cancel the repeat playback.

During MP3 CD playback

(Track repeat)

1. Press the repeat button (RPT) during playback to play the current track repeatedly. “RPT” is displayed.
2. To cancel the repeat playback, press the button again after 3 seconds.

(Folder repeat)

1. Press the repeat button (RPT) during playback, and then press the button again within 3 seconds to play the tracks in the current folder repeatedly. “RPT” is displayed.
2. Press the button again to cancel the repeat playback.

Random playback

Tracks are randomly selected and played.

During music CD playback

1. Press the random button (RDM) during playback to play the tracks in the CD randomly. “RDM” is displayed.
2. Press the button again to cancel the random playback.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

During MP3 CD playback

(Folder random)

1. Press the random button (**RDM**) during playback to play the tracks in the folder randomly. “RDM” is displayed.
2. To cancel the random playback, press the button again after 3 seconds.

(CD random)

1. Press the random button (**RDM**) during playback, and then press the button again within 3 seconds to play the tracks on the CD randomly. “RDM” is displayed.
2. Press the button again to cancel the random playback.

Switching the display

For files with a file name or other name that have been input, the display changes in the order of the file names or other names each time the display button (**DISP**) is pressed during playback.

Music CD

Disc number/Track number/Elapsed time display

Disc tray number

File name display

Album name display

Artist name display

MP3 CD

Disc number/File number/Elapsed time display

Disc tray number

Disc number/Folder number/Track number

File name

Folder name

Album name (ID3 Tag)

Song name (ID3 Tag)

Artist name (ID3 Tag)

NOTE

(MP3 CD)

This unit can only read English (including numerals) one-byte characters. Depending on the CD writing software used, proper display may not be possible.

Display scroll

Only 12 characters can be displayed at one time. To display the rest of the characters of a long title, turn the display feed dial (**TEXT**) to the right. Hidden titles can be scrolled into the display one character at a time.

NOTE

The displayable number of characters is limited. If the number of characters, including the file extension (.mp3), exceeds 32 characters, it may not be fully displayed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Message display

If “CHECK CD” is displayed, it means that there is some CD malfunction. Check the CD for damage, dirt, or smudges, and then properly reinsert. If the message appears again, take the unit to an Authorized Mazda Dealer for service.

▼Operating the Auxiliary jack

You can connect portable audio units or similar products on the market to the auxiliary jack to listen to music or audio over the vehicle's speakers, refer to Auxiliary Input (page 6-58).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Error Indications

If you see an error indication on the display, find the cause in the chart. If you cannot clear the error indication, take the vehicle to an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Indication	Cause	Solution
CHECK CD	CD is inserted upside down	Insert the CD properly. If the error indication does not disappear, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer
	CD is defective	Insert another CD properly. If the error indication does not disappear, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

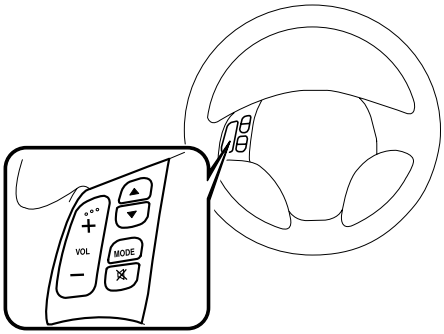
Audio Control Switch Operation (Steering Wheel)*

When the audio unit is turned on, operation of the audio unit from the steering wheel is possible.

NOTE

Because the audio unit will be turned off under the following conditions, the switches will be inoperable.

- *When the ignition switch is turned to the LOCK position.*
- *When the power button on the audio unit is pressed and the audio unit is turned off.*
- *When the CD being played is ejected and the audio unit is turned off.*



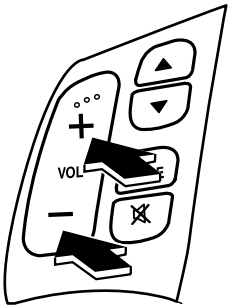
NOTE

Mazda has installed this system to prevent distraction while driving the vehicle and using audio controls on the dashboard.
Always make safe driving your first priority.

▼Adjusting the Volume

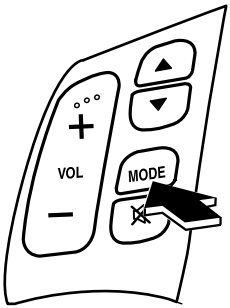
To increase the volume, press the volume button (+).

To decrease the volume, press the volume button (–).



▼Changing the Source

Press the mode switch (MODE) to change the audio source (FM1 radio> FM2 radio> AM radio> CD player or CD changer> SIRIUS1> SIRIUS2> SIRIUS3> AUX> cyclical).



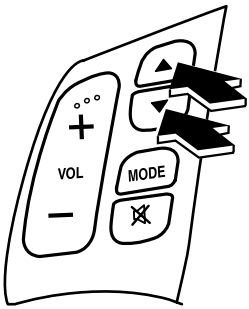
*Some models.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE
CD, CD changer and SIRIUS digital satellite radio modes cannot be selected in the following cases:
- *CD, CD changer, or SIRIUS digital satellite radio unit is not equipped on the audio system.*
- *CD has not been inserted.*

Connect a portable audio unit or similar product on the market to the auxiliary jack to listen to music or audio over the vehicle's speakers. Change the audio source to AUX mode (page 6-58).

▼Seek Switch



When listening to the radio or SIRIUS digital satellite radio

Press the seek switch (▲ , ▼), the radio switches to the next/previous stored station in the order that it was stored (1—6).

Press the seek switch (▲ , ▼) for about 2 seconds until a beep sound is heard to seek all usable stations at a higher or lower frequency whether programmed or not.

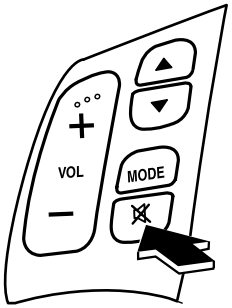
When playing a CD

Press the seek switch (▲) to skip to the next track.
Press the seek switch (▼) to repeat the current track.

▼Mute Switch

Press the mute switch (🔇) once to mute audio, press it again to resume audio output.

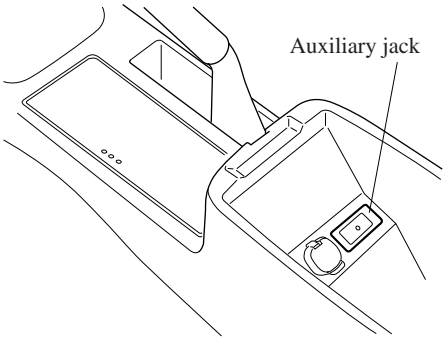
NOTE
If the ignition switch is turned to the LOCK position with the audio muted, the mute will be canceled.
Therefore, when the engine is restarted, the audio is not muted. To mute the audio again, press the mute switch (🔇).



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

AUX Mode (Auxiliary input)

You can connect portable audio units or similar products on the market to the auxiliary jack to listen to music or audio over the vehicle's speakers.



⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the portable audio unit or a similar product while driving the vehicle:

Adjusting the portable audio unit or a similar product while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident. Always adjust the portable audio unit or a similar product while the vehicle is stopped.

⚠ CAUTION

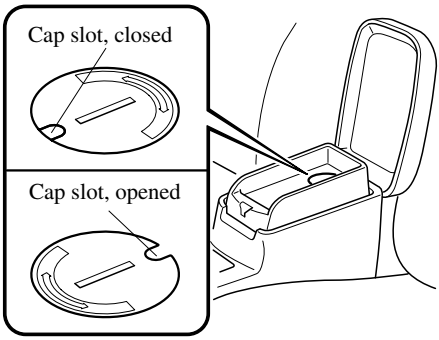
- *Close the cover when the auxiliary jack is not in use to prevent foreign objects and liquids from penetrating the auxiliary jack.*
- *Noise may occur during playback if the accessory socket equipped on the vehicle is used. (If noise occurs, do not use the accessory socket.)*

NOTE

- *Before using the auxiliary jack, read the manufacturer's instructions for the product being connected.*
- *Use a commercially-available, non-impedance (3.5 ϕ) stereo mini plug for connecting the portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack. Before using the auxiliary jack, read the manufacture's instructions for connecting a portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack.*
- *To prevent discharging of the battery, do not use the auxiliary input for long periods with the engine off or idling.*
- *Noise may occur depending on the product connected to the auxiliary jack.*
- *With regard to connecting a portable audio or similar device to a power source, use the battery for the device, not the accessory socket.*

Connecting the auxiliary jack

When placing portable audio units or similar products in the tray while connected to the auxiliary jack, pass the connection plug cord through the slot in the cap.

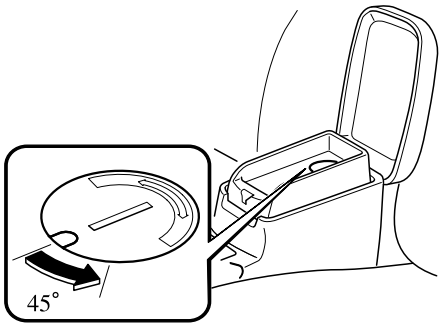


1. Open the console lid by pulling the upper release catch.
2. Remove the tray mat.

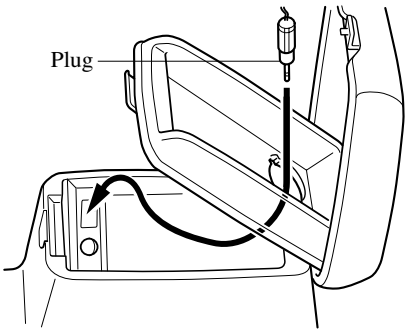
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Using a coin, turn the cap counterclockwise (about 45° from the closed position) and remove it.

NOTE
Do NOT discard the cap.



4. Open the tray by pulling the lower release catch.
5. Pass the connection plug cord through the hole of the tray and insert the plug in the auxiliary jack.



⚠ WARNING

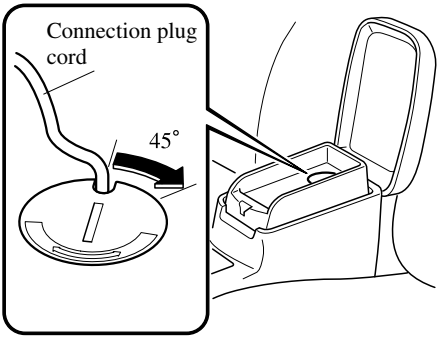
Do not allow the connection plug cord to get tangled with the parking brake or the shift lever:
Allowing the plug cord to become tangled with the parking brake or the shift lever is dangerous as it could interfere with driving, resulting in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not place objects or apply force to the auxiliary jack with the plug connected.

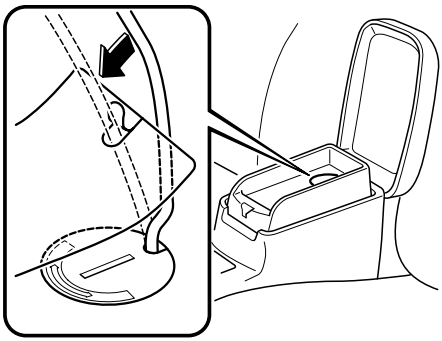
NOTE
- *Insert the plug to the auxiliary jack securely.*
- *Insert or remove the plug with the plug perpendicular to the auxiliary jack hole.*
- *Insert or remove the plug by holding its base.*

6. Make sure the connection plug cord is running through the cap slot; reinstall the cap and turn it clockwise (about 45° to the opened position).



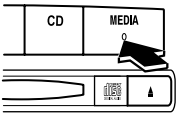
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

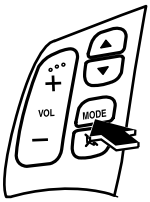
7. Pass the connection plug cord through the slit in the tray mat and then set the tray mat in place.



To operate the portable audio unit

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ACC or ON position.
2. Press the power/volume dial to turn the audio system on.
3. Press the MEDIA button (MEDIA) of the audio unit or the mode switch (MODE) of the audio control switch to change to the AUX mode.





NOTE

- *Set the volume of the portable audio unit to the maximum within the range that the sound does not become distorted, then adjust the volume using the power/volume dial of the audio unit or the volume button (+ , −) of the audio control switch.*
- *If the connection plug is pulled out from the auxiliary jack while in AUX mode, noise may occur.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Certification

This CD player is made and tested to meet exacting safety standards. It meets FCC requirements and complies with safety performance standards of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

⚠ CAUTION

- *This CD player should not be adjusted or repaired by anyone except qualified service personnel.*
  If servicing is required, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.
- *Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous laser exposure. Never operate the CD player with the top case of the unit removed.*
- *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.*

NOTE

For CD player section:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

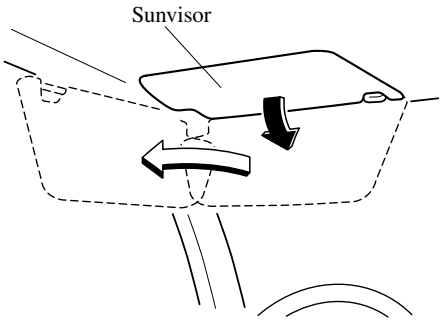
NOTE

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Sunvisors

When you need a sunvisor, lower it for use in front or swing it to the side.



▼Vanity Mirrors*

To use the vanity mirror, lower the sunvisor.
If your vehicle is equipped with a vanity mirror light, it will illuminate when you open the cover.

Interior Lights

▼Illuminated Entry System*

When the illuminated entry system operates, the overhead light (switch is in the DOOR position) turns on for:

- About 30 seconds after the driver's door is unlocked and the ignition switch is in the LOCK position (with the ignition key removed).
- About 15 seconds after all doors are closed.
- About 15 seconds after the ignition switch is in the LOCK position (with the ignition key removed) with all doors closed.

The light also turns off when:

- The ignition switch is turned to the ON position and all doors are closed.
- The driver's door is locked.

NOTE

Battery saver

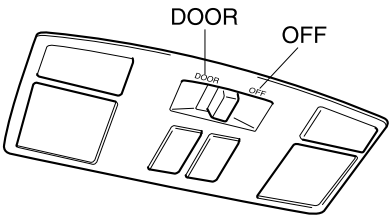
If any door is left opened, the light goes out after about 30 minutes to save the battery. The light turns on again when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or when any door is opened after all doors have been closed.

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

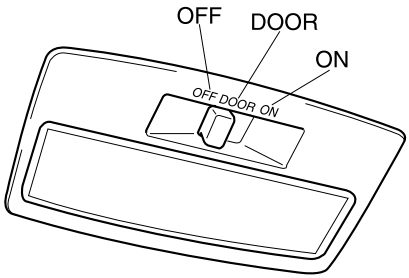
▼Overhead Lights*

Front



Switch Position	Front Overhead Lights
OFF	Light off
DOOR	• Light is on when any door is open • **(With illuminated entry system)** Light is on or off when the illuminated entry system is on

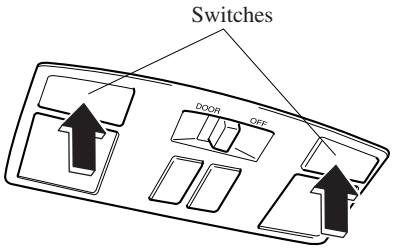
Rear



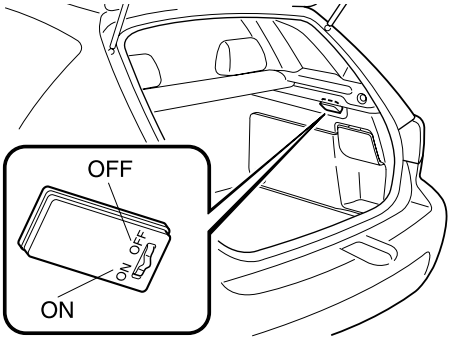
Switch Position	Rear Overhead Lights
OFF	Light off
DOOR	Light is on when any door is open
	(With illuminated entry system) Light is on or off when the illuminated entry system is on
ON	Light on

▼Map Lights*

The map lights are switched on or off by pressing the switches.



▼Luggage Compartment Light (5 Door)

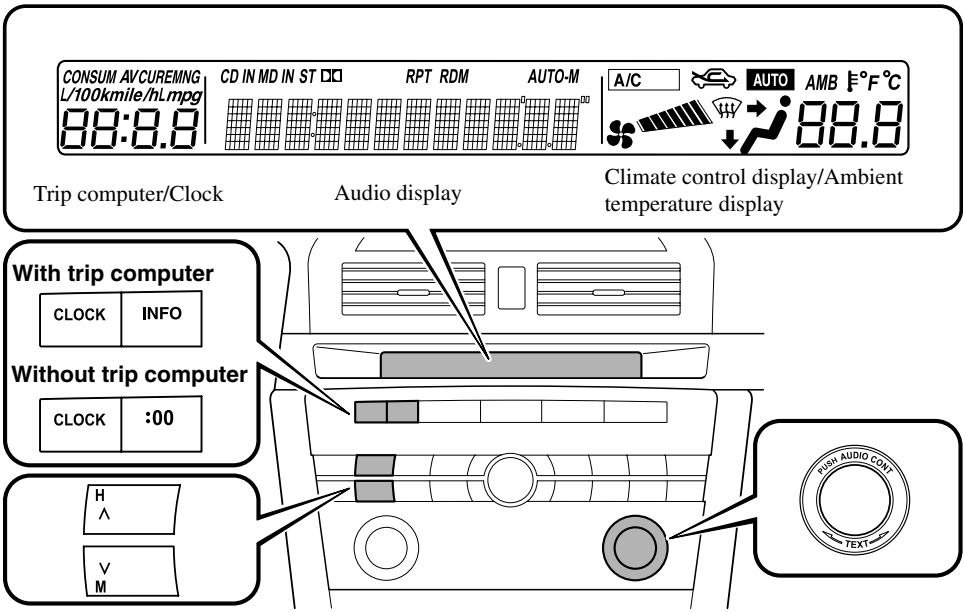


Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Switch Position	Luggage Compartment Light
OFF	Light off
ON	Light on when the liftgate is open

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Display



▼Information Display Functions

The information display has the following functions:

- Clock
- Ambient Temperature Display (Outside Temperature Display)*
- Climate Control Display (Fully Automatic Type Air Conditioning System)
- Audio Display
- Trip Computer*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Clock

NOTE

When the trip computer is displayed, press the CLOCK button to change the display to the time.

When the ignition switch is in the ACC or ON position, the time is displayed.

Time setting

1. Press the CLOCK button until the beep sounds and the displayed time flashes.
2. Press the H button to set the hour.
3. Press the M button to set the minutes, then press the CLOCK button.

Time resetting

1. Press the CLOCK button until the beep sounds and the displayed time flashes.
2. Press the: 00 button. When the button is pressed, the beep sounds and the clock resets as follows:

(Example)
12:01—12:29→12:00
12:30—12:59→1:00

NOTE

- *When the: 00 button is pressed, the seconds are reset to 00.*
- *Trip computer-equipped vehicles do not have a reset function.*

Switching between 12 and 24-hour clock time

1. Press the audio control dial several times until 12Hr and 24Hr clock time are displayed.
2. Turn the audio control dial in either direction, select the desired clock setting, and then press the audio control dial. Press the dial while the preferred clock time is flashing.

▼Ambient Temperature Display*

With fully automatic type air conditioner

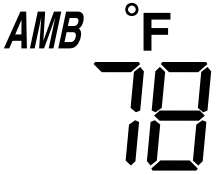
When the ignition switch is in the ON position, press the AMB switch (page 6-11) on the air conditioner control panel to display the ambient temperature. Press the AMB switch again to switch the display from ambient temperature to the temperature set for the air conditioner.

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Without fully automatic type air conditioner

When the ignition switch is in the ON position, the ambient temperature is displayed.



NOTE

- *Under the following conditions, the ambient temperature display may differ from the actual ambient temperature depending on the surroundings and vehicle conditions:*
  - *Significantly cold or hot temperatures.*
  - *Sudden changes in ambient temperature.*
  - *The vehicle is parked.*
  - *The vehicle is driven at low speeds.*
- *Press the Power/volume switch and MEDIA button (page 6-28) simultaneously for 5 seconds or more to switch the display from Fahrenheit to Centigrade or vice versa.*

▼Climate Control Display (Fully Automatic Type)

The climate control system status is displayed. To operate the climate control system, refer to "Climate Control System" (page 6-2).

▼Audio Display

The audio system status is displayed. To operate the audio system, refer to "Audio System" (page 6-16).

▼Trip Computer*

The trip computer can display the following:

- The current fuel economy.
- The average fuel economy.
- The approximate distance you can travel on the available fuel.
- The average vehicle speed.

The ignition switch must be in the ON position.
Press the INFO switch to change the display mode.

NOTE

When the time is being displayed, press the INFO switch to change the display to the trip computer.

If you have any problems with your trip computer, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Current fuel economy mode

This mode displays the current fuel economy by calculating the amount of fuel consumption and the distance traveled.

Current fuel economy will be calculated and displayed every 2 seconds.

When this mode is selected, CONSUM CUR will be displayed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

U.S.A.

CANADA

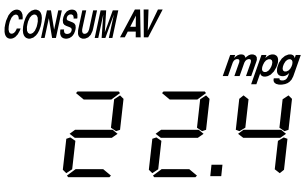
When you've slowed to about 5 km/h (3 mph), —— L/100 km (——mpg) will be displayed.

Average fuel economy mode

This mode displays the average fuel economy by calculating the fuel consumption and the distance traveled since connecting the battery or resetting the data.
Average fuel economy will be calculated and displayed every minute.

When this mode is selected, CONSUM AV will be displayed.

U.S.A.



CANADA

To clear the data being displayed, press the INFO switch for more than 1 second. After pressing the INFO switch, —— L/100 km (—— mpg) will be displayed for about 1 minute before the fuel economy is recalculated and displayed.

Distance-to-empty mode

This mode displays the approximate distance you can travel on the remaining fuel based on the fuel economy.

The distance-to-empty will be calculated and displayed every minute.

When this mode is selected, REMNG will be displayed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

U.S.A.

CANADA

NOTE

- *Even though the distance-to-empty display may indicate a sufficient amount of remaining mileage before refueling is required, refuel as soon as possible if the fuel gauge needle nears E or the low fuel warning light illuminates.*
- *The display won't change unless you add more than approximately 20 L (5.3 gal) of fuel.*

Average vehicle speed mode

This mode displays the average vehicle speed by calculating the distance and the time traveled since connecting the battery or resetting the data.

Average vehicle speed will be calculated and displayed every 10 seconds.

When this mode is selected, AV will be displayed.

U.S.A.

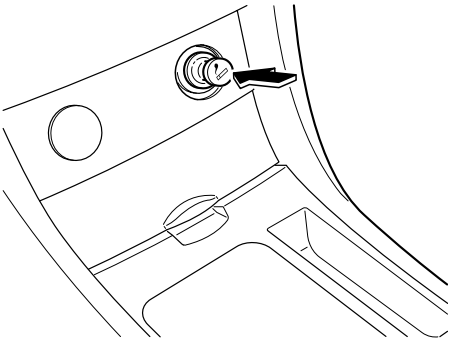
CANADA

To clear the data being displayed, press the INFO switch for more than 1 second. After pressing the INFO switch, —— km/h (—— mile/h) will be displayed for about 1 minute before the vehicle speed is recalculated and displayed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Lighter

The ignition switch must be in the ACC or ON position
Press the lighter in and release it. When ready for use, it automatically pops out.



CAUTION

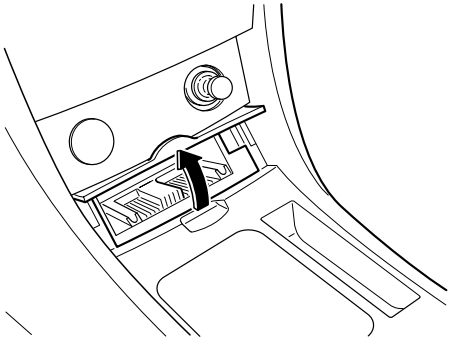
- *Don't touch the metal part of the lighter, you may burn yourself.*
- *Don't hold the lighter in because it will overheat.*
- *Don't use the lighter socket for plug-in accessories such as shavers and coffee pots. They may damage it or cause electrical failure. Use only a genuine Mazda lighter or the equivalent.*
- *If the lighter doesn't pop out within 30 seconds, remove it to prevent overheating.*

Ashtray

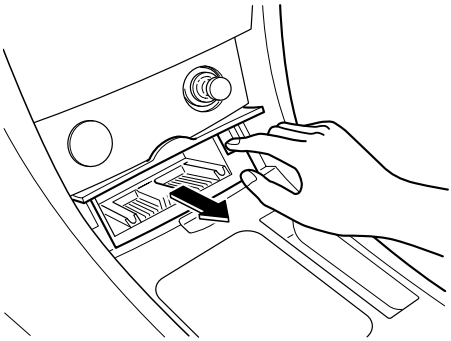
CAUTION

Do not use the ashtray for trash. You might start a fire.

To use, open the cover.



To remove, open the cover and pull up the ashtray.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Cup Holder

⚠ WARNING

Never use a cup holder to hold hot liquids while the vehicle is moving:

Using a cup holder to hold hot liquids while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. If the contents spill, you could be scalded.

Do not put anything other than cups or drink cans in cup holders:

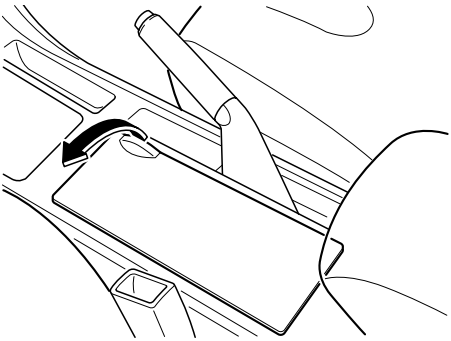
Putting objects other than cups or drink cans in a cup holder is dangerous.
During sudden braking or maneuvering, occupants could be hit and injured, or objects could be thrown around the vehicle, causing interference with the driver and the possibility of an accident. Only use a cup holder for cups or drink cans.

⚠ CAUTION

To reduce the possibility of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, keep cup holders closed when not in use.

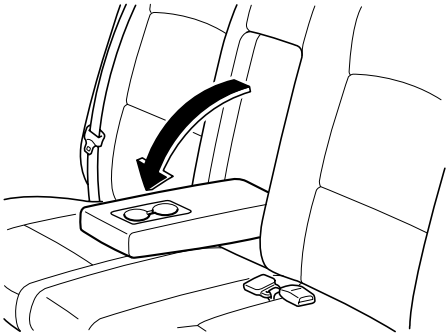
▼Front

To use, open the cover.



▼Rear

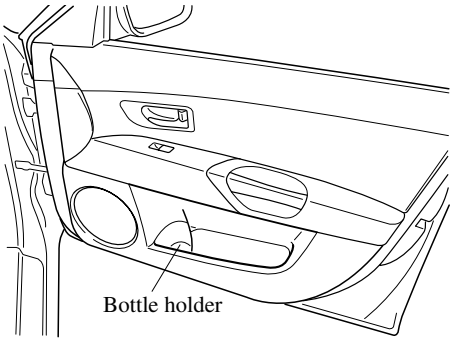
The rear cup holder is on the rear center armrest.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Bottle Holder

Bottle holders are on the inside of the front doors.



⚠ CAUTION

Do not use the bottle holders for containers without caps. The contents may spill when the door is opened or closed.

Storage Compartments

⚠ WARNING

Keep storage boxes closed when driving:

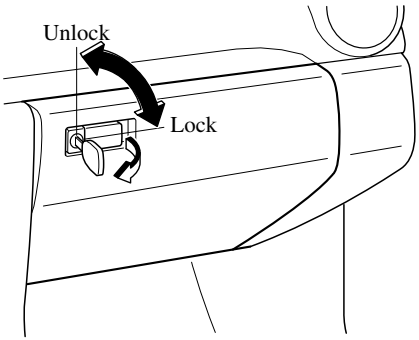
Driving with the storage boxes open is dangerous. To reduce the possibility of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, keep the storage boxes closed when driving.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not leave lighters or eyeglasses in the storage boxes while parked under the sun. A lighter could explode or the plastic material in eyeglasses could deform and crack from high temperature.

▼Glove Box

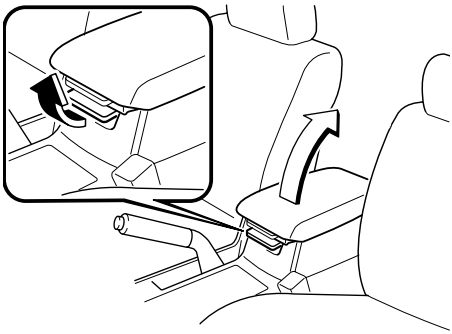
To open the glove box, pull the latch toward you.
If the glove box has a lock, insert the key and turn it clockwise to lock, counterclockwise to unlock.



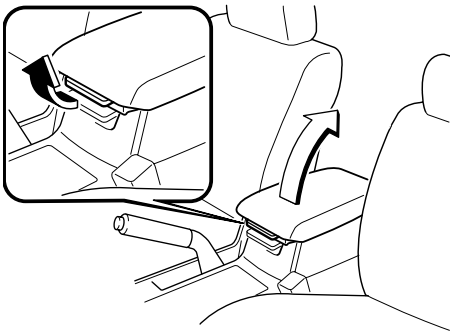
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Center Console

To open, pull the lower release latch.



Small items can be placed in the tray of the center console lid.
To open it, pull the upper release latch.



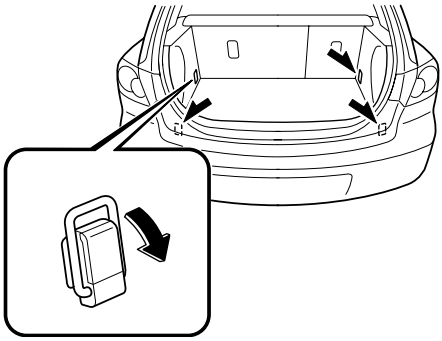
▼Cargo Securing Loops (5 Door)

⚠ WARNING

Make sure luggage and cargo is secured before driving:

Not securing cargo while driving is dangerous as it could move or be crushed during sudden braking or a collision and cause injury.

Use the loops in the luggage compartment to secure cargo with a rope or net. The tensile strength of the loops is 196 N (20 kgf, 44 lbf). Do not apply excessive force to the loops as it will damage them.



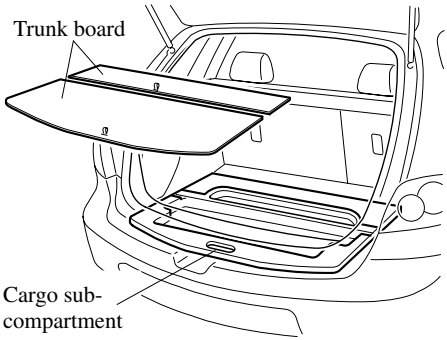
NOTE

To secure cargo with a rope or net, the trunk board loops can be used in the same way as the cargo securing loops (page 6-74).

▼Cargo Sub-Compartment (5 Door)*

With flexible floor board

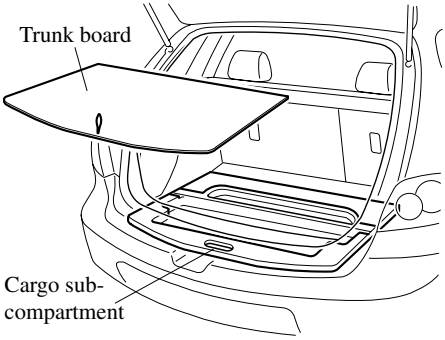
To use the cargo sub-compartment, partially open or remove the trunk boards.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

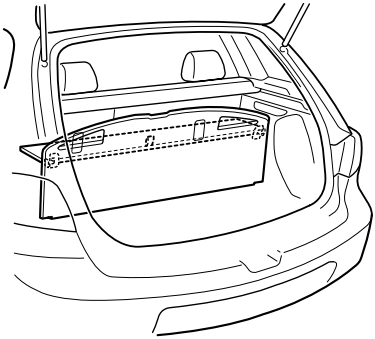
Without flexible floor board

To use the cargo sub-compartment, remove or lift the trunk board.



▼Flexible Floor Board (5 Door)*

The luggage compartment can be separated vertically and/or horizontally, using the trunk board and the trunk board loops.

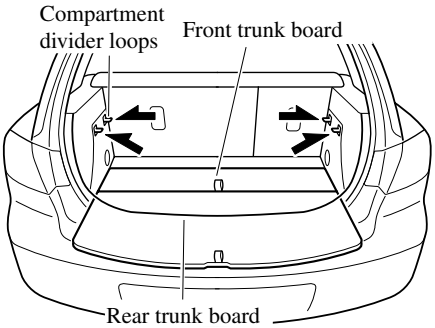


⚠ CAUTION

Make sure the trunk board is firmly secured when it is fitted into the trunk board loops. If it is not firmly secured, it could unexpectedly disengage causing damage to the trunk board loops or the trunk board.

NOTE

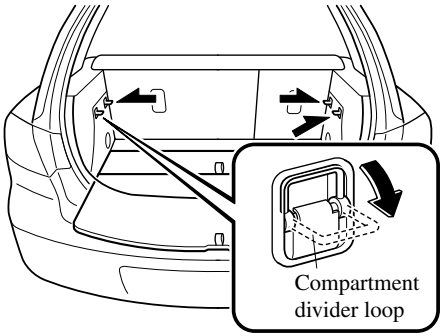
The trunk board loops can be used in the same way as the cargo securing loops. The tensile strength of the loops is 147 N (15 kgf, 33 lbf). Do not apply excessive force to the trunk board loops as it will damage them (page 6-73).



To separate vertically

Use the rear trunk board to separate the luggage compartment vertically.

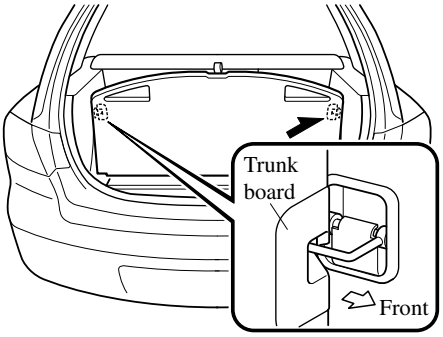
1. Pull the trunk board loops out.



 *Some models.

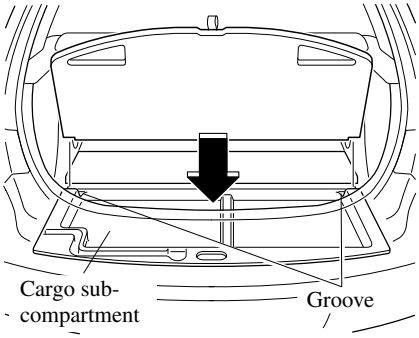
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Insert the trunk board loops into the trunk board slits.



NOTE

To facilitate insertion of the trunk board loops into the trunk board slits, first insert the bottom of the rear trunk board into the groove of the luggage sub-compartment.



3. Rock the trunk board to make sure the board is installed securely.

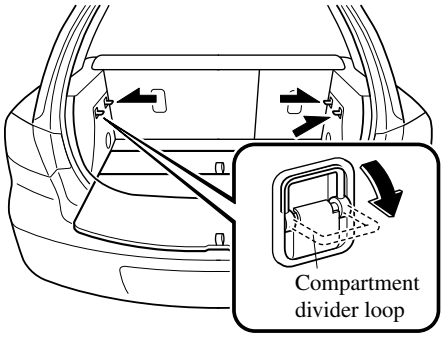
To separate horizontally

Use the front trunk board to separate the luggage compartment horizontally.

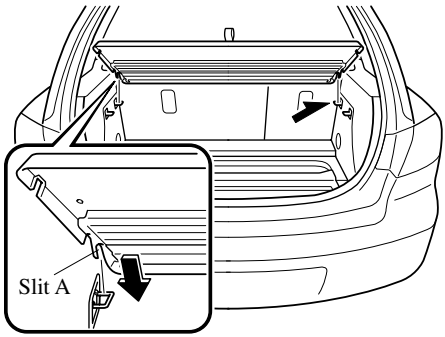
⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not place heavy objects on the trunk board or apply excessive force as they could damage the trunk board. The permissible weight is about 5 kg (11 lb).*
- *Do not use the rear trunk board to separate the luggage compartment horizontally. The rear trunk board cannot be locked to the trunk board loops and it could move and cause injury while the vehicle is moving.*

1. Pull the trunk board loops out.

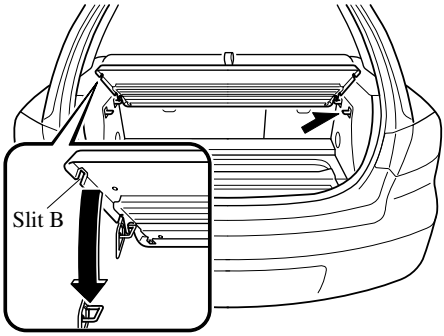


2. Insert the trunk board loop into slit A.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Insert the other trunk board loop into slit B until a click sound is heard.



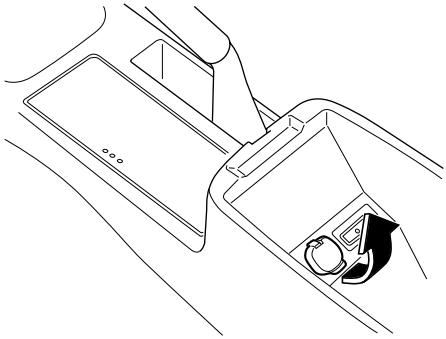
4. Rock the trunk board to make sure the board is installed securely.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not place or remove luggage via the rear passenger seat area while the vehicle is moving. The trunk board or luggage could move and cause injury.

Accessory Sockets

The ignition switch must be in the ACC or ON position to prevent the battery from discharging.
Only use genuine Mazda accessories or the equivalent requiring no greater than 120 W (DC 12 V, 7 A).



⚠ CAUTION

To prevent accessory socket damage or electrical failure, pay attention to the following:

- *Do not use accessories that require more than 120 W (DC 12 V, 7 A).*
- *Do not use accessories that are not genuine Mazda accessories or the equivalent.*
- *Close the cover when the accessory socket is not in use to prevent foreign objects and liquids from getting into the accessory socket.*
- *Correctly insert the plug into the accessory socket.*

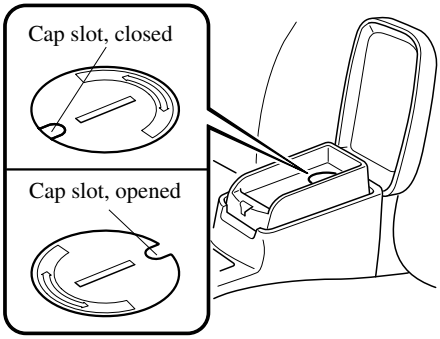
Noise may occur on the audio playback depending on the device connected to the accessory socket.

NOTE

To prevent discharging of the battery, do not use the socket for long periods with the engine off or idling.

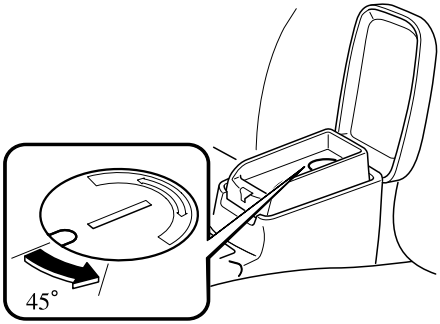
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

When placing an electrical device (e.g. cellular phone) in the tray which is connected to the accessory socket, pass the connection plug cord through the slot in the cap.

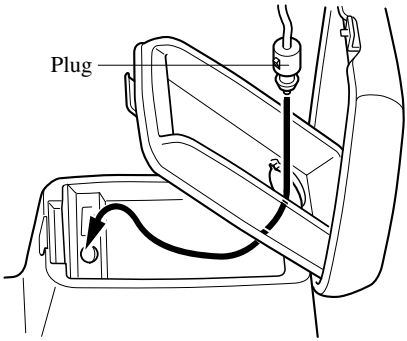


1. Open the lid by pulling the upper release catch.
2. Remove the tray mat.
3. Using a coin, turn the cap counterclockwise (about 45° from the closed position) and remove it.

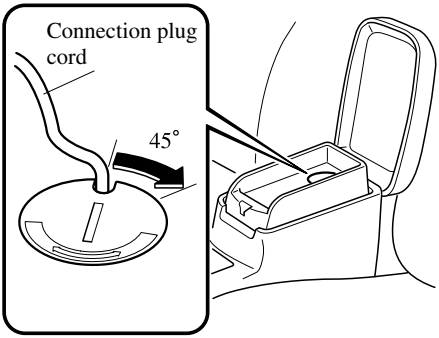
NOTE
Do NOT discard the cap.



4. Open the tray by pulling the lower release catch.
5. Pass the connection plug cord through the hole of the tray and insert the plug in the socket.

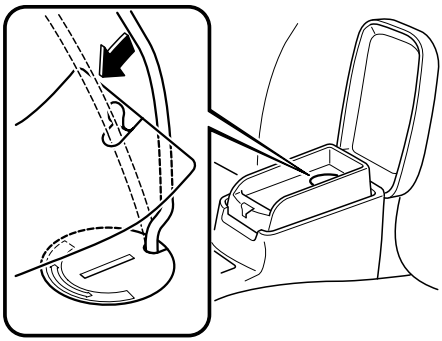


6. Make sure the connection plug cord is running through the cap slot; reinstall the cap and turn it clockwise (about 45° to the opened position).



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

7. Pass the connection plug cord through the slit in the tray mat and then set the tray mat in place.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

7 In Case of an Emergency

Helpful information on what to do in an emergency.

Parking in an Emergency 7-2
Parking in an Emergency 7-2

Flat Tire 7-3
Spare Tire and Tool Storage 7-3
Changing a Flat Tire 7-8

Overheating 7-14
Overheating 7-14

Emergency Starting 7-16
Starting a Flooded Engine 7-16
Jump-Starting 7-17
Push-Starting 7-20

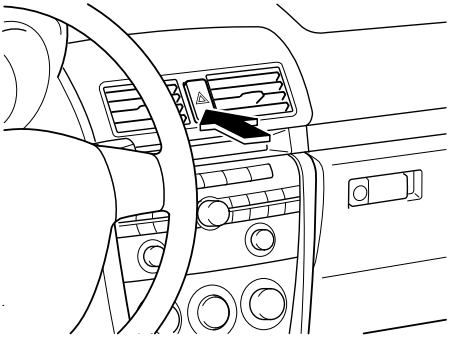
Emergency Towing 7-21
Towing Description 7-21
Tiedown Hook 7-22
Recreational Towing 7-23

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Parking in an Emergency

The hazard warning lights should always be used when you stop on or near a roadway in an emergency.

The hazard warning lights warn other drivers that your vehicle is a traffic hazard and that they must take extreme caution when near it.



Depress the hazard warning flasher and all the turn signals will flash.

NOTE

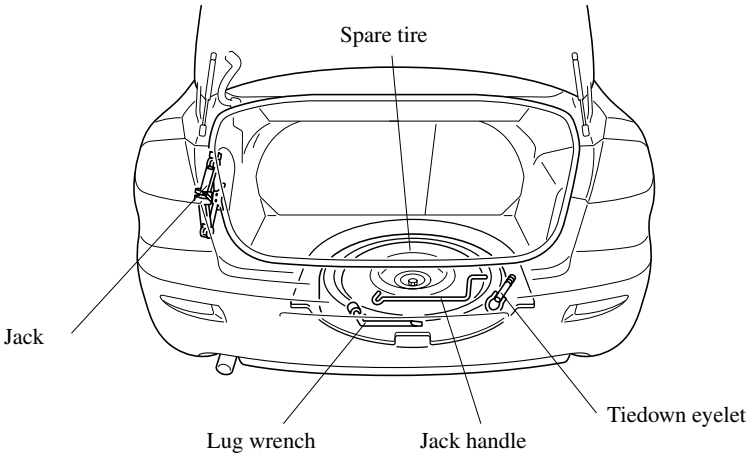
- *The turn signals do not work when the hazard warning lights are on.*
- *Check local regulations about the use of hazard warning lights while the vehicle is being towed to verify that it is not in violation of the law.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Spare Tire and Tool Storage

Spare tire and tools are stored in the locations illustrated in the diagram.

4 Door

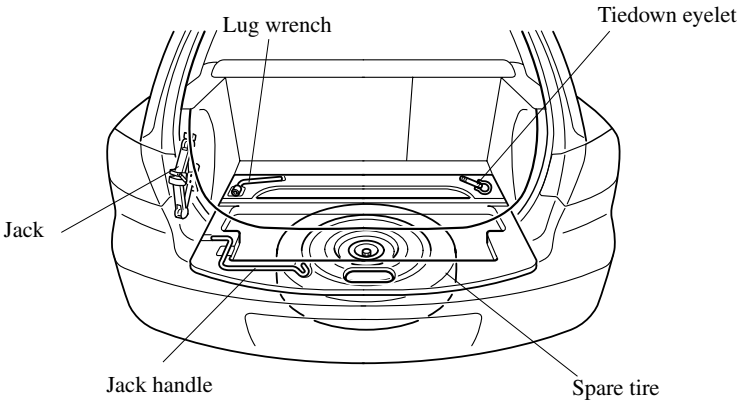


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

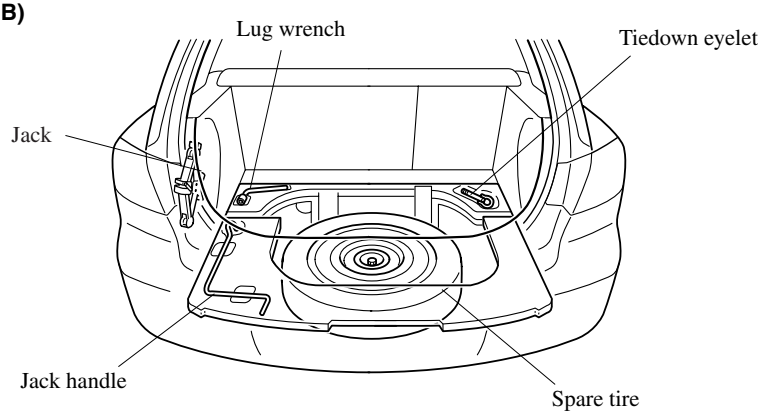
Flat Tire

5 Door

(Type A)



(Type B)

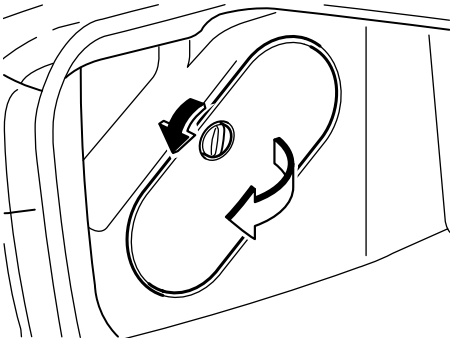


Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

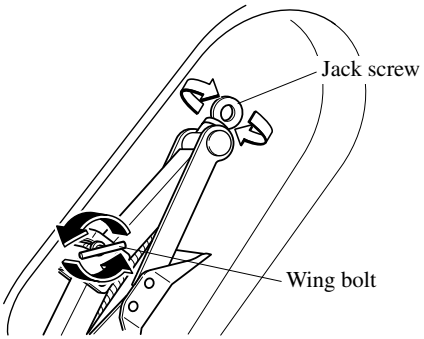
▼Jack

To remove the jack

1. Turn the knob and remove the cover.

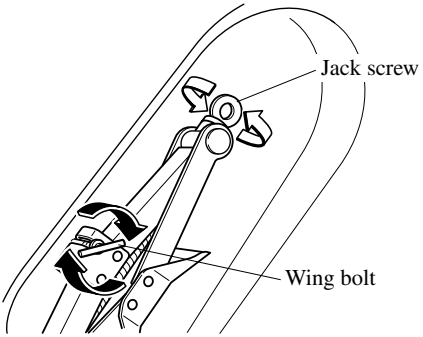


2. Turn the wing bolt and jack screw counterclockwise.



To secure the jack

1. Insert the wing bolt into the jack with the jack screw pointing up and turn the wing bolt clockwise to temporarily tighten it.
2. Turn the jack screw in the direction shown in the figure.



3. Turn the wing bolt completely to secure the jack.

NOTE

If the jack is not completely secured, it could rattle while driving. Make sure the jack screw is sufficiently tightened.

▼Spare Tire

Your Mazda has a temporary spare tire. The temporary spare tire is lighter and smaller than a conventional tire, and is designed only for emergency use and should be used only for VERY short periods. Temporary spare tires should NEVER be used for long drives or extended periods.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Do not install the temporary spare tire on the front wheels (driving wheels) when driving on ice or snow:

Driving with a spare tire on the front (driving) wheels on ice or snow is dangerous. Handling will be affected. You could lose control of the vehicle and have an accident. Put the spare tire on the rear axle and move a regular tire to the front.

⚠ CAUTION

- *When using the temporary spare tire, driving stability may decrease compared to when using only the conventional tire.*
  Drive carefully.
- *To avoid damage to the temporary spare tire or to the vehicle, observe the following precautions:*
  - *Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).*
  - *Avoid driving over obstacles. Also, do not drive through an automatic car wash. This tire's diameter is smaller than a conventional tire's, so the ground clearance is reduced about 25 mm (1 in).*
  - *Do not use a tire chain on this tire because it won't fit properly.*
  - *Do not use your temporary spare tire on any other vehicle; it has been designed only for your Mazda.*
  - *Use only one temporary spare tire on your vehicle at the same time.*
- ***(With limited slip differential)***
  When using the temporary spare tire on the front axle, replace it with a standard tire as soon as possible. The size difference between the spare and the standard tire will cause the limited slip differential to malfunction.

NOTE

(With Tire Pressure Monitoring System)

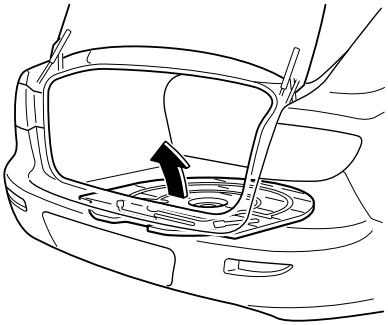
A tire pressure sensor is not installed to the temporary spare tire. The warning light will flash continuously while the temporary spare tire is being used (page 5-29).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

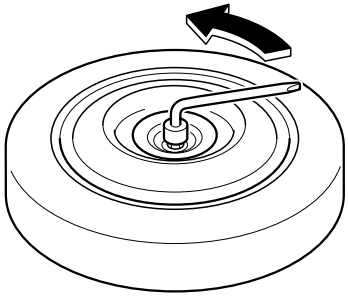
To remove the spare tire

(4 Door)

1. Remove the trunk mat and trunk board.



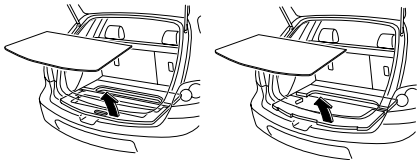
2. Turn the tire hold-down bolt counterclockwise with the lug wrench.



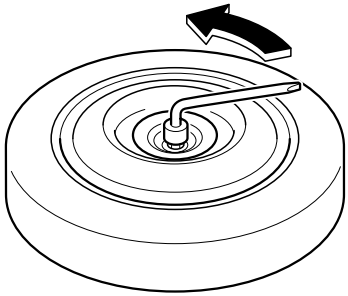
(5 Door)

1. Remove the trunk mat, trunk board and cargo sub-compartment.

(Type A) **(Type B)**



2. Turn the tire hold-down bolt counterclockwise with the lug wrench.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing a Flat Tire

NOTE

If the following occurs while driving, it could indicate a flat tire.

- *Steering becomes difficult.*
- *The vehicle begins to vibrate excessively.*
- *The vehicle pulls in one direction.*

If you have a flat tire, drive slowly to a level spot that is well off the road and out of the way of traffic to change the tire. Stopping in traffic or on the shoulder of a busy road is dangerous.

⚠ WARNING

Be sure to follow the directions for changing a tire, and never get under a vehicle that is supported only by a jack:

Changing a tire is dangerous if not done properly. The vehicle can slip off the jack and seriously injure someone.

Never allow anyone inside a vehicle supported by a jack:

Allowing someone to remain in a vehicle supported by a jack is dangerous. The occupant could cause the vehicle to fall resulting in serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

(With Tire Pressure Monitoring System)

The wheels equipped on your Mazda are specially designed for installation of the tire pressure sensors. Do not use non-genuine wheels, otherwise it may not be possible to install the tire pressure sensors.

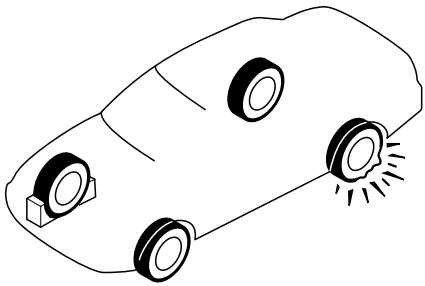
NOTE

- *Make sure the jack is well lubricated before using it.*

(With Tire Pressure Monitoring System)

- *Be sure to register the tire pressure sensor ID signal code whenever tires or wheels are changed (page 5-31).*

1. Park on a level surface off the right-of-way and firmly set the parking brake.
2. Put a vehicle with an automatic transaxle in Park (P), a manual transaxle in Reverse (R) or 1, and turn off the engine.
3. Turn on the hazard warning flasher.
4. Have everyone get out of the vehicle and away from the vehicle and traffic.
5. Remove the jack, tool, and spare tire (page 7-3).
6. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. When blocking a wheel, place a tire block both in front and behind the tire.



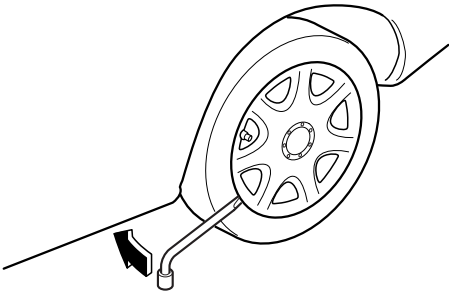
NOTE

When blocking a tire, use rocks or wood blocks of sufficient size if possible to hold the tire in place.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Removing a Flat Tire

1. If your vehicle is equipped with a wheel cover, pry off the wheel cover with the beveled end of the lug wrench.



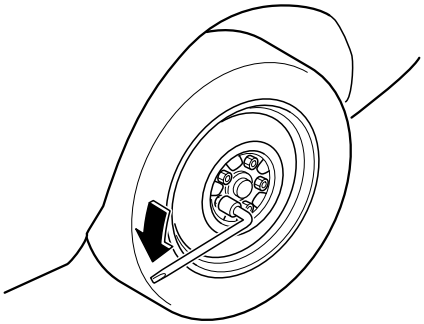
NOTE

Force the end of the lug wrench firmly between wheel and cover, or removal will be difficult.

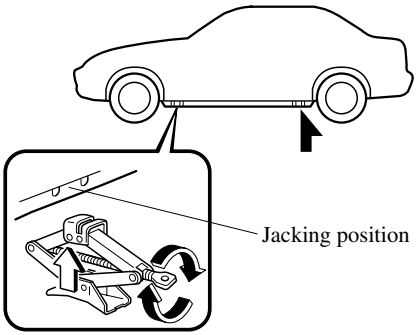
⚠ CAUTION

There is a valve-stem mark inside the wheel cover. When installing the wheel cover, align this mark with the tire's valve stem.
Damage could occur during installation if the wheel cover is not properly aligned.

2. Loosen the lug nuts by turning them counterclockwise one turn each, but don't remove any lug nuts until the tire has been raised off the ground.



3. Place the jack under the jacking position closest to the tire being changed.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Use only the front and rear jacking positions recommended in this manual:

Attempting to jack the vehicle in positions other than those recommended in this manual is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and seriously injure or even kill someone. Use only the front and rear jacking positions recommended in this manual.

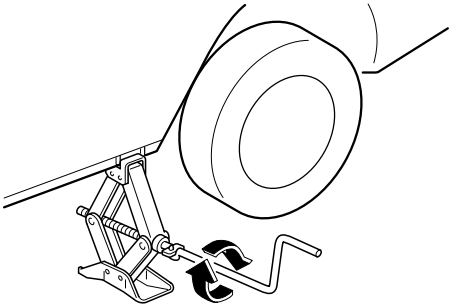
Use only the jack provided with your Mazda:

Using a jack that is not designed for your Mazda is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and seriously injure someone.

Never place objects under the jack:

Jacking the vehicle with an object under the jack is dangerous. The jack could slip and someone could be seriously injured by the jack or the falling vehicle.

4. Insert the jack handle into the jack.
5. Turn the jack handle clockwise and raise the vehicle high enough so that the spare tire can be installed. Before removing the lug nuts, make sure your Mazda is firmly in position and that it cannot slip or move.

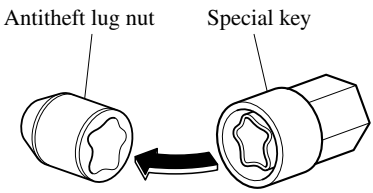


6. Remove the lug nuts by turning them counterclockwise; then remove the wheel and center cap.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Locking Lug Nuts*

If your vehicle has optional antitheft wheel lug nuts, one on each wheel will lock the tires and you must use a special key to unlock them. This key is attached to the lug wrench and is stored with the spare tire. Register them with the lock manufacturer by filling out the card provided in the glove box and mailing it in the accompanying envelope. If you lose this key, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer or use the lock manufacturer's order form, which is with the registration card.



To remove an antitheft lug nut

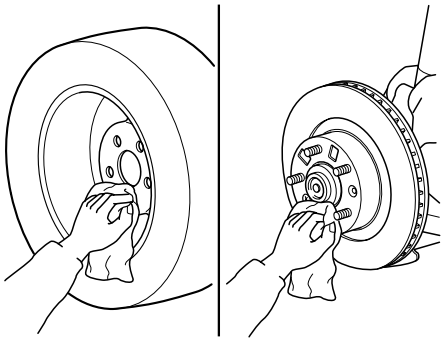
1. Obtain the key for the antitheft lug nut.
2. Place the key on top of the nut, and be sure to hold the key square to it. If you hold the key at an angle, you may damage both key and nut. Don't use a power impact wrench.
3. Place the lug wrench on top of the key and apply pressure. Turn the wrench counterclockwise.

To install the nut

1. Place the key on top of the nut, and be sure to hold the key square to it. If you hold the key at an angle, you may damage both key and nut. Don't use a power impact wrench.
2. Place the lug wrench on top of the key, apply pressure, and turn it clockwise.

▼Mounting the Spare Tire

1. Remove dirt and grime from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub, including the hub bolts, with a cloth.



⚠ WARNING

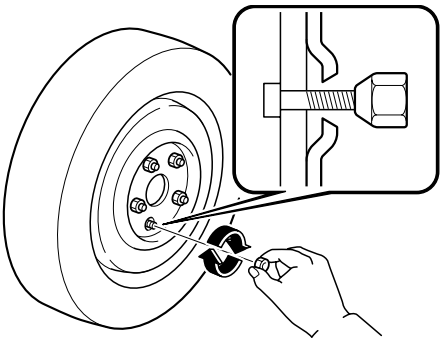
Make sure the mounting surfaces of the wheel, hub and lug nuts are clean before changing or replacing tires:

When changing or replacing a tire, not removing dirt and grime from the mounting surfaces of the wheel, hub and hub bolts is dangerous. The lug nuts could loosen while driving and cause the tire to come off, resulting in an accident.

2. Mount the spare tire.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Install the lug nuts with the beveled edge inward; tighten them by hand.

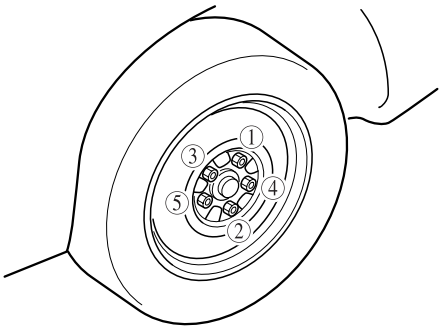


⚠ WARNING

Do not apply oil or grease to lug nuts and bolts and do not tighten the lug nuts beyond the recommended tightening torque:

Applying oil or grease to lug nuts and bolts is dangerous. The lug nuts could loosen while driving and cause the tire to come off, resulting in an accident. In addition, lug nuts and bolts could be damaged if tightened more than necessary.

4. Turn the jack handle counterclockwise and lower the vehicle. Use the lug wrench to tighten the nuts in the order shown.



If you're unsure of how tight the nuts should be, have them inspected at an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Nut tightening torque	
N·m (kgf·m, ft·lbf)	88—118 (9—12, 65—87)

⚠ WARNING

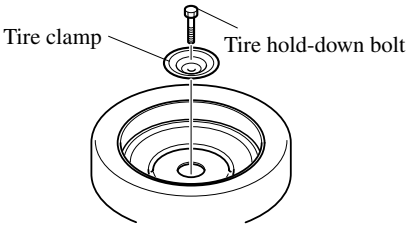
Always securely and correctly tighten the lug nuts:

Improperly or loosely tightened lug nuts are dangerous. The wheel could wobble or come off. This could result in loss of vehicle control and cause a serious accident.

Be sure to reinstall the same nuts you removed or replace them with metric nuts of the same configuration:

Because the wheel studs and lug nuts on your Mazda have metric threads, using a non-metric nut is dangerous. On a metric stud, it would not secure the wheel and would damage the stud, which could cause the wheel to slip off and cause an accident.

5. Store the damaged tire, using the tire hold-down bolt to hold it in place.



6. Check the inflation pressure. Refer to the specification charts on page 10-8.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

7. Have the flat tire repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with any tires that have incorrect air pressure:

Driving on tires with incorrect air pressure is dangerous. Tires with incorrect pressure could affect handling and result in an accident. When you check the regular tires' air pressure, check the spare tire, too.

NOTE

(With Tire Pressure Monitoring System)

A tire pressure sensor is not installed to the temporary spare tire. The warning light will flash continuously while the temporary spare tire is being used (page 5-29).

NOTE

To prevent the jack and tool from rattling, store them properly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Overheating

If the temperature gauge indicates overheating, the vehicle loses power, or you hear a loud knocking or pinging noise, the engine is probably too hot.

⚠ WARNING

Turn off the ignition switch and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:

Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.

Do not remove the cooling system cap when the engine and radiator are hot:

When the engine and radiator are hot, scalding coolant and steam may shoot out under pressure and cause serious injury.

Open the hood ONLY after steam is no longer escaping from the engine:

Steam from an overheated engine is dangerous. The escaping steam could seriously burn you.

If the temperature gauge indicates overheating:

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way.
2. Put a vehicle with an automatic transaxle in park (P), a manual transaxle in neutral.
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Turn off the air conditioner.
5. Check whether coolant or steam is escaping from under the hood or from the engine compartment.

   If steam is coming from the engine compartment:
   Don't go near the front of the vehicle.
   Stop the engine.
   Wait until the steam dissipates, then open the hood and start the engine.

   If neither coolant nor steam is escaping:
   Open the hood and idle the engine until it cools.

⚠ CAUTION

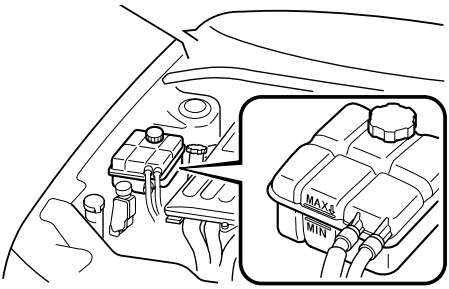
If the cooling fan does not operate while the engine is running, the engine temperature will increase. Stop the engine and call an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

6. Make sure the cooling fan is operating, then turn off the engine after the temperature has decreased.
7. When cool, check the coolant level. If it's low, look for coolant leaks from the radiator and hoses.

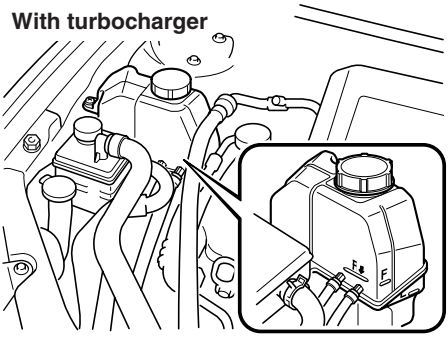
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

If you find a leak or other damage, or if coolant is still leaking:
Stop the engine and call an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Without turbocharger



With turbocharger



If you find no problems, the engine is cool, and no leaks are obvious:
Carefully add coolant as required (page 8-21).

⚠ CAUTION

If the engine continues to overheat or frequently overheats, have the cooling system inspected. The engine could be seriously damaged unless repairs are made. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting a Flooded Engine

If the engine fails to start, it may be flooded (excessive fuel in the engine).

Follow this procedure:

1. If the engine does not start within five seconds on the first try, turn the key to the LOCK position, wait ten seconds and try again.
2. Depress the accelerator all the way and hold it there.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the START position and hold it there—for up to ten seconds. If the engine starts, release the key and accelerator immediately because the engine will suddenly rev up.
4. If the engine fails to start, crank it without depressing the accelerator—for up to ten seconds.

If the engine still does not start using the above procedure, have your vehicle inspected by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Jump-Starting

Jump-starting is dangerous if done incorrectly. So follow the procedure carefully. If you feel unsure about jump-starting, we strongly recommend that you have a competent service technician do the work.

⚠ WARNING

Follow These Precautions Carefully:

To ensure safe and correct handling of the battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.

Always wear eye protection when working near the battery:

Working without eye protection is dangerous. Battery fluid contains SULFURIC ACID which could cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, hydrogen gas produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode.

Wear eye protection and protective gloves to prevent contact with battery fluid:

Spilled battery fluid is dangerous.

Battery fluid contains SULFURIC ACID which could cause serious injuries if it gets in eyes, skin or clothing. If this happens, immediately flush your eyes with water for 15 minutes or wash your skin thoroughly and get medical attention.

Always keep batteries out of the reach of children:

Allowing children to play near batteries is dangerous. Battery fluid could cause serious injuries if it gets in the eyes or on the skin.

Do not allow the positive (+) terminal to contact any other metal object that could cause sparks:

Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. When working near a battery, do not allow metal tools to contact the positive (+) or negative (–) terminal of the battery.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Emergency Starting

Keep all flames, including cigarettes, and sparks away from open battery cells:
Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries.

Do not jump-start a frozen battery or one with a low fluid level:
Jump-starting a frozen battery or one with a low fluid level is dangerous. It may rupture or explode, causing serious injury.

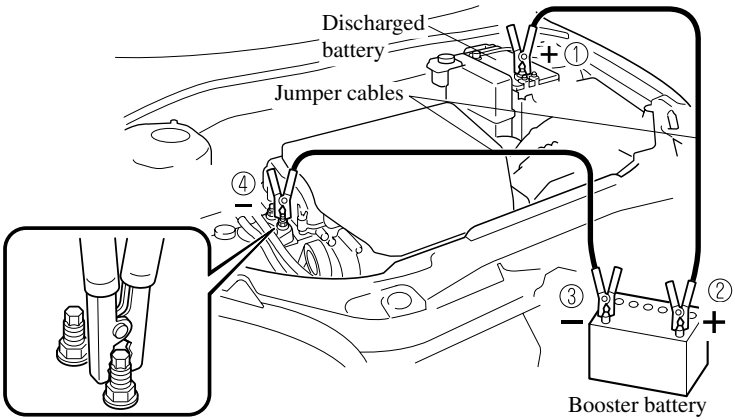
Connect the negative cable to a good ground point away from the battery:
Connecting the end of the second jumper cable to the negative (–) terminal of the discharged battery is dangerous.
A spark could cause the gas around the battery to explode and injure someone.

Route the jumper cables away from parts that will be moving:
Connecting a jumper cable near or to moving parts (cooling fans, belts) is dangerous. The cable could get caught when the engine starts and cause serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

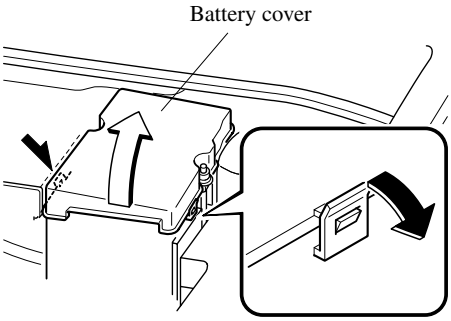
Use only a 12 V booster system. You can damage a 12 V starter, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair with a 24 V power supply (two 12 V batteries in series or a 24 V motor generator set).

Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Remove the battery cover from its front side.



2. Make sure the booster battery is 12 V and that its negative terminal is grounded.
3. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, don't allow both vehicles to touch. Turn off the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and all unnecessary electrical loads in both vehicles.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence as in the illustration.
   - Connect one end of a cable to the positive terminal on the discharged battery (1).
   - Attach the other end to the positive terminal on the booster battery (2).
   - Connect one end of the other cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3).
   - Connect the other end to the ground point indicated in the illustration away from the discharged battery (4).
5. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run it a few minutes. Then start the engine of the other vehicle.
6. When finished, carefully disconnect the cables in the reverse order described in the illustration.

NOTE

Verify that the covers are securely installed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Push-Starting

Do not push-start your Mazda.

⚠ WARNING

Never tow a vehicle to start it:

Towing a vehicle to start it is dangerous. The vehicle being towed could surge forward when its engine starts, causing the two vehicles to collide. The occupants could be injured.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not push-start a vehicle that has a manual transaxle. It can damage the emission control system.

NOTE

You can't start a vehicle with an automatic transaxle by pushing it.

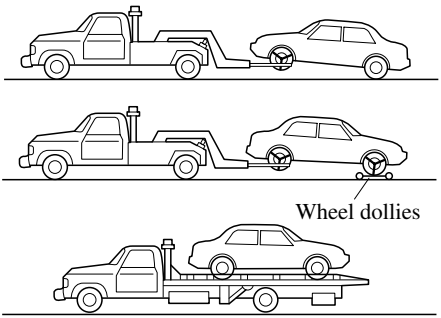
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Towing Description

We recommend that towing be done only by an Authorized Mazda Dealer or a commercial tow-truck service.

Proper lifting and towing are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. Government and local laws must be followed.

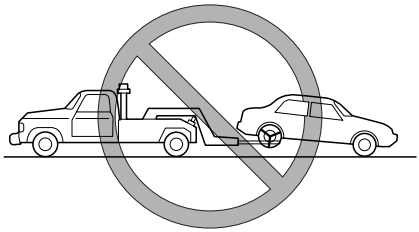
A towed vehicle usually should have its drive wheels (front wheels) off the ground. If excessive damage or other conditions prevent this, use wheel dollies.



When towing with the rear wheels on the ground, release the parking brake.

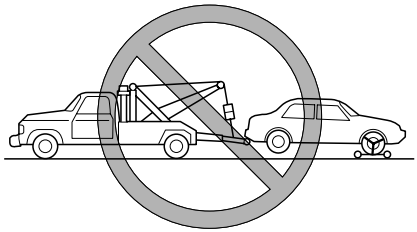
⚠ CAUTION

Do not tow the vehicle pointed backward with driving wheels on the ground. This may cause internal damage to the transaxle.



⚠ CAUTION

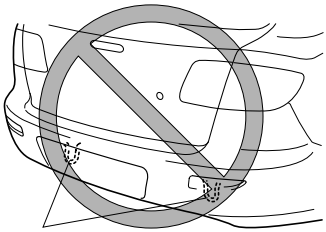
Do not tow with sling-type equipment. This could damage your vehicle. Use wheel-lift or flatbed equipment.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

Do not use the hooks under the rear bumper for towing and tying down, as they cannot hold the load and it will damage the bumper.



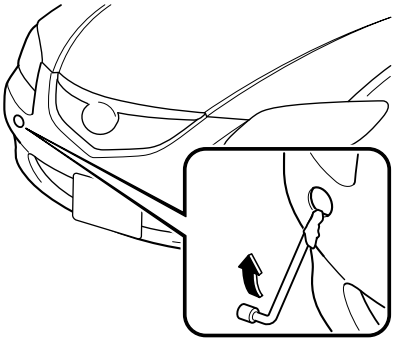
Tiedown Hook

CAUTION

Don't use the tiedown hook under the rear for towing.
It is designed ONLY for tying down the vehicle when it's being transported. Using it for towing will damage the bumper.

▼Tiedown Hook-Front

1. Remove the tiedown eyelet and the lug wrench from the trunk (page 7-3).
2. Wrap the lug wrench with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the bumper and open the cap located on the front bumper.

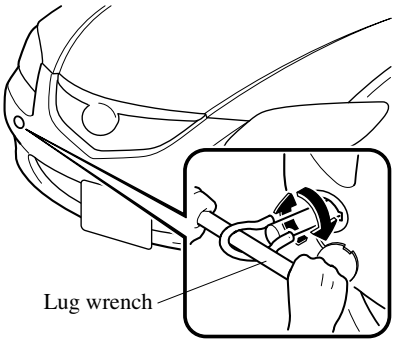


CAUTION

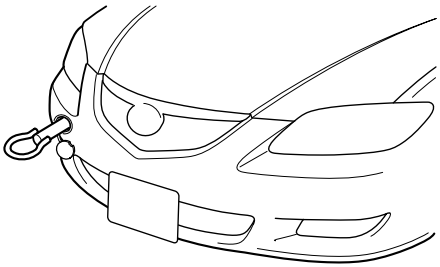
The cap cannot be completely removed. Do not use excessive force as it may damage the cap or scratch the painted bumper surface.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Securely install the tiedown eyelet using the lug wrench.



4. Hook the tying rope to the tiedown eyelet.



⚠ CAUTION

If the tiedown eyelet is not securely tightened, it may loosen or disengage from the bumper when tying down the vehicle. Make sure that the tiedown eyelet is securely tightened to the bumper.

Recreational Towing

An example of "recreational towing" is towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. The transaxle is not designed for towing this vehicle on all 4 wheels.
When doing recreational towing refer to "Towing Description" (page 7-21) and "Tiedown Hook" (page 7-22) and carefully follow the instructions.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

8 Maintenance and Care

How to keep your Mazda in top condition.

Introduction 8-2
Introduction 8-2

Scheduled Maintenance 8-3
Scheduled Maintenance (USA, Canada, and Puerto Rico) 8-3
Scheduled Maintenance (Mexico) 8-8

Owner Maintenance 8-15
Owner Maintenance Schedule 8-15
Owner Maintenance Precautions 8-16
Engine Compartment Overview 8-17
Engine Oil 8-18
Engine Coolant 8-21
Brake/Clutch Fluid 8-23
Power Steering Fluid 8-24
Automatic Transaxle Fluid (ATF)* 8-25
Washer Fluid 8-27
Body Lubrication 8-28
Wiper Blades 8-29
Battery 8-32
Tires 8-35
Light Bulbs 8-39
Fuses 8-50

Appearance Care 8-58
How to Minimize Environmental Paint Damage 8-58
Exterior Care 8-60
Interior Care 8-63

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

*Some models.

Introduction

Be extremely careful and prevent injury to yourself and others or damage to your vehicle when using this manual for inspection and maintenance.

If you're unsure about any procedure it describes, we strongly urge you to have a reliable and qualified service shop perform the work, preferably an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Factory-trained Mazda technicians and genuine Mazda parts are best for your vehicle. Without this expertise and the parts that have been designed and made especially for your Mazda, inadequate, incomplete, and insufficient servicing may result in problems. This could lead to vehicle damage or an accident and injuries.

For expert advice and quality service, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

The owner should retain evidence that proper maintenance has been performed as prescribed.

Claims against the warranty resulting from lack of maintenance, as opposed to defective materials or authorized Mazda workmanship, will not be honored.

Any auto repair shop using parts equivalent to your Mazda's original equipment may perform maintenance. **But we recommend that it always be done by an Authorized Mazda Dealer using genuine Mazda parts.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Scheduled Maintenance (USA, Canada, and Puerto Rico)

Follow Schedule 1 if the vehicle is operated mainly where none of the following conditions apply.

- Repeated short-distance driving
- Driving in dusty conditions
- Driving with extended use of brakes
- Driving in areas where salt or other corrosive materials are used
- Driving on rough or muddy roads
- Extended periods of idling or low-speed operation
- Driving for long periods in cold temperatures or extremely humid climates
- Driving in extremely hot conditions
- Driving in mountainous conditions continually

If any do apply, follow Schedule 2 (Canada and Puerto Rico residents follow Schedule 2).

NOTE

After the prescribed period, continue to follow the described maintenance at the recommended intervals.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Scheduled Maintenance

▼Schedule 1

Maintenance Interval		Number of months or kilometers (miles), whichever comes first							
	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48
	×1000 km	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	×1000 miles	7.5	15	22.5	30	37.5	45	52.5	60
ENGINE									
Engine valve clearance		Audibly inspect every 120,000 km (75,000 miles), if noisy, adjust							
Drive belts (tension)						I			
Engine oil		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Engine oil filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
COOLING SYSTEM									
Cooling system					I				I
Engine coolant	FL22 type[*1]	Replace at first 192,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years; after that, every 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 5 years							
	Others	Replace at first 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 4 years; after that, every 2 years							
FUEL SYSTEM									
Air filter						R			
Fuel lines and hoses[*2]					I				I
Hoses and tubes for emission[*2]									I
IGNITION SYSTEM									
Spark plugs		Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles)							
CHASSIS and BODY									
Brake lines, hoses and connections					I				I
Disc brakes			I		I		I		I
Tire (Rotation)		Rotate every 12,000 km (7,500 miles)							
Steering operation and linkages					I				I
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play					I				I
Driveshaft dust boots					I				I
Exhaust system and heat shields		Inspect every 72,000 km (45,000 miles) or 5 years							
All locks and hinges		L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body					T				T

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometers (miles), whichever comes first								
	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48
	×1000 km	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
	×1000 miles	7.5	15	22.5	30	37.5	45	52.5	60
AIR CONDITIONER SYSTEM									
Cabin air filter	Replace every 40,000 km (25,000 miles) or 2 years								

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
R: Replace
L: Lubricate
T: Tighten

Remarks:

*1 Use FL22 type coolant in vehicles with the inscription “FL22” on the radiator cap itself or the surrounding area. Use FL22 when replacing the coolant.
*2 According to state/provincial and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on these items will not void your emissions warranties. However, Mazda recommends that all maintenance services be performed at the recommended time or mileage/kilometer period to ensure long-term reliability.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Schedule 2

Maintenance Interval		Number of months or kilometers (miles), whichever comes first											
	Months	4	8	12	16	20	24	28	32	36	40	44	48
	×1000 km	8	16	24	32	40	48	56	64	72	80	88	96
	×1000 miles	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
ENGINE													
Engine valve clearance		Audibly inspect every 120,000 km (75,000 miles), if noisy, adjust											
Drive belts (tension)								I					
Engine oil	Puerto Rico	Replace every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 3 months											
	Others	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Engine oil filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
COOLING SYSTEM													
Cooling system							I						I
Engine coolant	FL22 type[*1]	Replace at first 192,000 km (120,000 miles) or 10 years; after that, every 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 5 years											
	Others	Replace at first 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or 4 years; after that, every 2 years											
Engine coolant level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
FUEL SYSTEM													
Air filter	Puerto Rico						R						R
	Others							R					
Fuel lines and hoses[*2]							I						I
Hoses and tubes for emission[*2]													I
IGNITION SYSTEM													
Spark plugs (without turbocharger)		Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles)											
Spark plugs (with turbocharger)	USA	Replace every 96,000 km (60,000 miles)											
	Others[*3]	Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles)											
ELECTRICAL SYSTEM													
Function of all lights		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometers (miles), whichever comes first											
	Months	4	8	12	16	20	24	28	32	36	40	44	48
	×1000 km	8	16	24	32	40	48	56	64	72	80	88	96
	×1000 miles	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
CHASSIS and BODY													
Brake lines, hoses and connections							I						I
Brake and clutch fluid level	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Disc brakes			I			I			I			I
Tire (Rotation)	Rotate every 8,000 km (5,000 miles)												
Tire inflation pressure and tire wear	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering operation and linkages						I						I
Power steering fluid level	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play						I						I
Driveshaft dust boots						I						I
Exhaust system and heat shields	Inspect every 72,000 km (45,000 miles) or 5 years												
All locks and hinges	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L
Washer fluid level	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body						T						T
AIR CONDITIONER SYSTEM													
Cabin air filter	Replace every 40,000 km (25,000 miles) or 2 years												

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
R: Replace
L: Lubricate
T: Tighten

Remarks:

*1 Use FL22 type coolant in vehicles with the inscription “FL22” on the radiator cap itself or the surrounding area. Use FL22 when replacing the coolant.
*2 According to state/provincial and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on these items will not void your emissions warranties. However, Mazda recommends that all maintenance services be performed at the recommended time or mileage/kilometer period to ensure long-term reliability.
*3 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, replace the spark plugs at every 96,000 km (60,000 miles) or shorter.
a) Repeated short-distance driving
b) Extended periods of idling or low-speed operation
c) Driving for long periods in cold temperatures or extremely humid climates

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Scheduled Maintenance (Mexico)

Follow Schedule 1 if the vehicle is operated mainly where none of the following conditions apply.

- Repeated short-distance driving
- Driving in dusty conditions
- Driving with extended use of brakes
- Driving in areas where salt or other corrosive materials are used
- Driving on rough or muddy roads
- Extended periods of idling or low-speed operation
- Driving for long periods in cold temperatures or extremely humid climates
- Driving in extremely hot conditions
- Driving in mountainous conditions continually

If any do apply, follow Schedule 2.

NOTE

After the prescribed period, continue to follow the described maintenance at the recommended intervals.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Schedule 1

Maintenance Interval		Number of months or kilometers, whichever comes first											
	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72
	×1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120
ENGINE													
Engine valve clearance		Audibly inspect every 120,000 km, if noisy, adjust											
Drive belts (tension)					I				I				I
Engine oil		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Engine oil filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
COOLING SYSTEM													
Cooling system					I				I				I
Engine coolant	FL22 type[*1]	Replace at first 190,000 km or 10 years; after that, every 60,000 km or 3 years											
	Others				R				R				R
FUEL SYSTEM													
Air filter			R		R		R		R		R		R
Fuel lines and hoses					I[*2]				I[*2]				I
Hoses and tubes for emission					I[*2]				I[*2]				I
Fuel filter					R				R				R
IGNITION SYSTEM													
Spark plugs		Replace every 60,000 km											
CHASSIS and BODY													
Brake lines, hoses and connections			I		I		I		I		I		I
Brake and clutch fluid level		I	I	I		I	I	I		I	I	I	
Brake fluid					R				R				R
Disc brakes		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire (Rotation)		Rotate every 10,000 km											
Tire inflation pressure and tire wear		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering operation and linkages		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Power steering fluid level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play			I		I		I		I		I		I
Driveshaft dust boots			I		I		I		I		I		I
Exhaust system and heat shields			I		I		I		I		I		I
All locks and hinges		L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L
Washer fluid level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body			T		T		T		T		T		T

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Scheduled Maintenance

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometers, whichever comes first												
	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72
	×1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120
AIR CONDITIONER SYSTEM													
Cabin air filter					R				R				R

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
R: Replace
L: Lubricate
T: Tighten

Remarks:

*1 Use FL22 type coolant in vehicles with the inscription “FL22” on the radiator cap itself or the surrounding area. Use FL22 when replacing the coolant.
*2 According to state/provincial and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on these items will not void your emissions warranties. However, Mazda recommends that all maintenance services be performed at the recommended time or kilometer period to ensure long-term reliability.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Schedule 2

Maintenance Interval		Number of months or kilometers, whichever comes first											
	Months	3	6	9	12	15	18	21	24	27	30	33	36
	×1000 km	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
ENGINE													
Engine valve clearance		Audibly inspect every 120,000 km, if noisy, adjust											
Drive belts (tension)									I				
Engine oil		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Engine oil filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
COOLING SYSTEM													
Cooling system									I				
Engine coolant	FL22 type[*1]	Replace at first 190,000 km or 10 years; after that, every 60,000 km or 3 years											
	Others								R				
Engine coolant level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
FUEL SYSTEM													
Air filter			C		R		C		R		C		R
Fuel lines and hoses									I[*2]				
Hoses and tubes for emission									I[*2]				
Fuel filter									R				
IGNITION SYSTEM													
Spark plugs		Replace every 60,000 km											
ELECTRICAL SYSTEM													
Function of all lights		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
CHASSIS and BODY													
Brake lines, hoses and connections					I				I				I
Brake and clutch fluid level			I		I		I				I		I
Brake fluid									R				
Disc brakes			I		I		I		I		I		I
Tire (Rotation)		Rotate every 10,000 km											
Tire inflation pressure and tire wear			I		I		I		I		I		I
Steering operation and linkages			I		I		I		I		I		I
Power steering fluid level			I		I		I		I		I		I
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play					I				I				I
Driveshaft dust boots					I				I				I
Exhaust system and heat shields					I				I				I
All locks and hinges			L		L		L		L		L		L
Washer fluid level			I		I		I		I		I		I
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body					T				T				T

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Scheduled Maintenance

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometers, whichever comes first												
	Months	3	6	9	12	15	18	21	24	27	30	33	36
	×1000 km	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
AIR CONDITIONER SYSTEM													
Cabin air filter					R				R				R

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
R: Replace
L: Lubricate
C: Clean
T: Tighten

Remarks:

*1 Use FL22 type coolant in vehicles with the inscription “FL22” on the radiator cap itself or the surrounding area. Use FL22 when replacing the coolant.
*2 According to state/provincial and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on these items will not void your emissions warranties. However, Mazda recommends that all maintenance services be performed at the recommended time or kilometer period to ensure long-term reliability.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

(Cont.)

Maintenance Interval		Number of months or kilometers, whichever comes first											
	Months	39	42	45	48	51	54	57	60	63	66	69	72
	×1000 km	65	70	75	80	85	90	95	100	105	110	115	120
ENGINE													
Engine valve clearance		Audibly inspect every 120,000 km, if noisy, adjust											
Drive belts (tension)					I								I
Engine oil		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Engine oil filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
COOLING SYSTEM													
Cooling system					I								I
Engine coolant	FL22 type[*1]	Replace at first 190,000 km or 10 years; after that, every 60,000 km or 3 years											
	Others				R								R
Engine coolant level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
FUEL SYSTEM													
Air filter			C		R		C		R		C		R
Fuel lines and hoses					I[*2]								I
Hoses and tubes for emission					I[*2]								I
Fuel filter					R								R
IGNITION SYSTEM													
Spark plugs		Replace every 60,000 km											
ELECTRICAL SYSTEM													
Function of all lights		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
CHASSIS and BODY													
Brake lines, hoses and connections					I				I				I
Brake and clutch fluid level			I				I		I		I		
Brake fluid					R								R
Disc brakes			I		I		I		I		I		I
Tire (Rotation)		Rotate every 10,000 km											
Tire inflation pressure and tire wear			I		I		I		I		I		I
Steering operation and linkages			I		I		I		I		I		I
Power steering fluid level			I		I		I		I		I		I
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play					I				I				I
Driveshaft dust boots					I				I				I
Exhaust system and heat shields					I				I				I
All locks and hinges			L		L		L		L		L		L
Washer fluid level			I		I		I		I		I		I
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body					T				T				T

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Scheduled Maintenance

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometers, whichever comes first												
	Months	39	42	45	48	51	54	57	60	63	66	69	72
	×1000 km	65	70	75	80	85	90	95	100	105	110	115	120
AIR CONDITIONER SYSTEM													
Cabin air filter					R				R				R

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.
R: Replace
L: Lubricate
C: Clean
T: Tighten

Remarks:

*1 Use FL22 type coolant in vehicles with the inscription “FL22” on the radiator cap itself or the surrounding area. Use FL22 when replacing the coolant.
*2 According to state/provincial and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on these items will not void your emissions warranties. However, Mazda recommends that all maintenance services be performed at the recommended time or kilometer period to ensure long-term reliability.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Owner Maintenance Schedule

The owner or a qualified service technician should make these vehicle inspections at the indicated intervals to ensure safe and dependable operation.

Bring any problem to the attention of an Authorized Mazda Dealer or qualified service technician as soon as possible.

▼When Refueling

- Brake and clutch fluid level (page 8-23)
- Engine coolant level (page 8-21)
- Engine oil level (page 8-20)
- Washer fluid level (page 8-27)

▼At Least Monthly

Tire inflation pressures (page 8-35)

▼At Least Twice a Year (For Example, Every Spring and Fall)

- Automatic transaxle fluid level (page 8-25)
- Power steering fluid level (page 8-24)

You can do the following scheduled maintenance items if you have some mechanical ability and a few basic tools and if you closely follow the directions in this manual.

- Engine coolant (page 8-21)
- Engine oil (page 8-18)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Owner Maintenance Precautions

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for items that are easy to perform.

As explained in the Introduction (page 8-2), several procedures can be done only by a qualified service technician with special tools.

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Mazda Warranty statement provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, have it done by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

There are strict environmental laws regarding the disposal of waste oil and fluids. Please dispose of your waste properly and with due regard to the environment.

We recommend that you entrust the oil and fluid changes of your vehicle to an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Do not perform maintenance work if you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work. Have maintenance work done by a qualified technician:

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle is dangerous if not done properly. You can be seriously injured while performing some maintenance procedures.

If you must run the engine while working under the hood, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fan which may turn on unexpectedly:

Working under the hood with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewelry or loose clothing.
Either can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury.

Turn off the ignition switch and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:

Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.

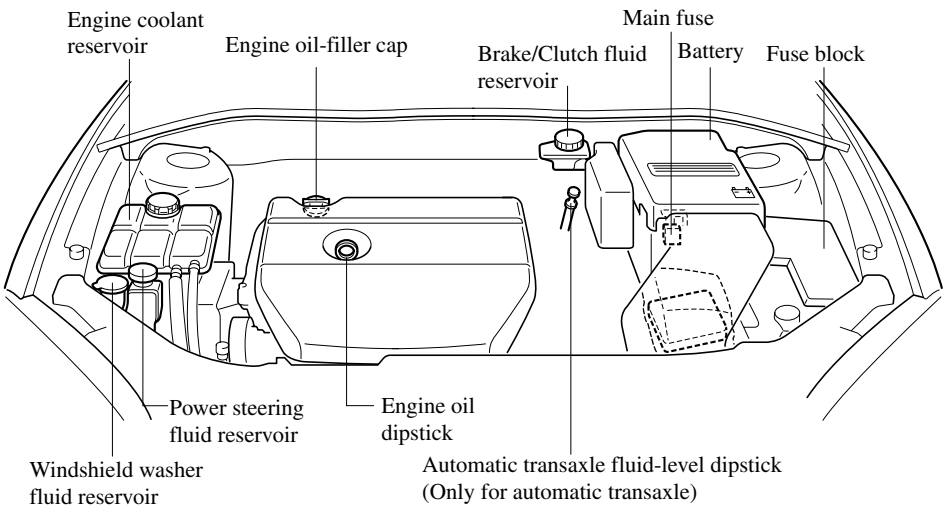
Do not leave items in the engine compartment:

After you have finished checking or doing servicing in the engine compartment, do not forget and leave items such as tools or rags in the engine compartment.
Tools or other items left in the engine compartment could cause engine damage or a fire leading to an unexpected accident.

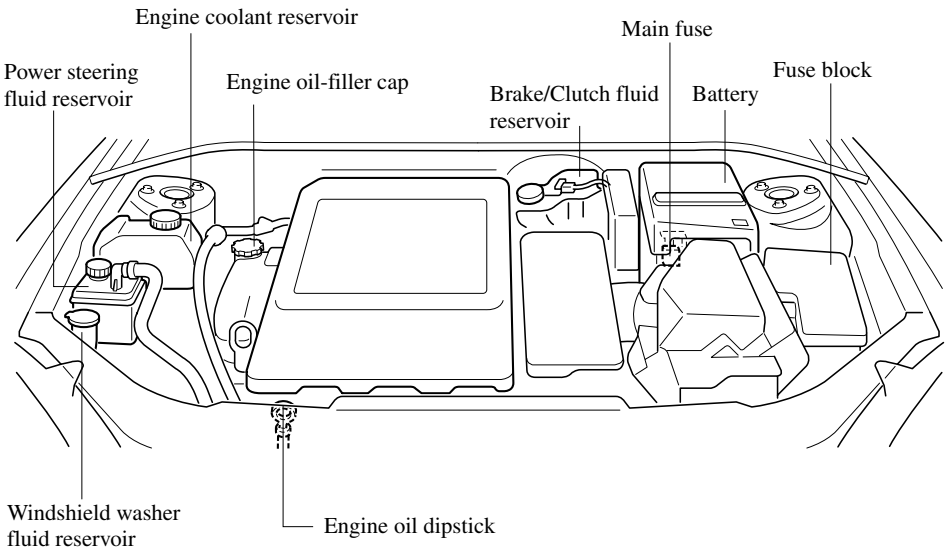
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Compartment Overview

Without turbocharger



With turbocharger



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Oil

NOTE

Changing the engine oil should be done by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

▼Recommended Oil

Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil (Without turbocharger).

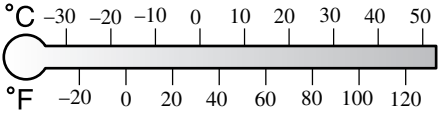
Oil container labels provide important information.

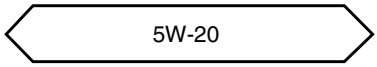
A chief contribution this type of oil makes to fuel economy is reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction.

U.S.A. and CANADA

(ILSAC)

Only use oils “Certified For Gasoline Engines” by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.





Except U.S.A. and CANADA

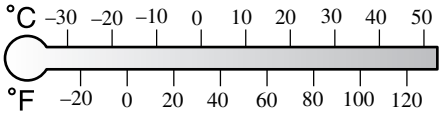
(ILSAC)

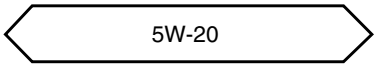
Mexico

Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil. If SAE 5W-20 engine oil is not available in your market. Use SAE 5W-30 engine oil.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The quality designation SM, or ILSAC must be on the label.



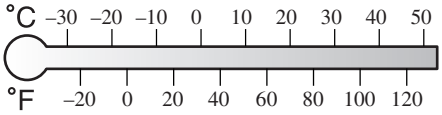


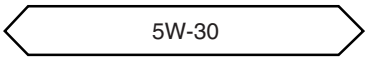
Use SAE 5W-30 engine oil (With turbocharger).
Oil container labels provide important information.
A chief contribution this type of oil makes to fuel economy is reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction.

U.S.A. and CANADA

(ILSAC)

Only use oils “Certified For Gasoline Engines” by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.



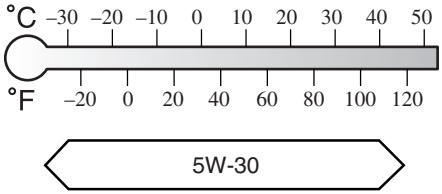


Except U.S.A. and CANADA

(ILSAC)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

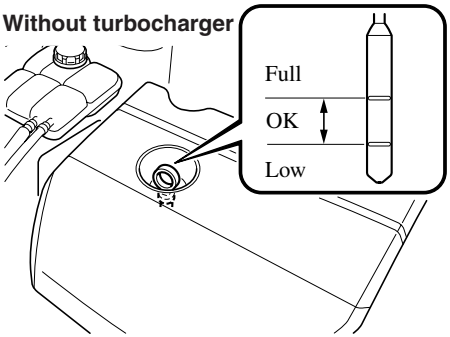
The quality designation SM, or ILSAC must be on the label.



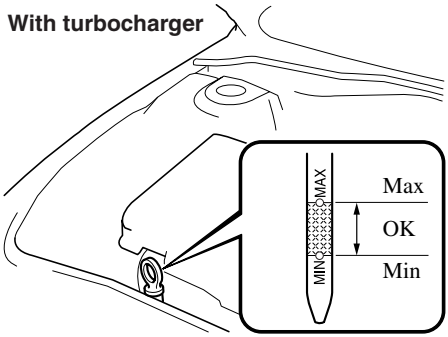
▼Inspecting Engine Oil Level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on a level surface.
2. Warm up the engine to normal operating temperature.
3. Turn it off and wait at least 5 minutes for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, and reinsert it fully.

Without turbocharger



With turbocharger



5. Pull it out again and examine the level. It's OK between Low or MIN and Full or MAX.
   But if it's near or below Low or MIN, add enough oil to bring the level to Full or MAX.

⚠ CAUTION

Don't add engine oil over Full or MAX. This may cause engine damage.

6. Make sure the O-ring on the dipstick is positioned properly before reinserting the dipstick.

The distance between Low or MIN and Full or MAX on the dipstick represents the following:

Oil capacity	
L (US qt, Imp qt)	0.75 (0.79, 0.66)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Coolant

▼Inspecting Coolant Level

⚠ WARNING

Do not use a match or live flame in the engine compartment. DO NOT ADD COOLANT WHEN THE ENGINE IS HOT:

A hot engine is dangerous. If the engine has been running, parts of the engine compartment can become very hot. You could be burned. Carefully inspect the engine coolant in the coolant reservoir, but do not open it.

Turn off the ignition switch and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:

Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.

Do not remove the cooling system cap when the engine and radiator are hot:

When the engine and radiator are hot, scalding coolant and steam may shoot out under pressure and cause serious injury.

NOTE

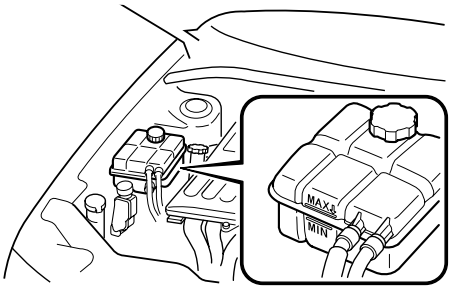
Changing the coolant should be done by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Inspect the antifreeze protection and coolant level in the coolant reservoir at least once a year—at the beginning of the winter season—and before traveling where temperatures may drop below freezing.

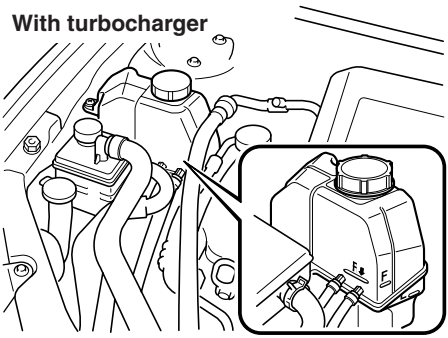
Inspect the condition and connections of all cooling system and heater hoses. Replace any that are swollen or deteriorated.

The coolant should be at full in the radiator and between the MAX or F and MIN or L marks on the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

Without turbocharger



With turbocharger



If it's at or near MIN or L, add enough coolant to the coolant reservoir to provide freezing and corrosion protection and to bring the level to MAX or F.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- *Radiator coolant will damage paint.*
  Rinse it off quickly if spilled.
- *Use only soft (demineralized) water in the coolant mixture.*
  Water that contains minerals will cut down on the coolant's effectiveness.
- *Don't add only water. Always add a proper coolant mixture.*
- *The engine has aluminum parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol-based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.*
- *DO NOT USE coolants Containing Alcohol, methanol, Borate or Silicate.*
  These coolants could damage the cooling system.
- *DO NOT MIX alcohol or methanol with the coolant. This could damage the cooling system.*
- *Don't use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze.*
  This would reduce effectiveness.

NOTE

If the "FL22" mark is shown on or near the cooling system cap, use FL22 type engine coolant. If engine coolant other than FL22 type is used, the engine coolant must be replaced earlier than the specified replacement interval indicated in the scheduled maintenance (page 8-3).

If the coolant reservoir is empty or new coolant is required frequently, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

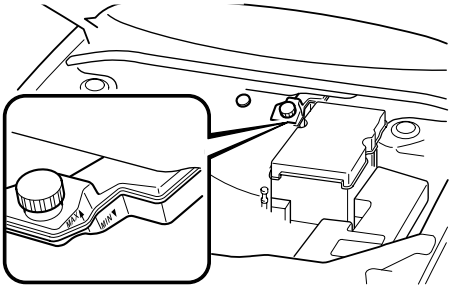
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Brake/Clutch Fluid

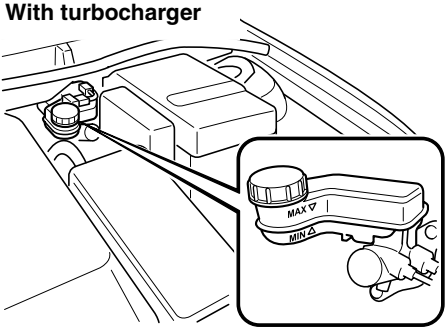
▼Inspecting Brake/Clutch Fluid Level

The brakes and clutch draw fluid from the same reservoir.
Inspect the fluid level in the reservoir regularly. It should be kept at MAX.
The level normally drops with accumulated distance, a condition associated with wear of brake and clutch linings. If it is excessively low, have the brake/clutch system inspected by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Without turbocharger



With turbocharger



▼Adding Brake/Clutch Fluid

⚠ WARNING

Be careful not to spill brake fluid on yourself or on the engine:
Spilled brake fluid is dangerous. If it gets in your eyes, they could be seriously injured. If this happens, immediately flush your eyes with water and get medical attention. Brake fluid spilled on a hot engine could cause a fire.

If the brake/clutch fluid level is low, have the brakes and clutch inspected:
Low brake/clutch fluid levels are dangerous. Low levels could signal brake lining wear or a brake system leak. Your brakes could fail and cause an accident.

If the fluid level is low, add fluid until it reaches MAX.
Before adding fluid, thoroughly clean the area around the cap.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Brake and clutch fluid will damage painted surfaces. If brake or clutch fluid does get on a painted surface, wash it off with water immediately.*
- *Using nonspecified brake and clutch fluids (page 10-4) will damage the systems. Mixing different fluids will also damage them.*
  If the brake/clutch system frequently requires new fluid, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Steering Fluid

▼Inspecting Power Steering Fluid Level

⚠ CAUTION

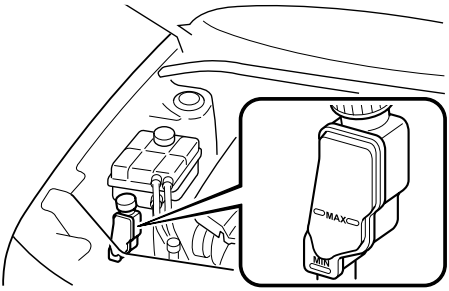
To avoid damage to the power steering pump, don't operate the vehicle for long periods when the power steering fluid level is low.

NOTE

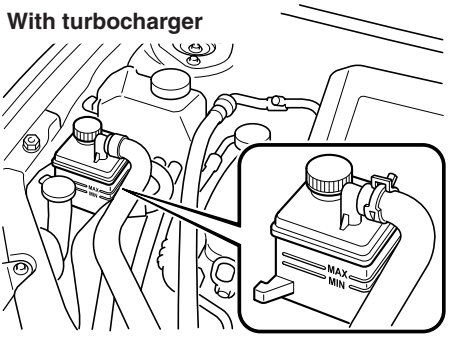
Use specified power steering fluid (page 10-4).

Inspect the fluid level in the reservoir at each engine oil change with the engine off and cold. Add fluid if necessary; it does not require periodic changing.

Without turbocharger



With turbocharger



The level must be kept between MIN and MAX.

Visually examine the lines and hoses for leaks and damage.

If new fluid is required frequently, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Transaxle Fluid (ATF)*

▼Inspecting Automatic Transaxle Fluid Level

The automatic transaxle fluid level should be inspected regularly. Measure it as described below.

5AT

⚠ CAUTION

- *Always check the automatic transaxle fluid level according to the following procedure. If the procedure is not done correctly, the automatic transaxle fluid level cannot be measured accurately which could lead to automatic transaxle damage.*
- *A low fluid level can cause transaxle slippage. Overfilling can cause foaming, loss of fluid, and transaxle malfunction.*
- *Use only the specified fluid. A non-specified fluid could result in transaxle malfunction and failure.*

1. Park on a level surface and set the parking brake firmly.
2. Make sure there is no ATF leakage from the ATF hose or the housing.
3. Shift the shift lever to the park position (P), start the engine and warm it up.

⚠ CAUTION

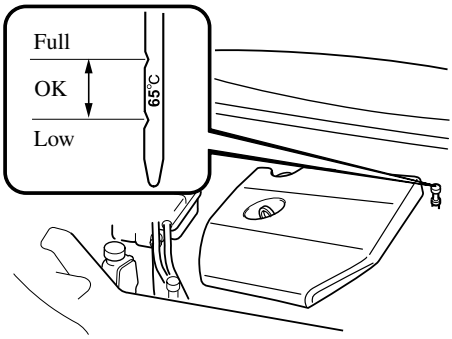
Do not shift the shift lever while the engine is warming up. If the ATF level is extremely low, the automatic transaxle could be damaged.

4. While the engine is still idling, pull out the dipstick and wipe it clean, and then put it back.
5. Check the ATF level. If there is no ATF adhering 5 mm from the end of the dipstick, add ATF.

⚠ CAUTION

If there is no ATF adhering to the dipstick even after the engine has been warmed up, do not drive the vehicle. Otherwise, the automatic transaxle could be damaged.

6. Shift the shift lever to each range and position, and make sure there is no abnormality.
7. Drive the vehicle on city roads for 5 km (3.1 mile) or more.
8. Park on a level surface and set the parking brake firmly.
9. Shift the shift lever to the park position (P), check the ATF level while the engine is idling, and make sure that the ATF level is within the proper level. If the ATF level is not within the proper level, add ATF.
   The proper fluid level is marked on the dipstick as follows.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

4AT

The volume of fluid changes with temperature. Fluid must be checked while idling the engine without driving at normal operating temperature.

⚠ CAUTION

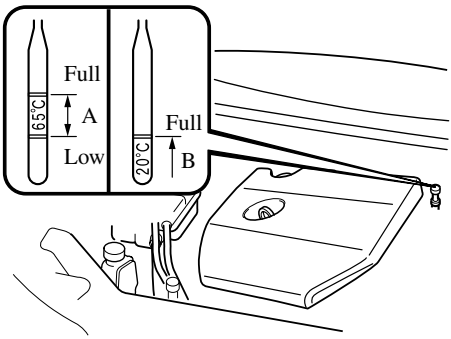
- *Low fluid level causes transaxle slippage. Overfilling can cause foaming, loss of fluid, and transaxle malfunction.*
- *Use specified fluid (page 10-4). A nonspecified fluid could result in transaxle malfunction and failure.*

1. Park on a level surface and set the parking brake firmly.
2. Start the engine and depress the brake pedal.
3. Move the shift lever through all ranges, then set it at P.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the brake pedal is applied before shifting the shift lever:
Shifting the shift lever without first depressing the brake pedal is dangerous. The vehicle could move suddenly and cause an accident.

4. With the engine still idling, pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, and put it back.
5. Pull it out again.
   The proper fluid level is marked on the dipstick as follows.



Fluid hot scale A

When the vehicle has been driven and the fluid is at normal operating temperature, about 65°C (150°F), the level must be between Full and Low.

Fluid cold scale B

When the engine has not been running and the outside temperature is about 20°C (70°F), the fluid level should be close to, but not above, the bottom notch on the dipstick.

⚠ CAUTION

- *Use the cold scale only as a reference.*
- *If outside temperature is lower than about 20°C (70°F), start the engine and inspect the fluid level after the engine reaches operating temperature.*
- *If the vehicle has been driven for an extended period at high speeds or in city traffic in hot weather, inspect the level only after stopping the engine and allowing the fluid to cool for 30 minutes.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fully insert the dipstick. When adding fluid, inspect with the dipstick to make sure it doesn't pass full.

NOTE

Inspect the fluid on both sides of the dipstick in a well lit area for an accurate reading.

Washer Fluid

▼Inspecting Washer Fluid Level

⚠ WARNING

Use only windshield washer fluid or plain water in the reservoir:

Using radiator antifreeze as washer fluid is dangerous. If sprayed on the windshield, it will dirty the windshield, affect your visibility, and could result in an accident.

Using Washer Fluid Without Anti-freeze Protection in Cold Weather:

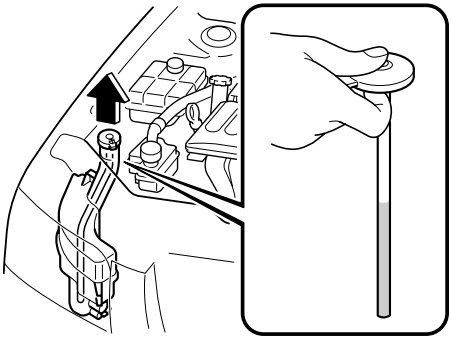
Operating your vehicle in temperatures below 4 degrees C (40 degrees F) using washer fluid without anti-freeze protection is dangerous as it could cause impaired windshield vision and result in an accident. In cold weather, always use washer fluid with anti-freeze protection.

NOTE

State or local regulations may restrict the use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs), which are commonly used as anti-freeze agents in washer fluid. A washer fluid with limited VOC content should be used only if it provides adequate freeze resistance for all regions and climates in which the vehicle will be operated.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Inspect fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir; add fluid if necessary.



To inspect the washer fluid level in the front reservoir, pull off the cap. Then, holding your thumb over the hole in the center of the cap, lift it straight up. The fluid level can be seen from the fluid column in the pipe. Add fluid if necessary.

Use plain water if washer fluid is unavailable. But use only washer fluid in cold weather to prevent it from freezing.

NOTE

Front and rear washer fluid is supplied from the same reservoir.

Body Lubrication

All moving points of the body, such as door and hood hinges and locks, should be lubricated each time the engine oil is changed. Use a nonfreezing lubricant on locks during cold weather.

Make sure the hood's secondary latch keeps the hood from opening when the primary latch is released.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Wiper Blades

⚠ CAUTION

- *Hot waxes applied by automatic car washers have been known to affect the wiper's ability to clean windows.*
- *To prevent damage to the wiper blades, don't use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.*
- *When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition switch is in the ON position, the wipers may move automatically in the following cases:*
  - *If the windshield above the rain sensor is touched.*
  - *If the windshield above the rain sensor is wiped with a cloth.*
  - *If the windshield is struck with a hand or other object.*
  - *If the rain sensor is struck with a hand or other object from inside the vehicle.*

  Be careful not to pinch hands or fingers as it may cause injury, or damage the wipers. When washing or servicing your Mazda, make sure the wiper lever is in the OFF position.

Contamination of either the windshield or the blades with foreign matter can reduce wiper effectiveness. Common sources are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes.

If the blades are not wiping properly, clean the window and blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent; then rinse thoroughly with clean water. Repeat if necessary.

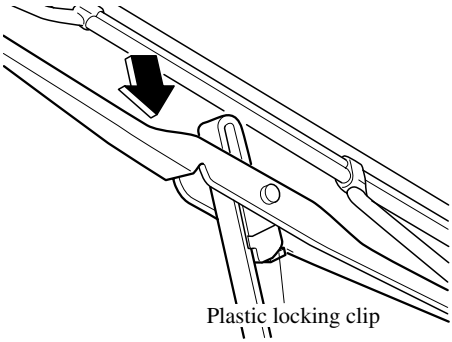
▼Replacing Windshield Wiper Blades

When the wipers no longer clean well, the blades are probably worn or cracked. Replace them.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, don't try to sweep the wiper arm by hand.

1. Raise the wiper arm and turn the blade assembly to expose the plastic locking clip.
   Slide the assembly downward; then lift it off the arm.

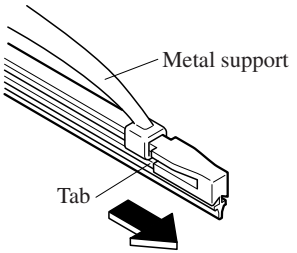


⚠ CAUTION

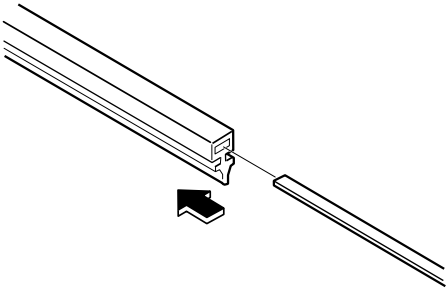
To prevent damage to the windshield let the wiper arm down easily, don't let it slap down on the windshield.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Hold the end of the rubber and pull until the tabs are free of the metal support.



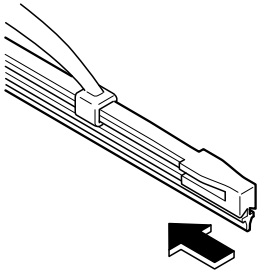
3. Remove the metal stiffener from each blade rubber and install them in the new blade.



⚠ CAUTION

- *Don't bend or discard the stiffener. You need to use them again.*
- *If the metal stiffeners are switched, the blade's wiping efficiency could be reduced. So don't use the driver's side metal stiffener on the passenger's side, or vice versa.*
- *Be sure to reinstall the metal stiffener in the new blade rubber so that the curve is the same as it was in the old blade rubber.*

4. Carefully insert the new blade rubber. Then install the blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.



NOTE

Install the blade so that the tabs are toward the bottom of the wiper arm.

▼Replacing Rear Wiper Blade (5 Door)

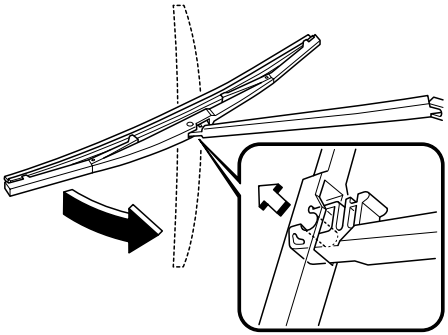
When the wiper no longer cleans well, the blade is probably worn or cracked. Replace it.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the wiper arm and other components, don't try to sweep the wiper arm by hand.

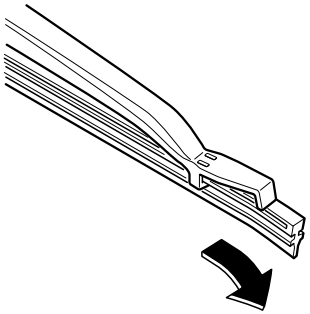
1. Raise the wiper arm and rotate the wiper blade to the right until it unlocks, then remove the blade.



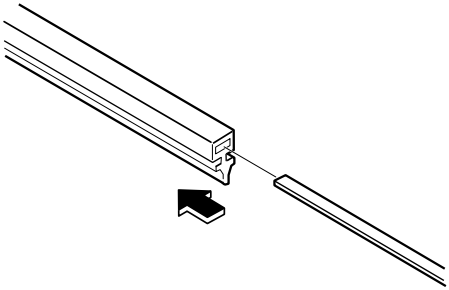
⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the rear window let the wiper arm down easily, don't let it slap down on the rear window.

2. Pull down the blade rubber and slide it out of the blade holder.



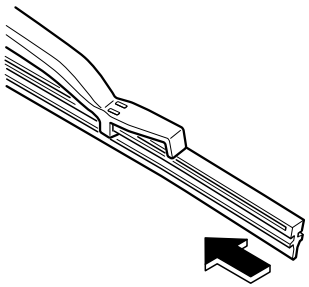
3. Remove the metal stiffener from each blade rubber and install them in the new blade.



⚠ CAUTION

Don't bend or discard the stiffener. You need to use them again.

4. Carefully insert the new blade rubber. Then install the blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Battery

⚠ WARNING

Wash hands after handling the battery and related accessories:

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.

Read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting to ensure safe and correct handling:

Always wear eye protection when working near the battery:

Working without eye protection is dangerous. Battery fluid contains SULFURIC ACID which could cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, hydrogen gas produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode.

Wear eye protection and protective gloves to prevent contact with battery fluid:

Spilled battery fluid is dangerous.
Battery fluid contains SULFURIC ACID which could cause serious injuries if it gets in eyes, or on the skin or clothing. If this happens, immediately flush your eyes with water for 15 minutes or wash your skin thoroughly and get medical attention.

Always keep batteries out of the reach of children:

Allowing children to play near batteries is dangerous. Battery fluid could cause serious injuries if it gets in the eyes or on the skin.

Keep flames and sparks away from open battery cells and do not allow metal tools to contact the positive (+) or negative (–) terminal of the battery when working near a battery. Do not allow the positive (+) terminal to contact the vehicle body:

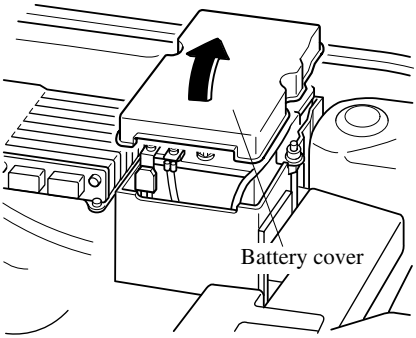
Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from open battery cells.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

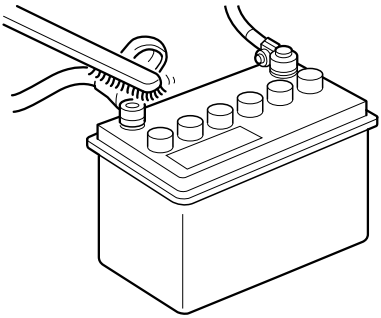
Keep all flames, including cigarettes, and sparks away from open battery cells: *Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries.*

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE
Remove the battery cover before performing battery maintenance.



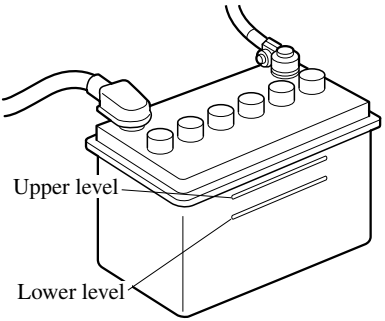
▼Battery Maintenance



To get the best service from a battery:
- Keep it securely mounted.
- Keep the top clean and dry.
- Keep terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse off spilled electrolyte immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle will not be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

▼Inspecting Electrolyte Level

A low level of electrolyte fluid will cause the battery to discharge quickly.



Inspect the electrolyte level at least once a week. If it's low, remove the caps and add enough distilled water to bring the level between the upper and lower level (illustration).

Don't overfill.
Examine the specific gravity of the electrolyte with a hydrometer, especially during cold weather. If it's low, recharge the battery.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tires

For reasons of proper performance, safety, and better fuel economy, always maintain recommended tire inflation pressures and stay within the recommended load limits and weight distribution.

⚠ WARNING

Using Different Tire Types:

Driving your vehicle with different types of tires is dangerous. It could cause poor handling and poor braking; leading to loss of control. Except for the limited use of the temporary spare tire, use only the same type tires (radial, bias-belted, bias-type) on all four wheels.

Using Wrong-Sized Tires:

Using any other tire size than what is specified for your Mazda (page 10-8) is dangerous. It could seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, tire clearance, and speedometer calibration. This could cause you to have an accident. Use only tires that are the correct size specified for your Mazda.

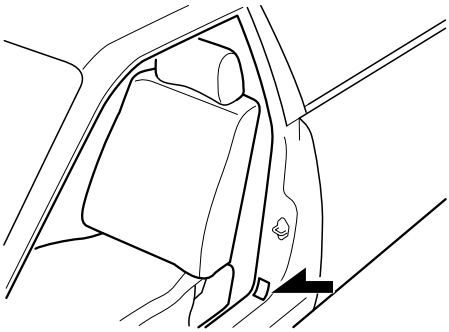
▼Tire Inflation Pressure

⚠ WARNING

Always inflate the tires to the correct pressure:

Overinflation or underinflation of tires is dangerous. Adverse handling or unexpected tire failure could result in a serious accident.
Refer to specification charts on page 10-8.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System* does not alleviate the need to check the tire condition every day, including whether the tires all look inflated properly. Inspect all tire pressure monthly (including the spare) when the tires are cold. Maintain recommended pressures for the best ride, handling, and minimum tire wear.
When checking the tire pressures, use of a digital tire pressure gauge is recommended.



Refer to the specification charts (page 10-8).

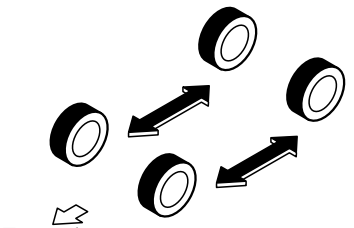
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

- *Always check tire pressure when tires are cold.*
- *Warm tires normally exceed recommended pressures. Don't release air from warm tires to adjust the pressure.*
- *Underinflation can cause reduced fuel economy, uneven and accelerated tire wear, and poor sealing of the tire bead, which will deform the wheel and cause separation of tire from rim.*
- *Overinflation can produce a harsh ride, uneven and accelerated tire wear, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.*
  Keep your tire pressure at the correct levels. If one frequently needs inflating, have it inspected.

▼Tire Rotation

To equalize tread wear, rotate the tires if irregular wear develops. According to the scheduled maintenance charts.Refer to Scheduled Maintenance on page 8-3. During rotation, inspect them for correct balance.



Do not include (TEMPORARY USE ONLY) spare tire in rotation.

Also, inspect them for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by one or a combination of the following:

- Incorrect tire pressure
- Improper wheel alignment
- Out-of-balance wheel
- Severe braking

After rotation, inflate all tire pressures to specification (page 10-8) and inspect the lug nuts for tightness.

⚠ CAUTION

Rotate unidirectional tires and radial tires that have an asymmetrical tread pattern or studs only from front to rear, not from side to side. Tire performance will be reduced if rotated from side to side.

▼Replacing a Tire

⚠ WARNING

Always use tires that are in good condition:

Driving with worn tires is dangerous. Reduced braking, steering, and traction could result in an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

(With Tire Pressure Monitoring System)

When replacing/repairing the tires or wheels or both, have the work done by an Authorized Mazda Dealer, or the tire pressure sensors may be damaged.

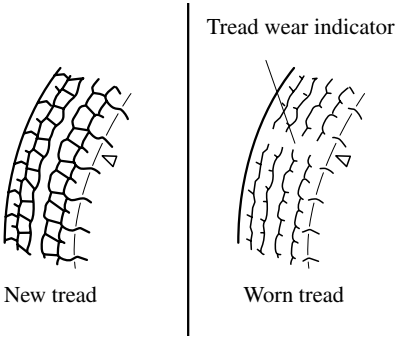
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE

(With Tire Pressure Monitoring System)

- *When tires with steel wire reinforcement in the sidewalls are used, the system may not function correctly even with a genuine wheel.*
  Refer to System Error Activation on page 5-31.
- *Be sure to install the tire pressure sensors whenever tires or wheels are replaced.*
  Refer to Tires and Wheels on page 5-31.

If a tire wears evenly, a wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread.
Replace the tire when this happens.



You should replace it before the band is across the entire tread.

NOTE

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used on the road. It is recommended that tires generally be replaced when they are 6 years or older. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. You should replace the spare tire when you replace the other road tires due to the aging of the spare tire. Regarding the manufacturing week and year is indicated with 4 digit.
Refer to The tire labeling on page 9-23.

▼Temporary Spare Tire

Inspect the temporary spare tire at least monthly to make sure it's properly inflated and stored.

NOTE

The temporary spare tire condition gradually deteriorates even if it has not been used.

The temporary spare tire is easier to handle because of its construction which is lighter and smaller than a conventional tire. This tire should be used only for an emergency and only for a short distance.

Use the temporary spare tire only until the conventional tire is repaired, which should be as soon as possible.

Maintain its pressure at 420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 60 psi).

⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not use your temporary spare tire rim with a snow tire or a conventional tire. Neither will properly fit and could damage both tire and rim.*
- *The temporary spare tire has a tread life of less than 5,000 km (3,000 miles). The tread life may be shorter depending on driving conditions.*
- *The temporary spare tire is for limited use, however, if the tread wear solid-band indicator appears, replace the tire with the same type of temporary spare (page 8-36).*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE
Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used on the road. It is recommended that tires generally be replaced when they are 6 years or older. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. You should replace the spare tire when you replace the other road tires due to the aging of the spare tire. Regarding the manufacturing week and year is indicated with 4 digit.
Refer to The tire labeling on page 9-23.

▼Replacing a Wheel

⚠ WARNING

Always use wheels of the correct size on your vehicle:
Using a wrong-sized wheel is dangerous. Braking and handling could be affected, leading to loss of control and an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- *A wrong-sized wheel may adversely affect:*
  - *Tire fit*
  - *Wheel and bearing life*
  - *Ground clearance*
  - *Snow-chain clearance*
  - *Speedometer calibration*
  - *Headlight aim*
  - *Bumper height*
  - *Tire Pressure Monitoring System*
  - *Limited-Slip Differential System*
- ***(With Tire Pressure Monitoring System)***
  - *When replacing/repairing the tires or wheels or both, have the work done by an Authorized Mazda Dealer, or the tire pressure sensors may be damaged.*
  - *The wheels equipped on your Mazda are specially designed for installation of the tire pressure sensors. Do not use non-genuine wheels, otherwise it may not be possible to install the tire pressure sensors.*

NOTE
Be sure to install the tire pressure sensors whenever tires or wheels are replaced. Refer to Tires and Wheels on page 5-31.

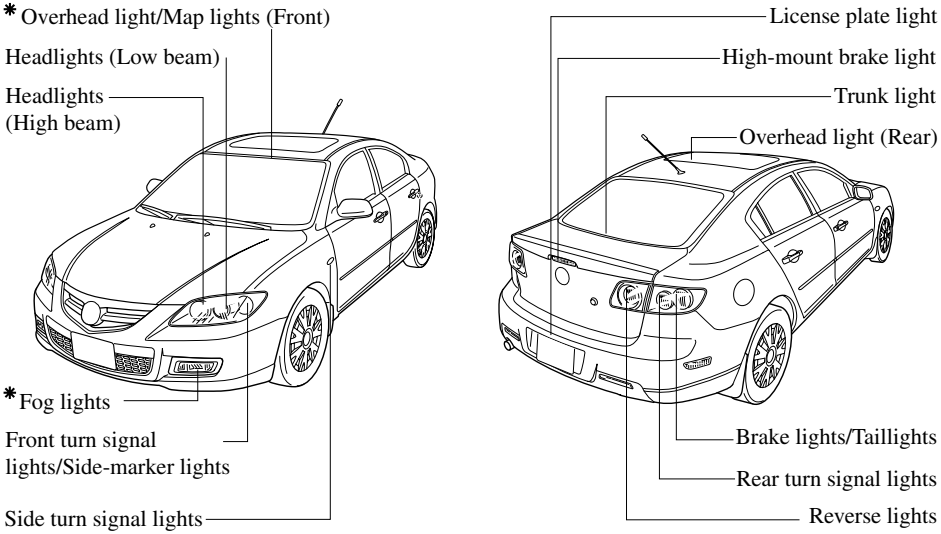
When replacing a wheel, make sure the new one is the same as the original factory wheel in diameter, rim width, and offset.

Proper tire balancing provides the best riding comfort and helps reduce tread wear. Out-of-balance tires can cause vibration and uneven wear, such as cupping and flat spots.

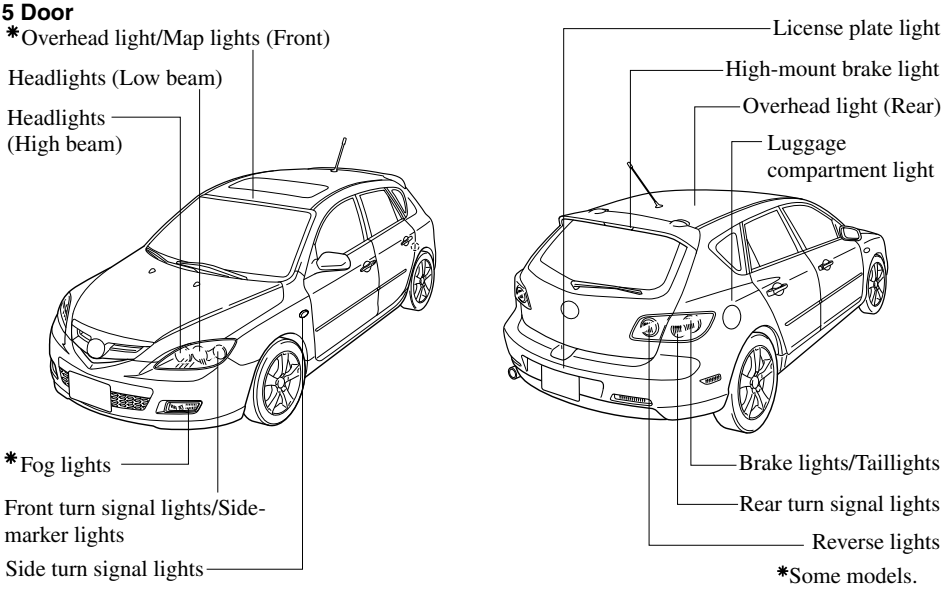
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Light Bulbs

4 Door



5 Door



*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Do not replace the xenon fusion bulbs yourself:

Replacing the xenon fusion bulbs yourself is dangerous. Because the xenon fusion bulbs require high voltage, you could receive an electric shock if the bulbs are handled incorrectly. Consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer when the replacement is necessary.

Never touch the glass portion of a halogen bulb with your bare hands and always wear eye protection when handling or working around the bulbs:

When a halogen bulb breaks, it is dangerous. These bulbs contain pressurized gas. If one is broken, it will explode and serious injuries could be caused by the flying glass. If the glass portion is touched with bare hands, body oil could cause the bulb to overheat and explode when lit.

Always keep halogen bulbs out of the reach of children:

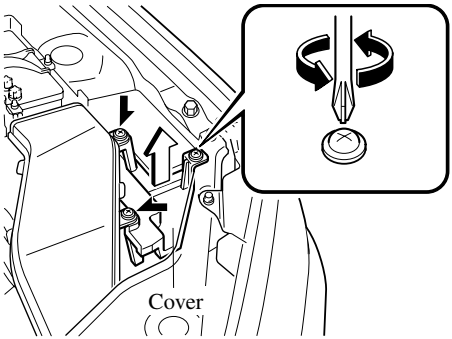
Playing with a halogen bulb is dangerous. Serious injuries could be caused by dropping a halogen bulb or breaking it some other way.

▼Replacing Exterior Light Bulbs

Replacing headlight bulbs

(Without turbocharger)

1. Make sure the ignition switch is turned off and the headlight switch is off.
2. Lift the hood.
3. When replacing the left headlight bulb, turn the cover screws counterclockwise and remove them with the cover.



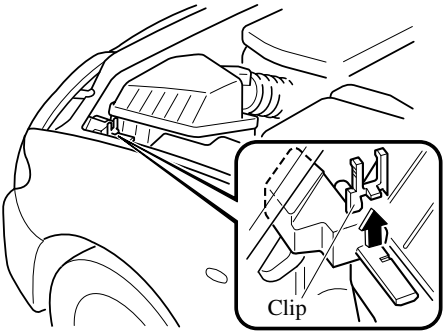
4. Find the high and low beam bulbs in the rear of the headlight unit.
   The outboard bulb is the LOW beam, and the inboard one is the HIGH beam.
   Refer to Light Bulbs on page 8-39.

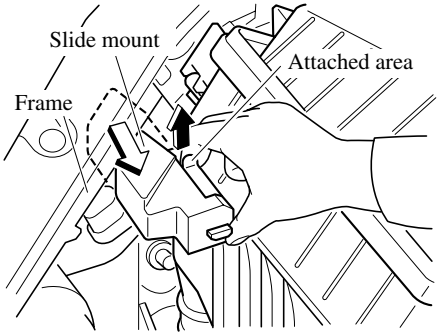
(With turbocharger)

1. Make sure the ignition switch is turned off and the headlight switch is off.
2. Lift the hood.

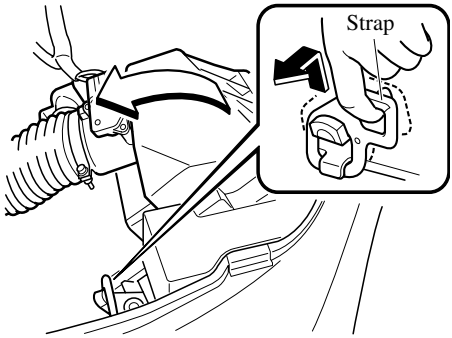
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Perform the following procedure when replacing the left headlight bulb. Remove the clip, grasp the attached area of the slide mount and lift it upward, and then slide the slide mount to a position where it does not interfere with the frame.





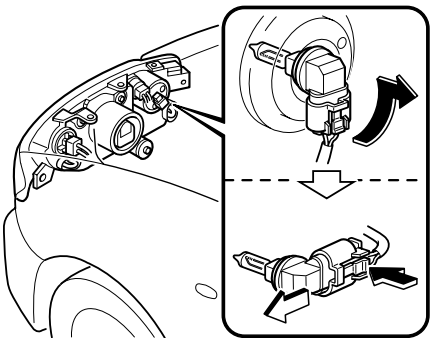
4. Remove the strap and raise the air filter.



5. Find the high and low beam bulbs in the rear of the headlight unit.
   The outboard bulb is the LOW beam, and the inboard one is the HIGH beam.
   Refer to Light Bulbs on page 8-39.

High-beam bulb

1. Turn the socket and bulb assembly counterclockwise and remove it. Carefully remove the headlight bulb from its socket in the reflector by gently pulling it straight backward out of the socket.
2. Disconnect the bulb from the electrical connector by pressing the tab on the connector with your finger and pulling the bulb upward.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE

- *To replace the bulb, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.*
- *If the halogen bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with rubbing alcohol before being used.*
- *Use the protective cover and carton for the replacement bulb to dispose of the old bulb promptly and out of the reach of children.*

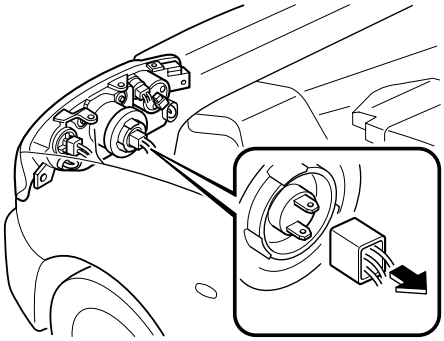
Low-beam bulb

(Xenon fusion bulb)

You cannot replace the low beam bulbs by yourself.
The bulbs must be replaced at an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

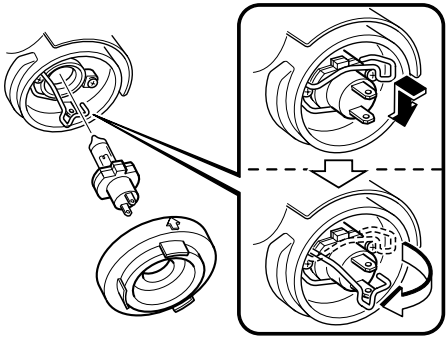
(Halogen bulb)

1. Detach the electrical connector from the bulb by pulling it to the rear.



2. Pull off the sealing cover.

3. Unhook the bulb retaining spring.



4. Swing the retaining spring out and away to free the headlight bulb.
5. Carefully remove the headlight bulb from the socket by pulling it straight back.
6. Replace the bulb.
7. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

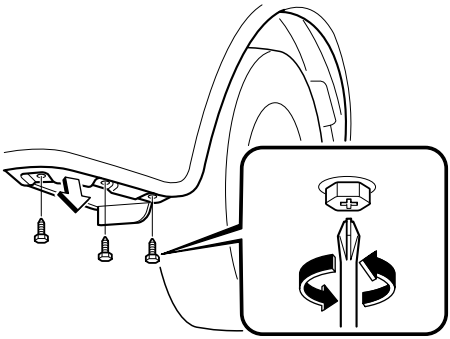
NOTE

- *To replace the bulb, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.*
- *If the halogen bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with rubbing alcohol before being used.*
- *Use the protective cover and carton for the replacement bulb to dispose of the old bulb promptly and out of the reach of children.*
- *When reinstalling the sealing cover, make sure ⇧ faces up.*

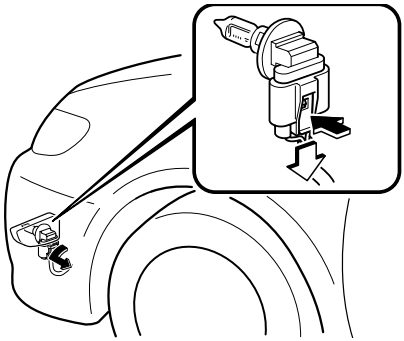
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing a fog light bulbs *

1. Turn the screw counterclockwise and remove it and then partially peel back the mudguard.



2. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb by pressing the tab on the connector with your finger and pulling the connector downward.
3. Turn the socket and bulb assembly to remove it. Carefully remove the bulb from its socket in the reflector by gently pulling it straight back out of the socket.



4. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE

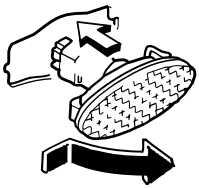
- *To replace the bulb, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.*
- *If the halogen bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with rubbing alcohol before being used.*
- *Use the protective cover and carton for the replacement bulb to dispose of the old bulb promptly and out of the reach of children.*

Front turn signal lights/Side-marker lights

Due to the complexity and difficulty of the procedure, the bulbs should be replaced by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Side turn signal lights

1. Slide the unit as shown in the figure to remove it.
2. Detach the electrical connector from the unit by pulling it to the rear.



3. Install the new side turn signal unit in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE

Bulb replacement is not possible because it is built into the unit. Replace the unit.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Brake lights/Taillights (4 Door)

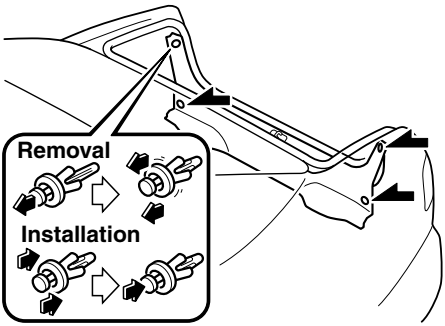
With LED bulb

Due to the complexity and difficulty of the procedure, the LED bulbs should be replaced by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

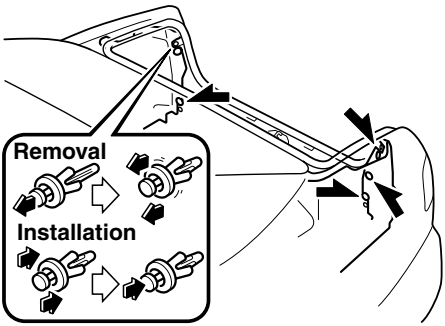
NOTE
LED bulb replacement is not possible. The rear combination component must be replaced.

With Non-LED bulb

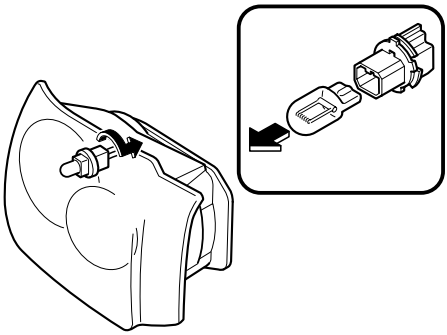
1. Pull the center of each plastic retainer and remove the retainers and the trunk end trim.



2. Pull the center of each plastic retainer, then remove the retainers, and then partially open the trunk side trim.



3. Turn the socket and bulb assembly counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



5. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE
To replace the bulb, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Brake lights/Taillights (5 Door)

With LED bulb

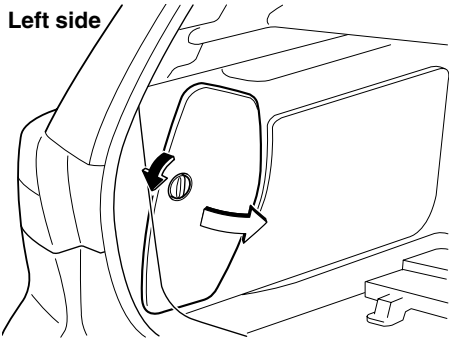
Due to the complexity and difficulty of the procedure, the LED bulbs should be replaced by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

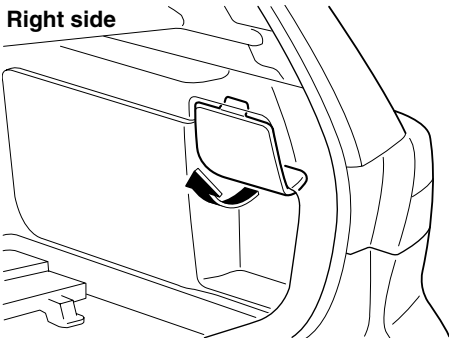
NOTE
LED bulb replacement is not possible. The rear combination component must be replaced.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

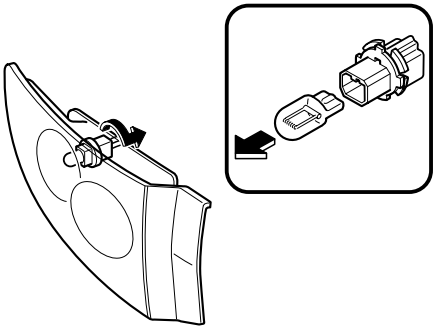
With Non-LED bulb

1. Remove the cover.





2. Turn the socket and bulb assembly counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



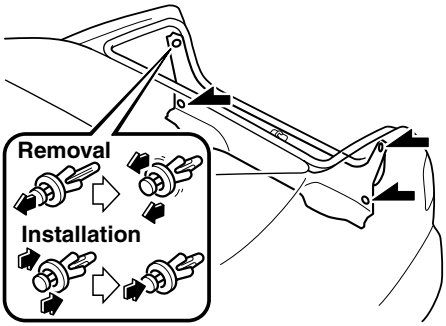
4. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE

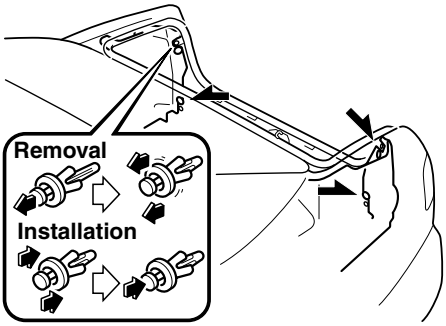
To replace the bulb, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Rear turn signal lights (4 Door)

1. Pull the center of each plastic retainer, and then remove the retainers and the trunk end trim.



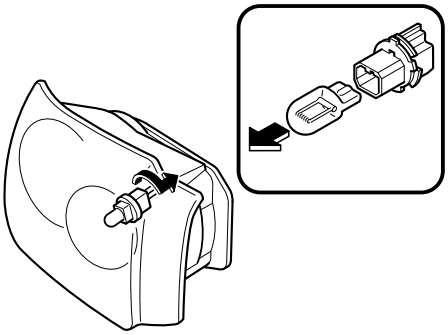
2. Pull the center of each plastic retainer and remove the retainers, and then partially open the trunk side trim.



3. Turn the socket and bulb assembly counterclockwise and remove it.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



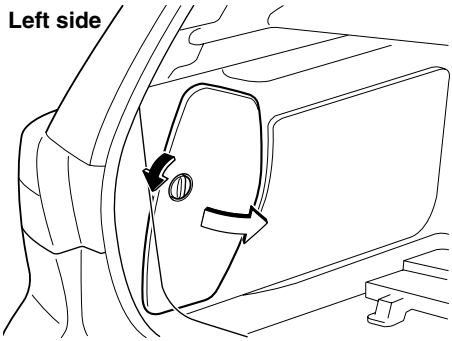
5. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

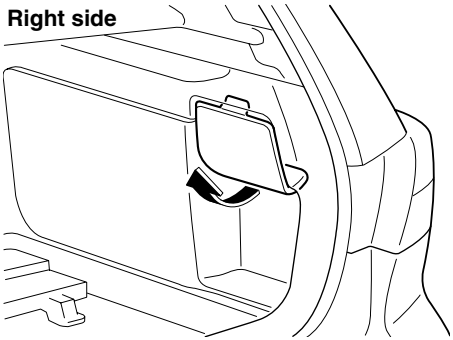
NOTE

To replace the bulb, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

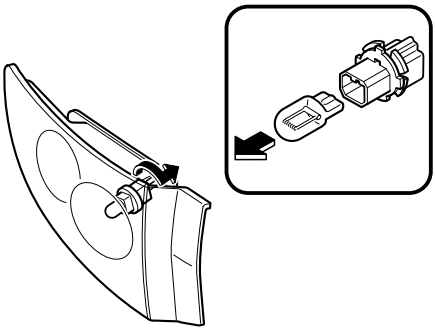
Rear turn signal lights (5 Door)

1. Remove the cover.





2. Turn the socket and bulb assembly counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



4. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE

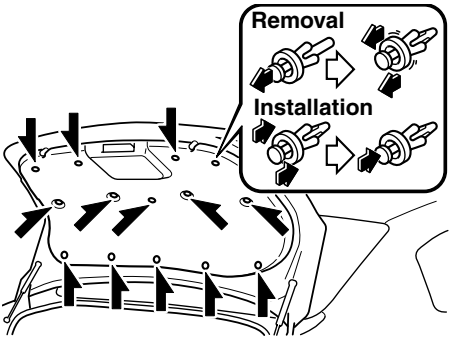
To replace the bulb, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

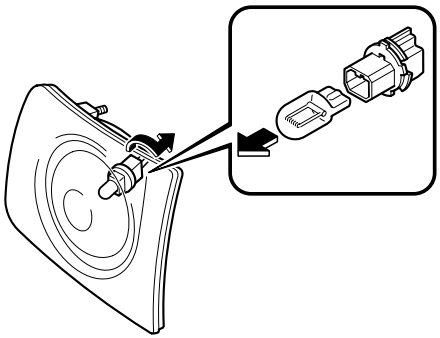
Reverse lights

4 Door

1. Pull the center section of the plastic retainer and remove the retainers, and then remove the trunk rear trim.



2. Turn the socket and bulb assembly counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



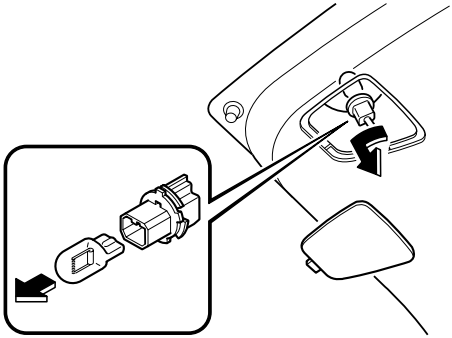
4. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE

To replace the bulb, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

5 Door

1. Remove the cover.
2. Turn the socket and bulb assembly counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



4. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

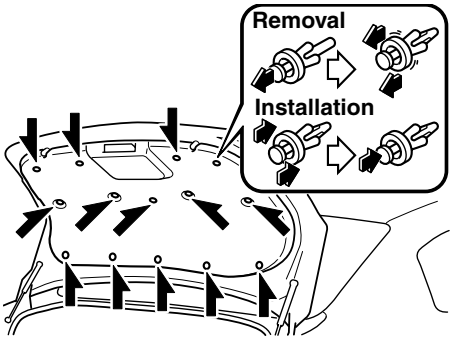
NOTE

To replace the bulb, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

High-mount brake light

4 Door

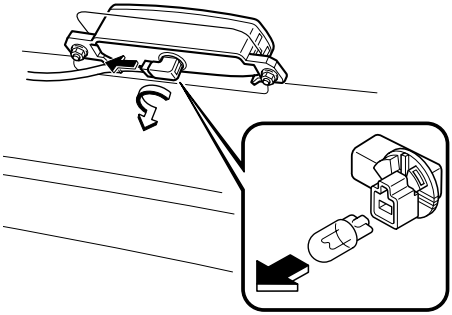
1. Pull the center of each plastic retainer, and then remove the retainers and the trunk rear trim.



2. Disconnect the electrical connector from the socket.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Turn the socket and bulb assembly counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



5. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

NOTE
To replace the bulb, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

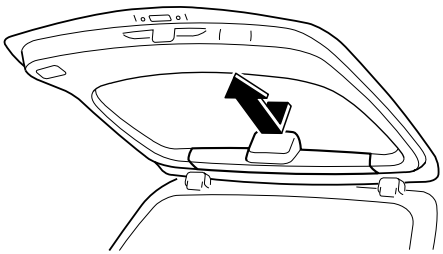
5 Door

With LED bulb

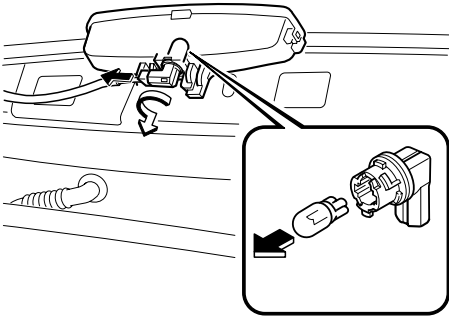
Due to the complexity and difficulty of the procedure, the LED bulbs should be replaced by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

With Non-LED bulb

1. Remove the liftgate upper trim.



2. Disconnect the electrical connector from the socket.
3. Turn the socket and bulb assembly counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



5. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

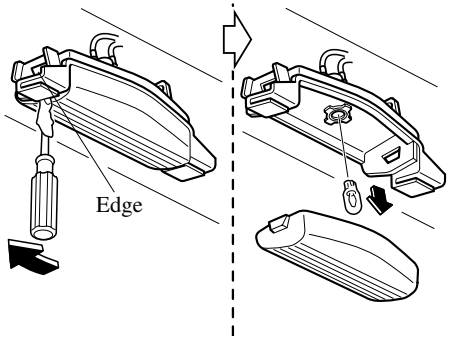
NOTE
To replace the bulb, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

License plate lights

1. Wrap a flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the lens, and then remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of the lens with a flathead screwdriver.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.



3. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

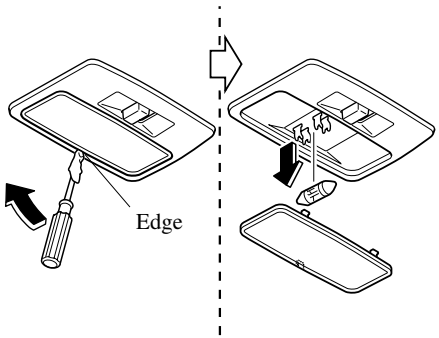
▼Replacing Interior Light Bulbs

Overhead light/Map lights (Front)*

Due to the complexity and difficulty of the procedure, the bulbs should be replaced by an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Overhead light (Rear)

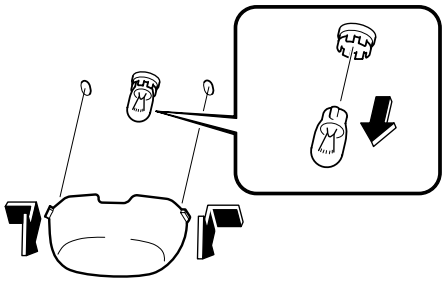
1. Wrap a small flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the lens, and then remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of the lens with the flathead screwdriver.
2. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.



3. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

Trunk light (4 Door)

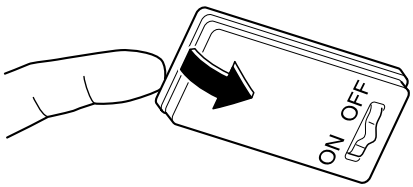
1. Press both sides of the lens cap to remove it.
2. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.



3. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

Luggage compartment light (5 Door)

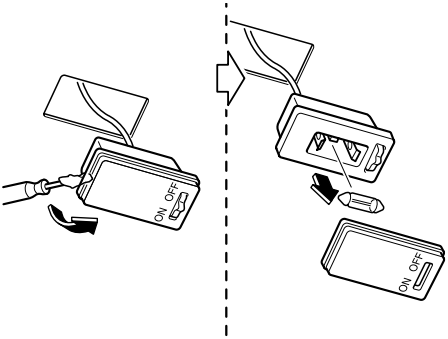
1. Insert your finger as shown in the figure and remove the unit.



2. Wrap a small flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the lens, and then remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of the lens with the flathead screwdriver.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.



4. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of removal.

Fuses

Your vehicle's electrical system is protected by fuses.

If any lights, accessories, or controls don't work, inspect the appropriate circuit protector. If a fuse has blown, the inside element will be melted.

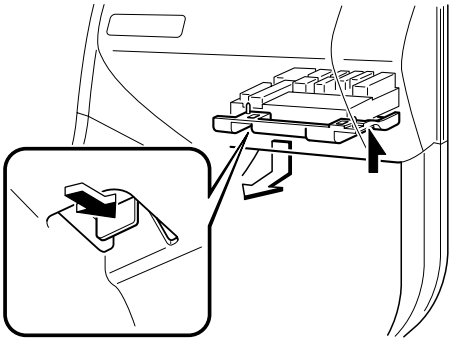
If the same fuse blows again, avoid using that system and consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.

▼Fuse Replacement

Replacing the fuses on the front passenger's side below the glove box

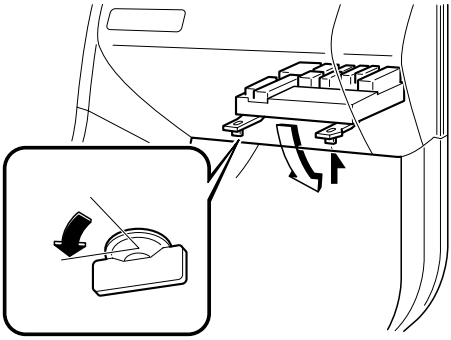
If the electrical system does not work, first inspect the fuses on the front passenger's side below the glove box.

1. Turn off the ignition switch and other switches.
2. Remove the cover.

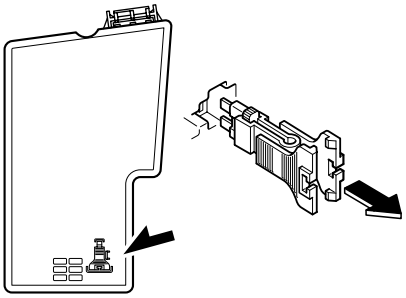


Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

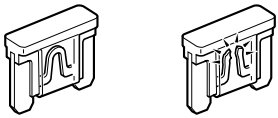
3. Turn the knobs counterclockwise and lower the fuse block.



4. Locate the position of the suspected fuse by using the chart inside the fuse block cover.
5. Pull the fuse straight out with the fuse puller provided on the inside of the engine compartment fuse block cover.



6. Inspect the fuse and replace it if it's blown.



Normal Blown

7. Insert a new fuse of the same amperage rating, and make sure it fits tightly. If it does not fit tightly, have an expert install it. We recommend an Authorized Mazda Dealer.
   If you have no spare fuses, borrow one of the same rating from a circuit not essential to vehicle operation, such as the MIRROR or CIGAR circuit.

⚠ CAUTION

Always replace a fuse with one of the same rating. Otherwise you may damage the electric system.

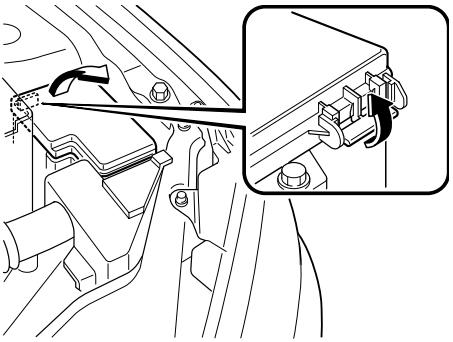
Replacing the fuses under the hood

If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the fuses in the cabin are normal, inspect the fuse block under the hood. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced. Follow these steps:

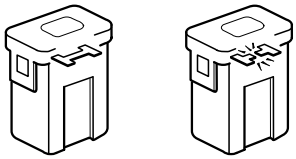
1. Turn off the ignition switch and all other switches.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Remove the fuse block cover.



3. If any fuse but the MAIN fuse is blown, replace it with a new one **of the same amperage rating**.

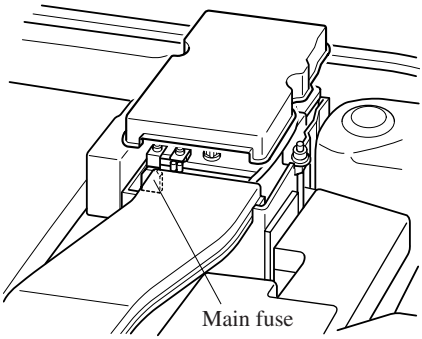


Normal Blown

⚠ WARNING

Do not replace the main fuse by yourself. Have an Authorized Mazda Dealer perform the replacement:

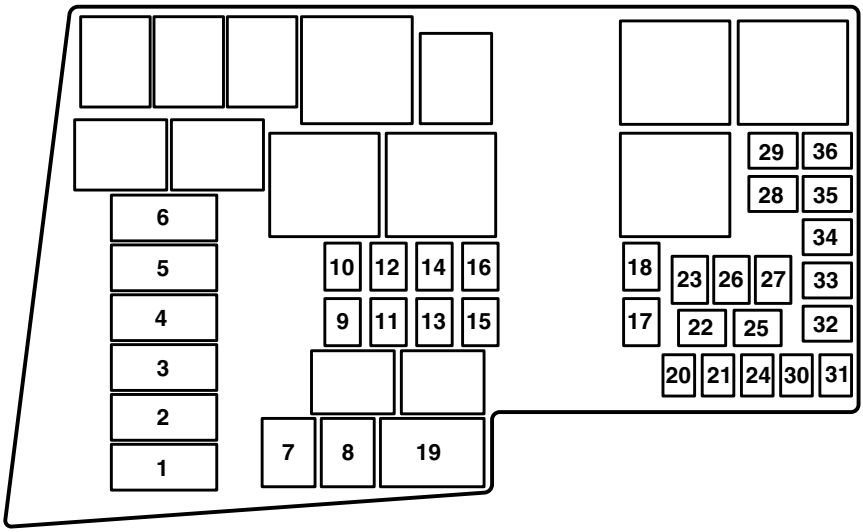
Replacing the fuse by yourself is dangerous because the MAIN fuse is a high current fuse. Incorrect replacement could cause an electrical shock or a short circuit resulting in a fire.



Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Fuse Panel Description

Fuse block (Engine compartment)



Without turbocharger

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
1	FAN	40A	Cooling fan
2	P/ST	80A	Power steering
3	BTN	40A	For protection of various circuits
4	HEAD	40A	Headlights
5	PTC	—	—
6	GLOW/P.SEAT	30A	Power seat
7	ABS 1	30A	ABS*, DSC*
8	ABS 2	20A	ABS*, DSC*
9	ENGINE	30A	For protection of various circuits
10	—	—	—
11	IG KEY 1	30A	Ignition switch
12	STARTER	20A	Starter clutch
13	IG KEY 2	30A	Ignition switch
14	GLOW 1	—	—
15	HEATER	40A	Blower motor
16	GLOW 2	—	—
17	DEFOG	40A	Rear window defroster

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

*Some models.

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
18	AUDIO	30A	Audio system (BOSE® Sound System-equipped model)
19	ABS IG	10A	ABS*, DSC*
20	FOG	15A	Front fog lights*
21	HORN	15A	Horn
22	DRL	10A	DRL*
23	H/CLEAN	—	—
24	F/PUMP	15A	Fuel pump
25	P/ST IG	10A	Power steering
26	A/C MAG	10A	Air conditioner*
27	ALT/TCM	15A	TCM*
28	GLOW SIG	—	—
29	P.OUTLET	15A	Power outlet
30	ENG +B	10A	PCM
31	ROOM	15A	Interior lights
32	ENG BAR 4	10A	O_2 sensors*
33	ENG BAR 3	10A	O_2 sensors
34	EGI INJ	10A	Injector
35	ENG BAR 1	10A	For protection of various circuits
36	ENG BAR 2	10A	PCM , Fuel pump

With turbocharger

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
1	FAN	70A	Cooling fan
2	—	—	—
3	BTN	40A	For protection of various circuits
4	HEAD	40A	Headlights
5	F/PUMP	30A	Fuel pump
6	—	—	—
7	ABS 1	30A	ABS, DSC
8	ABS 2	20A	ABS, DSC
9	ENGINE	30A	For protection of various circuits
10	INJECTOR	30A	Fuel injector
11	IG KEY1	30A	Ignition switch
12	STARTER	20A	Starter clutch
13	IG KEY2	30A	Ignition switch
14	—	—	—
15	HEATER	40A	Blower motor
16	—	—	—
17	DEFOG	40A	Rear window defroster
18	AUDIO	30A	Audio system (BOSE® Sound System-equipped model)

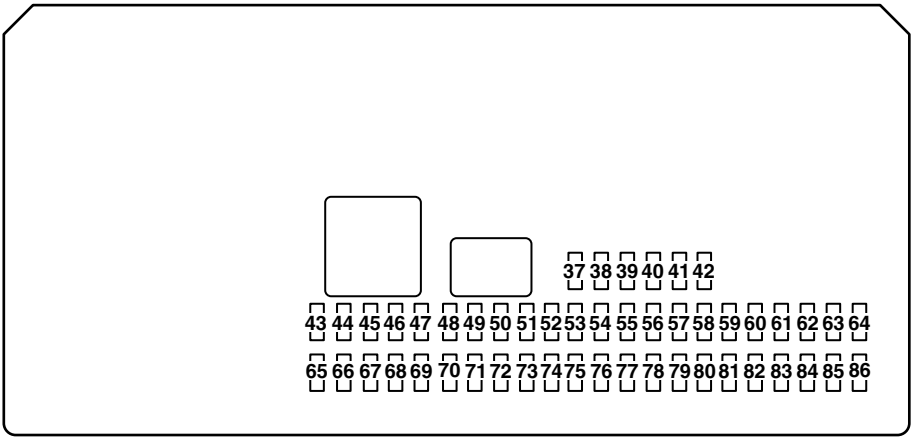
*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
19	ABS IG	10A	ABS
20	FOG	15A	Front fog lights
21	HORN	15A	Horn
22	DRL	10A	DRL *
23	H/CLEAN	—	—
24	ETC	10A	Elec. throttle valve
25	—	—	—
26	A/C MAG	10A	Air conditioner
27	—	—	—
28	—	—	—
29	P.OUTLET	15A	Power outlet
30	ENG +B	10A	PCM
31	ROOM	15A	Interior lights
32	—	—	—
33	ENG BAR 3	10A	O_2 sensors
34	—	—	—
35	ENG BAR 1	15A	For protection of various circuits
36	ENG BAR 2	10A	PCM, Fuel pump

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse block (Passenger's side)



DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
37	D/LOCK 2	15A	Double locking system*
38	STOP LAMP/HORN	10A	Stop Lamp, Horn
39	HEAD HIGH L	10A	Headlight high beam (LH)
40	HEAD HIGH R	10A	Headlight high beam (RH)
41	—	—	—
42	—	—	—
43	CIGAR	15A	Lighter
44	RADIO	7.5A	Audio system
45	MIRROR	10A	Power mirror*
46	TAIL R	7.5A	Taillight (RH), Parking light (RH), License plate lights
47	OBD	10A	For protection of various circuits
48	—	—	—
49	TR/LOCK	—	—
50	—	—	—
51	—	—	—
52	SUN ROOF	20A	Moonroof*
53	WASHER	20A	Windshield wiper and washer
54	—	—	—
55	P/WIND R	—	—

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
56	P/WIND L	—	—
57	ALARM	—	—
58	M/DEF	7.5A	Mirror Defroster*
59	—	—	—
60	HEAD LOW R	15A	Headlight low beam (RH), Headlight leveling
61	HEAD LOW L	15A	Headlight low beam (LH)
62	—	—	—
63	—	—	—
64	—	—	—
65	SAS	10A	Supplemental restraint system
66	METER	10A	Instrument cluster, Immobilizer system
67	IGNITION	20A	ABS*, DSC*, Power steering
68	WIPER	20A	Windshield wiper and washer
69	ENGINE	20A	For protection of various circuits
70	IG SIG	10A	Auto wiper*, Power window switch*
71	SAS 2	7.5A	Seat weight sensor
72	—	—	—
73	—	—	—
74	SEAT WARM	20A	Seat warmer*
75	D/LOCK 1	25A	Power door lock*
76	A/C	10A	Air conditioner*, Heater control unit
77	P/WIND L	30A	Power window (LH)*
78	P/WIND R	30A	Power window (RH)*
79	BACK	10A	Reverse lights
80	SUN ROOF	7.5A	Moonroof*
81	TAIL L	7.5A	Taillight (LH), Parking light (LH)
82	ILLUMI	7.5A	Illumination
83	—	—	—
84	—	—	—
85	—	—	—
86	—	—	—

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

How to Minimize Environmental Paint Damage

The paintwork on your Mazda represents the latest technical developments in composition and methods of application.

Environmental hazards, however, can harm the paint's protective properties, if proper care is not taken.

Here are some examples of possible damage, with tips on how to prevent them.

▼Etching Caused by Acid Rain or Industrial Fallout

Occurrence

Industrial pollutants and vehicle emissions drift into the air and mix with rain or dew to form acids. These acids can settle on a vehicle's finish. As the water evaporates, the acid becomes concentrated and can damage the finish.
And the longer the acid remains on the surface, the greater the chance is for damage.

Prevention

It is necessary to wash and wax your vehicle to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. These steps should be taken immediately after you suspect that acid rain has settled on your vehicle's finish.

▼Damage Caused by Bird Dropping, Insects, or Tree Sap

Occurrence

Bird droppings contain acids. If these aren't removed they can eat away the clear and color base coat of the vehicle's paintwork.

When insects stick to the paint surface and decompose, corrosive compounds form. These can erode the clear and color base coat of the vehicle's paintwork if they are not removed.

Tree sap will harden and adhere permanently to the paint finish. If you scratch the sap off while it is hard, some vehicle paint could come off with it.

Prevention

It is necessary to have your Mazda washed and waxed to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. This should be done as soon as possible.

Bird droppings can be removed with a soft sponge and water. If you are traveling and these are not available, a moistened tissue may also take care of the problem. The cleaned area should be waxed according to the instructions in this section.
Insects and tree sap are best removed with a soft sponge and water or a commercially available chemical cleaner.

Another method is to cover the affected area with dampened newspaper for one to two hours. After removing the newspaper, rinse off the loosened debris with water.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Water Marks

Occurrence

Rain, fog, dew, and even tap water can contain harmful minerals such as salt and lime. If moisture containing these minerals settles on the vehicle and evaporates, the minerals will concentrate and harden to form white rings. The rings can damage your vehicle's finish.

Prevention

It is necessary to wash and wax your vehicle to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. These steps should be taken immediately after you find water marks on your vehicle's finish.

▼Paint Chipping

Occurrence

Paint chipping occurs when gravel thrown in the air by another vehicle's tires hits your vehicle.

How to avoid paint chipping

Keeping a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead reduces the chances of having your paint chipped by flying gravel.

NOTE

- *The paint chipping zone varies with the speed of the vehicle. For example, when traveling at 90 km/h (56 mph), the paint chipping zone is 50 m (164 ft).*
- *In low temperatures a vehicle's finish hardens. This increases the chance of paint chipping.*
- *Chipped paint can lead to rust forming on your Mazda. Before this happens, repair the damage by using Mazda touch-up paint according to the instructions in this section. Failure to repair the affected area could lead to serious rusting and expensive repairs.*

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Exterior Care

Follow **all** label and container directions when using a chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warnings and cautions.

▼Maintaining the Finish

Washing

⚠CAUTION

When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition switch is in the ON position, the wipers may move automatically in the following cases:

- *If the windshield above the rain sensor is touched.*
- *If the windshield above the rain sensor is wiped with a cloth.*
- *If the windshield is struck with a hand or other object.*
- *If the rain sensor is struck with a hand or other object from inside the vehicle.*

Be careful not to pinch hands or fingers as it may cause injury, or damage the wipers. When washing or servicing your Mazda, make sure the wiper lever is in the OFF position.

To help protect the finish from rust and deterioration, wash your Mazda thoroughly and frequently, at least once a month, with lukewarm or cold water.

If the vehicle is washed improperly, the paint surface could be scratched. Here are some examples of how scratching could occur.

Scratches occur on the paint surface when:

- The vehicle is washed without first rinsing off dirt and other foreign matter.
- The vehicle is washed with a rough, dry, or dirty cloth.
- The vehicle is washed at a car wash that uses brushes that are dirty or too stiff.
- Cleansers or wax containing abrasives are used.

NOTE

- *Mazda is not responsible for scratches caused by automatic car washes or improper washing.*
- *Scratches are more noticeable on vehicles with darker paint finishes.*

To minimize scratches on the vehicle's paint finish:

- Rinse off any dirt or other foreign matter using lukewarm or cold water before washing.
- Use plenty of lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth when washing the vehicle. Do not use a nylon cloth.
- Rub gently when washing or drying the vehicle.
- Take your vehicle only to a car wash that keeps its brushes well maintained.
- Don't use abrasive cleansers or wax that contain abrasives.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

- *Don't use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may damage the protective coating; also, cleaners and detergents may discolor or deteriorate the paint.*
- *To prevent damaging the antenna, remove it before entering a car wash facility or passing beneath a low overhead clearance.*

Pay special attention to removing salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign material from the underside of the fenders, and make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial fallout, and similar deposits can damage the finish if not removed immediately. When prompt washing with plain water is ineffective, use a mild soap made for use on vehicles.

Thoroughly rinse off all soap with lukewarm or cold water. Don't allow soap to dry on the finish.

After washing the vehicle, dry it with a clean chamois to prevent water spots from forming.

⚠ WARNING

Dry wet brakes by driving very slowly and applying the brakes lightly until brake performance is normal:

Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

Waxing

Your vehicle needs to be waxed when water no longer beads on the finish. Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing it. In addition to the vehicle body, wax the metal trim to maintain its luster.

1. Use wax which contains no abrasives. Waxes containing abrasive will remove paint and could damage bright metal parts.
2. Use a good grade of natural wax for metallic, mica, and solid colors.
3. When waxing, coat evenly with the sponge supplied or a soft cloth.
4. Wipe off the wax with a soft cloth.

NOTE

A spot remover to remove oil, tar, and similar materials will usually also take off the wax. Rewax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle doesn't need it.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Repairing Damage to the Finish

Deep scratches or chips on the finish should be repaired promptly. Exposed metal quickly rusts and can lead to major repairs.

⚠ CAUTION

If your Mazda is damaged and needs metal parts repaired or replaced, make sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to all parts, both repaired and new. This will prevent them from rusting.

▼Bright-Metal Maintenance

- Use tar remover to remove road tar and insects. Never do this with a knife or similar tool.
- To prevent corrosion on bright-metal surfaces, apply wax or chrome preservative and rub it to a high luster.
- During cold weather or in coastal areas, cover bright-metal parts with a coating of wax or preservative heavier than usual. It would also help to coat them with noncorrosive petroleum jelly or some other protective compound.

⚠ CAUTION

Don't use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.

▼Underbody Maintenance

Road chemicals and salt used for ice and snow removal and solvents used for dust control may collect on the underbody. If not removed, they will speed up rusting and deterioration of such underbody parts as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system, even though these parts may be coated with anti-corrosive material.

Thoroughly flush the underbody and wheel housings with lukewarm or cold water at the end of each winter. Try also to do this every month.

Pay special attention to these areas because they easily hide mud and dirt. **It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it.**

The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be clogged. Water trapped there will cause rusting.

⚠ WARNING

Dry wet brakes by driving very slowly and applying the brakes lightly until brake performance is normal:

Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Aluminum Wheel Maintenance

A protective coating is provided over the aluminum wheels. Special care is needed to protect this coating.

NOTE

- *Do not use a wire brush or any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, or solvent on aluminum wheels. They may damage the coating.*
- *Only use a mild soap or neutral detergent and always use a sponge or soft cloth to clean the wheels.*
  Rinse thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on dusty or salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- *Avoid washing your vehicle in an automatic car wash that uses high-speed or hard brushes.*
- *If your aluminum wheels lose luster, wax the wheels.*

(With Tire Pressure Monitoring System)
Check special requirements for Tire Pressure Monitoring System.
Refer to Tires and Wheels on page 5-31.

Interior Care

▼Dashboard Precautions

Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oils from contacting the dashboard. They'll damage and discolor it. If these solutions get on the dashboard, wipe them off immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use glazing agents. Glazing agents contain ingredients which may cause discoloration, wrinkling, cracks and peeling.

▼Cleaning the Upholstery and Interior Trim

Vinyl

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl with a leather-and-vinyl cleaner.

Leather*

Real leather isn't uniform and may have scars, scratches, and wrinkles. Clean it with a leather cleaner or mild soap.

Wipe it with a **damp** soft cloth; then dry and buff it with a **dry** soft cloth.

Fabric

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean it with a mild soap solution good for upholstery and carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

To keep the fabric looking clean and fresh, take care of it. Otherwise its color will be affected, it can be stained easily, and its fire-resistance may be reduced.

⚠ CAUTION

Use only recommended cleaners and procedures. Others may affect appearance and fire-resistance.

Piano black panel*

The following parts are fitted with panels that have been treated with a special coating that resists scratching.

- Instrument panel side garnish
- Center panel
- Door switch panel
- Steering wheel (partial)

When the panel needs to be cleaned, use a soft cloth to wipe off dirt from the surface.

NOTE

Scratches or nicks on the panels resulting from the use of a hard brush or cloth may not be repairable.

▼Cleaning the Lap/Shoulder Belt Webbing

Clean the webbing with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Follow instructions. Don't bleach or dye the webbing; this may weaken it.

After cleaning the belts, thoroughly dry the belt webbing and make sure there is no remaining moisture before retracting them.

⚠ WARNING

Have an Authorized Mazda Dealer replace damaged seat belts immediately:

Using damaged seat belts is dangerous. In a collision, damaged belts cannot provide adequate protection.

▼Cleaning the Window Interiors

If the windows become covered with an oily, greasy, or waxy film, clean them with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the container.

⚠ CAUTION

Don't scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. You may damage the rear window defroster grid.

*Some models.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

9 Customer Information and Reporting Safety Defects

Important consumer information including warranties and add-on equipment.

Customer Assistance 9-2
- Customer Assistance (U.S.A.) 9-2
- Customer Assistance (Canada) 9-5
- Customer Assistance (Puerto Rico) 9-8
- Customer Assistance (Mexico) 9-9

Mazda Importer/Distributors 9-11
- Importer/Distributor 9-11
- Distributor in Each Area 9-11

Warranty 9-13
- Warranties for Your Mazda 9-13
- Outside the United States 9-14
- Outside Canada 9-15
- Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country (Except United States and Canada) 9-16
- Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories 9-17

Cell Phones 9-18
- Cell Phones Warning 9-18

Type Approval of Equipment 9-19
- Type Approval of Equipment 9-19

Uniform Tire Quality Grading System (UTQGS) 9-21
- Uniform Tire Quality Grading System (UTQGS) 9-21

Tire Information (U.S.A.) 9-23
- Tire Labeling 9-23
- Location of the Tire Label (Placard) 9-29
- Tire Maintenance 9-32
- Vehicle Loading 9-35
- Steps for Determining the Correct Load Limit: 9-42

Reporting Safety Defects 9-43
- Reporting Safety Defects (U.S.A.) 9-43
- Reporting Safety Defects (Canada) ... 9-44

Service Publications 9-45
- Service Publications 9-45

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance (U.S.A.)

Your complete and permanent satisfaction is our business. We are here to serve you. All Authorized Mazda Dealers have the knowledge and the tools to keep your Mazda vehicle in top condition.
If you have any questions or recommendations for improvement regarding the service of your Mazda vehicle or servicing by Mazda Dealer personnel, we recommend that you take the following steps:

NOTE
If it becomes necessary to have the components or wiring system for the supplementary restraint system modified to accommodate a person with certain medical conditions in accordance with a certified physician, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

▼STEP 1: Contact Your Mazda Dealer

Discuss the matter with an Authorized Mazda Dealer. This is the quickest and best way to address the issue.

- If your concern has not been resolved by the CUSTOMER RELATIONS, SALES, SERVICE, or PARTS MANAGER, then please contact the GENERAL MANAGER of the dealership or the OWNER.
- If it becomes necessary to have the components or wiring system for the supplementary restraint system modified to accommodate a person with certain medical conditions in accordance with a certified physician, go to STEP2.

▼STEP 2: Contact Mazda North American Operations

If for any reason you feel the need for further assistance after contacting your dealership management and it becomes necessary to have the components or wiring system for the supplementary restraint system modified to accommodate a person with certain medical conditions in accordance with a certified physician, you can reach Mazda North American Operations by one of the following ways.

Log on: at www.mazdaUSA.com

Answers to many questions, including how to locate or contact a local Mazda dealership in the U.S., can be found here.

E-mail: click on “Contact Us” located on the “Inside Mazda” tab, or at the bottom of the page at www.mazdaUSA.com

By phone at: 1 (800) 222-5500

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

By letter at:
Attn: Customer Assistance
Mazda North American Operations
7755 Irvine Center Drive
Irvine, CA 92618-2922
P.O. Box 19734
Irvine, CA 92623-9734

In order to serve you efficiently and effectively, please help us by providing the following information:

1. Your name, address, and telephone number
2. Year and model of vehicle
3. Vehicle Identification Number (17 digits, noted on your registration or title or located on the upper driver's side corner of the dash)
4. Purchase date and current mileage
5. Your dealer's name and location
6. Your question(s)

If you live outside the U.S.A., please contact your nearest Mazda Distributor.

▼STEP 3: Contact Better Business Bureau (BBB)

Mazda North American Operations realizes that mutual agreement on some issues may not be possible. As a final step to ensure that your concerns are being fairly considered, Mazda North American Operations has agreed to participate in a dispute settlement program administered by the Better Business Bureau (BBB) system, at no cost to you the consumer.

BBB AUTO LINE works with consumers and the manufacturer in an attempt to reach a mutually acceptable resolution of any warranty related concerns. If the BBB is not able to facilitate a settlement they will provide an informal hearing before an arbitrator.

You are required to resort to BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies under the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. § 2301 et seq. To the extent permitted by the applicable state “Lemon Law”, you are also required to resort to BBB AUTO LINE before exercising any rights or seeking remedies under the “Lemon Law”. If you choose to seek remedies that are not created by the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or the applicable state “Lemon Law”, you are not required to first use BBB AUTO LINE.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance

The whole process normally takes 40 days or less. The arbitration decision is not binding on you or Mazda else you accept the decision. For more information about BBB AUTO LINE, including current eligibility standards, please call 1-800-955-5100 or visit the BBB website at www.lemonlaw.bbb.org.

Being truly committed to customer satisfaction is more than a phrase with Mazda. We hope to satisfy every customer directly, but if there is ever a question about our decision, Mazda believes in providing a fast, fair and free method such as the BBB AUTO LINE to ensure Mazda delivers on our commitment to do the right thing for our customers!

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance (Canada)

▼Satisfaction Review Process

Your complete and permanent satisfaction is of primary concern to Mazda. All Authorized Mazda Dealers have both the knowledge and tools to keep your Mazda in top condition. In our experience, any questions, problems, or complaints regarding the operation of your Mazda or any other general service transactions are most effectively resolved by your dealer. If the cause of your dissatisfaction cannot adequately be addressed by normal dealership procedures, we recommend that you take the following steps:

▼STEP 1: Contact the Mazda Dealer

Discuss the matter with a member of dealership management. If the Service Manager has already reviewed your concerns, contact the owner of the dealership or its General Manager.

▼STEP 2: Contact the Mazda Regional Office

If you feel that you still require assistance, ask the dealer Service Manager to arrange for you to meet the local Mazda Service Representative. If more expedient, contact Mazda Canada Inc.Regional Office nearest you for such arrangements. Regional Office address and phone numbers are shown (page 9-7).

▼STEP 3: Contact the Mazda Customer Relations Department

If still not substantially satisfied, contact the Customer Relations Department, Mazda Canada Inc., 55 Vogell Road, Richmond Hill, Ontario, L4B 3K5 Canada TEL: 1 (800) 263-4680.
Provide the Department with the following information:

1. Your name, address and telephone number
2. Year and model of vehicle
3. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). Refer to the “Vehicle Identification Labels” page of section 10 of this manual for the location of the VIN.
4. Purchase date
5. Present odometer reading
6. Your dealer's name and location
7. The nature of your problem and/or cause of dissatisfaction

The Department, in cooperation with the local Mazda Service Representative, will review the case to determine if everything possible has been done to ensure your satisfaction.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance

Please recognize that the resolution of service problems in most cases requires the use of your Mazda dealer's service facilities, personnel and equipment. We urge you to follow the above three steps in sequence for most effective results.

▼Mediation/Arbitration Program

Occasionally a customer concern cannot be resolved through Mazda's Customer Satisfaction Program. If after exhausting the procedures in this manual your concern is still not resolved, you have another option.

Mazda Canada Inc. participates in an arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP). CAMVAP will advise you about how your concern may be reviewed and resolved by an independent third party through binding arbitration.

Your complete satisfaction is the goal of Mazda Canada Inc. and our dealers. Mazda's participation in CAMVAP makes a valuable contribution to our achieving that goal. There is no charge for using CAMVAP. CAMVAP results are fast, fair and final as the award is binding on both you and Mazda Canada Inc.

▼Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP)

If a specific item of concern arises, where a solution cannot be reached between an owner, Mazda, and/or one of it's dealers (that all parties cannot agree upon), the owner may wish to use the services offered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

CAMVAP uses the services of Provincial Administrators to assist consumers in scheduling and preparing for their arbitration hearings. However, before you can proceed with CAMVAP you must follow your Mazda dispute resolution process as outlined previously.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

CAMVAP is fully implemented in all provinces and territories.
Consumers wishing to obtain further information about the Program should contact the Provincial Administrator at 1 (800) 207-0685, or by contacting the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan Office at:

Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan
235 Yorkland Boulevard, suite 300
North York, Ontario
M2J 4Y8
http://camvap.ca
Provincial Administrators may be reached locally as listed below:

Province/Territory	CAMVAP Number
British Columbia & Yukon Territories	1 (800) 207-0685
Alberta & Northwest Territories	1 (800) 207-0685
Saskatchewan	1 (800) 207-0685
Manitoba	1 (800) 207-0685
Ontario	1 (800) 207-0685
Atlantic Canada	1 (800) 207-0685
Quebec	1 (800) 207-0685

▼Regional Offices

REGIONAL OFFICES	AREAS COVERED
MAZDA CANADA INC. WESTERN REGION 8171 ACKROYD ROAD SUITE 2000 RICHMOND B.C. V6X 3K1 (604) 303-5670	ALBERTA, BRITISH COLUMBIA, MANITOBA, SASKATCHEWAN, YUKON
MAZDA CANADA INC. CENTRAL/ATLANTIC REGION 55 VOGELL ROAD, RICHMOND HILL, ONTARIO, L4B 3K5 (905) 787-7000	ONTARIO
MAZDA CANADA INC. QUEBEC REGION 6111 ROUTE TRANS CANADIENNE POINTE CLAIRE, QUEBEC H9R 5A5 (514) 694-6390	QUEBEC, NEW BRUNSWICK, NOVA SCOTIA, PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND, NEWFOUNDLAND

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance (Puerto Rico)

Your complete and permanent satisfaction is our business. That is why all Authorized Mazda Dealers have the knowledge and the tools to keep your Mazda vehicle in top condition.
If you have any questions or recommendations for improvement regarding the service of your Mazda vehicle or servicing by Mazda Dealer personnel, we recommend that you take the following steps:

▼STEP 1

Discuss the matter with an Authorized Mazda Dealer. This is the quickest and best way to address the issue. If your concern has not been resolved by the CUSTOMER RELATIONS, SALES, SERVICE, or PARTS MANAGER, then please contact the GENERAL MANAGER of the dealership or the OWNER.

▼STEP 2

If, after following STEP 1, you feel the need for further assistance, please contact your area's Mazda representative (Indicated on the next page).

Please help us by providing the following information:

1. Your name, address, and telephone number
2. Year and model of vehicle
3. Vehicle Identification Number (17 digits, noted on your registration or title or located on the upper driver's side corner of the dash)
4. Purchase date and current mileage
5. Your dealer's name and location
6. Your question(s)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance (Mexico)

Your complete and permanent satisfaction is our business. We are here to serve you. All Authorized Mazda Dealers have the knowledge and the tools to keep your Mazda vehicle in top condition.
If you have any questions or recommendations for improvement regarding the service of your Mazda vehicle or servicing by Mazda Dealer personnel, we recommend that you take the following steps:

▼STEP 1: Contact Your Mazda Dealer

Discuss the matter with an Authorized Mazda Dealer. This is the quickest and best way to address the issue.

- If your concern has not been resolved by the CUSTOMER RELATIONS, SALES, SERVICE, or PARTS MANAGER, then please contact the GENERAL MANAGER of the dealership or the OWNER.
- If it becomes necessary to have the components or wiring system for the supplementary restraint system modified to accommodate a person with certain medical conditions in accordance with a certified physician, go to STEP2.

▼STEP 2: Contact Mazda Motor de Mexico

If for any reason you feel the need for further assistance after contacting your dealership management and it becomes necessary to have the components or wiring system for the supplementary restraint system modified to accommodate a person with certain medical conditions in accordance with a certified physician, you can reach Mazda Motor de Mexico by one of the following ways.

Log on: at www.MazdaMexico.com.mx

Answers to many questions, including how to locate or contact a local Mazda dealership in Mexico, can be found here.

E-mail: click on “Contactanos” at the top of the page at www.MazdaMexico.com.mx

By phone at: 1 (866) 315 0220

By letter at:
Attn: Customer Assistance
Mazda North American Operations
7755 Irvine Center Drive
Irvine, CA 92618-2922
P.O. Box 19734
Irvine, CA 92623-9734

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance

In order to serve you efficiently and effectively, please help us by providing the following information:

1. Your name, address, and telephone number
2. Year and model of vehicle
3. Vehicle Identification Number (17 digits, noted on your registration or title or located on the upper driver's side corner of the dash)
4. Purchase date and current mileage
5. Your dealer's name and location
6. Your question(s)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Importer/Distributor

▼U.S.A.

Mazda North American Operations
7755 Irvine Center Drive
Irvine, CA 92618-2922 U.S.A.
P.O. Box 19734
Irvine, CA 92623-9734 U.S.A.
TEL: 1 (800) 222-5500 (in U.S.A.)
(949) 727-1990 (outside U.S.A.)

Distributor in Each Area

▼CANADA

Mazda Canada Inc.
55 Vogell Road, Richmond Hill,
Ontario, L4B 3K5 Canada
TEL: 1 (800) 263-4680 (in Canada)
(905) 787-7000 (outside Canada)

▼PUERTO RICO/U.S. Virgin Island

Plaza Motors Corp. (Mazda de Puerto Rico)
P.O. Box 362722, San Juan, Puerto Rico 00936-2722
TEL: (787) 641-9300

▼MEXICO

Mazda Motor de Mexico
Circuito Guillermo Gonzalez Camarena N 1500 Col. Centro de Ciudad Santa Fe.
01210, Mexico, D.F.
TEL: Center of Attention to Clients:
01 (800) 016 2932. in Mexico

▼GUAM

Triple J Motors
157 South Marine Drive, Tamuning,
GUAM 96911 USA
P.O. Box 6066 Tamuning, Guam 96931
TEL: (671) 649-6555

▼SAIPAN

Pacific International Marianas, Inc. (d.b.a. Midway Motors)
P.O. Box 887 Saipan, MP 96950
TEL: (670) 234-7524

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Mazda Importer/Distributors

Triple J Saipan, Inc.
(d.b.a. Triple J Motors)
P.O. Box 500487 Saipan, MP 96950-0487
TEL: (670) 234-7133/3051

▼AMERICAN SAMOA

Polynesia Motors, Inc.
P.O. Box 1120, Pago Pago, American Samoa 96799
TEL: (684) 699-9347

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Warranties for Your Mazda

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Distributor Major Component Limited Warranty (Canada only)
- Safety Restraint System Limited Warranty
- Anti-perforation Limited Warranty
- Federal Emission Control Warranty (U.S.A. only)
  - Emission Defect Warranty
  - Emission Performance Warranty
- California Emission Control Warranty (U.S.A. only)
- Emission Control Warranty (Canada only)
- Replacement Parts and Accessories Limited Warranty
- Tire Warranty

NOTE

Detailed warranty information is provided with your Mazda.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Outside the United States

Government regulations in the United States require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for use in the United States may differ from those sold in other countries.

The differences may make it difficult or even impossible for your vehicle to receive satisfactory servicing in other countries. We strongly recommend that you NOT take your Mazda outside the United States. However, in the event that you are moving to Canada permanently, Mazda vehicles built for use in the United States could be eligible for exportation to Canada with specific vehicle modifications to comply with the Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety requirements (CMVSS).

NOTE

The above is applicable for a permanent import/export situation and not related to travelers on vacation.

You may have the following problems if you do take your vehicle outside of the United States:

- Recommended fuel may be unavailable. Any kind of leaded fuel or low-octane fuel will affect vehicle performance and damage the emission controls and engine.
- Proper repair facilities, tools, testing equipment, and replacement parts may not be available.

Please refer to your Manufacturer's Warranty Booklet for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Outside Canada

Government regulations in Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety regulations. Therefore, vehicles built for use in Canada may differ from those sold in other countries.

The differences may make it difficult or even impossible for your vehicle to receive satisfactory servicing in other countries. We strongly recommend that you NOT take your Mazda outside Canada. However, in the event that you are moving to the United States permanently, Mazda vehicles built for use in Canada could be eligible for exportation to the United States with specific vehicle modifications to comply with the United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS).

NOTE

The above is applicable for a permanent import/export situation and not related to travelers on vacation.

You may have the following problems if you do take your vehicle outside of Canada:

- Recommended fuel may be unavailable. Any kind of leaded fuel or low-octane fuel will affect vehicle performance and damage the emission controls and engine.
- Proper repair facilities, tools, testing equipment, and replacement parts may not be available.

Please refer to your Manufacturer's Warranty Booklet for more information.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country (Except United States and Canada)

Government regulations in your country could require that automobiles meet specific emission and safety standards.
Vehicles built for your country may differ from those built for other countries. In addition to registration problems, satisfactory service may be difficult or even impossible in another country.

The fuel specified for your vehicle may be unavailable.

Parts, servicing techniques, and tools necessary to maintain and repair your vehicle may be unavailable.

There might not be an Authorized Mazda Dealer in the country you plan to take your vehicle.

The Mazda warranty is valid only in certain countries.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories

Non-genuine parts and accessories for Mazda vehicles can be found in stores.
These may fit your vehicle, but they are not approved by Mazda for use with Mazda vehicles. When you install non-genuine parts or accessories, they could affect your vehicle's performance or safety systems; the Mazda warranty doesn't cover this. Before you install any non-genuine parts or accessories, consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Always consult an Authorized Mazda Dealer before you install non-genuine parts or accessories:

Installation of non-genuine parts or accessories is dangerous. Improperly designed parts or accessories could seriously affect your vehicle's performance or safety systems. This could cause you to have an accident or increase your chances of injuries in an accident.

Be very careful in choosing and installing add-on electrical equipment, such as mobile telephones, two-way radios, stereo systems, and car alarm systems:

Incorrectly choosing or installing improper add-on equipment or choosing an improper installer is dangerous. Essential systems could be damaged, causing engine stalling, air-bag (SRS) activation, ABS inactivation, or a fire in the vehicle.

Mazda assumes no responsibility for death, injury, or expenses that may result from the installation of add-on non-genuine parts or accessories.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Cell Phones Warning

⚠ WARNING

Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of communication equipment in vehicles in your State or Province:

Use of any electrical devices such as cell phones, computers, portable radios, vehicle navigation or other devices by the driver while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Dialing a number on a cell phone while driving also ties-up the driver's hands. Use of these devices will cause the driver to be distracted and could lead to a serious accident. If a passenger is unable to use the device, pull off the right-of-way to a safe area before use. If use of a cell phone is necessary despite this warning, use a hands-free system to at least leave the hands free to drive the vehicle. Never use a cell phone or other electrical devices while the vehicle is moving and, instead, concentrate on the full-time job of driving.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Type Approval of Equipment

Immobilizer system

Type approval of the Antenna Coil Transceiver	
Country	Approval Number
CDN	Canada: 3043104475A5 3
USA	FCC ID: NT8-15607PAT3XCVR
MX	RLVVIVP03-324

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Type Approval of Equipment

Keyless entry system

Type approval of Radio Keyless Entry			
Country	Approval Number	Country	Approval Number
MX	RLVMATX06-161		

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Uniform Tire Quality Grading System (UTQGS)

This information relates to the tire grading system developed by the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration for grading tires by tread wear, traction, and temperature performance.

▼Tread Wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.
For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm because of variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

▼Traction-AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include acceleration cornering (turning), hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

▼Temperature-A, B, C

The temperature grades A (the highest), B, and C, represent the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.
Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperatures can lead to sudden tire failure.

Grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Uniform Tire Quality Grading System (UTQGS)

⚠ WARNING

Keep your vehicle's tires properly inflated and not overloaded:

Driving with improperly inflated or overloaded tires is dangerous. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded.

These grades will be added to the sidewalls of passenger vehicle tires over the next several years according to a schedule established by the NHTSA and the tire manufacturers.

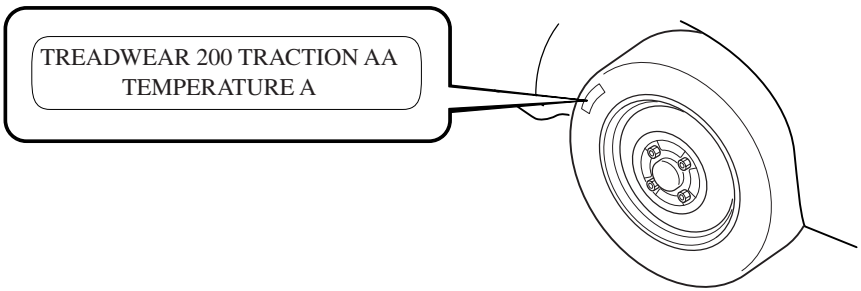
The grade of tires available as standard or optional equipment on Mazda vehicles may vary with respect to grade.

ALL PASSENGER VEHICLE TIRES MUST CONFORM TO THESE GRADES AND TO ALL OTHER FEDERAL TIRE-SAFETY REQUIREMENTS.

▼Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.
For example:
Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

UTQGS MARK (example)



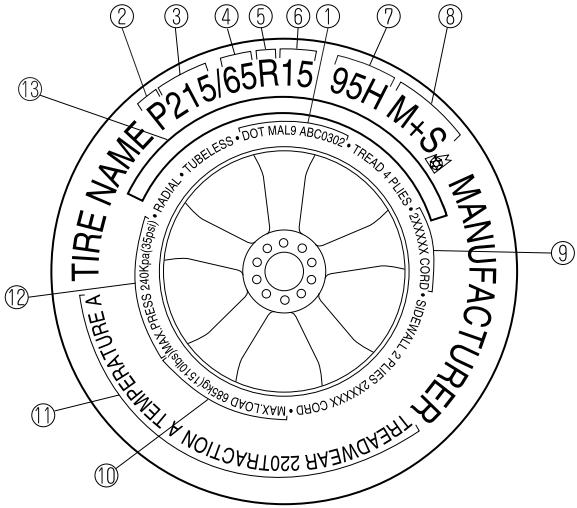
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Labeling

Federal law requires tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a tire identification number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

▼Information on Passenger Vehicle Tires

Please refer to the diagram below.



1. TIN: U.S. DOT tire identification number
2. Passenger car tire
3. Nominal width of tire in millimeters
4. Ratio of height to width (aspect ratio)
5. Radial
6. Rim diameter code
7. Load index & speed symbol
8. Severe snow conditions
9. Tire ply composition and materials used
10. Max. load rating

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

11. Tread wear, traction and temperature grades
12. Max. permissible inflation pressure
13. SAFETY WARNING

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size and load index rating. Here is an explanation of the various components of that tire size and load index rating. Note that the tire size and load index rating may be different from the example.

P

Indicates a tire that may be installed on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks as designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA).

NOTE

If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

215

"215" is the nominal width of the tire in millimeters. This three-digit number gives the width in millimeters of the tire from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

65

"65" is the aspect ratio. This two-digit number indicates the tire's ratio of height to width.

R

"R" is the tire construction symbol. R indicates "Radial ply construction".

15

"15" is the wheel rim diameter in inches.

95

"95" is the Load Index. This two-or three-digit number indicates how much weight each tire can support.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

H

"H" is the speed rating. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed for which the use of the tire is rated.

Letter Rating	Speed Rating
Q	99 mph
R	106 mph
S	112 mph
T	118 mph
U	124 mph
H	130 mph
V	149 mph
W	168* mph
Y	186* mph

* For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph, tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For tires with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph, tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

M+S or M/S: Mud and Snow

AT: All Terrain.
AS: All Season. The "M+S" or "M/S" indicates that the tire has some functional use in mud and snow.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This begins with the letters "DOT" which indicates the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was manufactured. For example, the numbers 457 means the 45st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, the number 2102 means the 21th week of 2002. The other numbers are marketing codes used at the manufacturer's discretion. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire Ply Composition and Materials Used

The number of plies indicates the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. In general, the greater the number of plies, the more weight a tire can support. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the tire materials, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and other.

Maximum Load Rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire.

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire under normal driving conditions.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Information (U.S.A.)

Tread Wear, Traction and Temperature Grades

Tread wear: The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
Traction: The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
Temperature: The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Snow Tires

In some heavy snow areas, local governments may require true snow tires, those with very deeply cut tread. These tires should only be used in pairs or placed on all four wheels. Make sure you purchase snow tires that are the same size and construction type as the other tires on your vehicle.

SAFETY WARNING

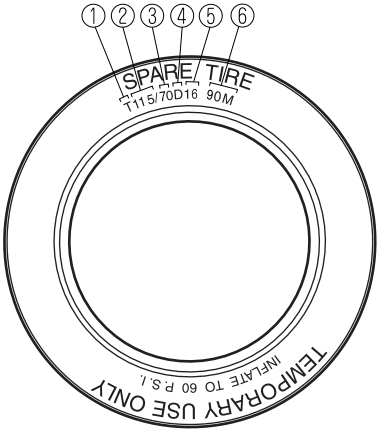
The following safety warning appears on the tire's sidewall.
SERIOUS INJURY MAY RESULT FROM:

- EXPLOSION OF TIRE/RIM ASSEMBLY DUE TO IMPROPER MOUNTING-MATCH TIRE DIAMETER TO RIM DIAMETER; NEVER EXCEED 40 psi (275 kPa) TO SEAT BEADS-ONLY SPECIALLY TRAINED PERSONS SHOULD MOUNT TIRES.
- TIRE FAILURE DUE TO UNDER-INFLATION/OVERLOADING/DAMAGE-FOLLOW OWNER'S MANUAL AND PLACARD IN VEHICLE-FREQUENTLY CHECK INFLATION PRESSURE AND INSPECT FOR DAMAGE.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Information on Temporary Tires

Please refer to the diagram below.



1. Temporary tires
2. Nominal width of tire in millimeters
3. Ratio of height to width (aspect ratio)
4. Diagonal
5. Rim diameter code
6. Load index&speed symbol

T115/70D 16 90M is an example of a tire size and load index rating. Here is an explanation of the various components of that tire size and load index rating. Note that the tire size and load index rating may be different from the example.

T

Indicates a tire that may be installed on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks as designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA).

115

“115” is the nominal width of the tire in millimeters. This three-digit number gives the width in millimeters of the tire from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Information (U.S.A.)

70

“70” is the aspect ratio. This two-digit number indicates the tire's ratio of height to width.

D

“D” is the tire construction symbol. D indicates “diagonal ply construction”.

16

“16” is the wheel rim diameter in inches.

90

“90” is the Load Index. This two-or three-digit number indicates how much weight each tire can support.

M

“M” is the speed rating. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed for which the use of the tire is rated.

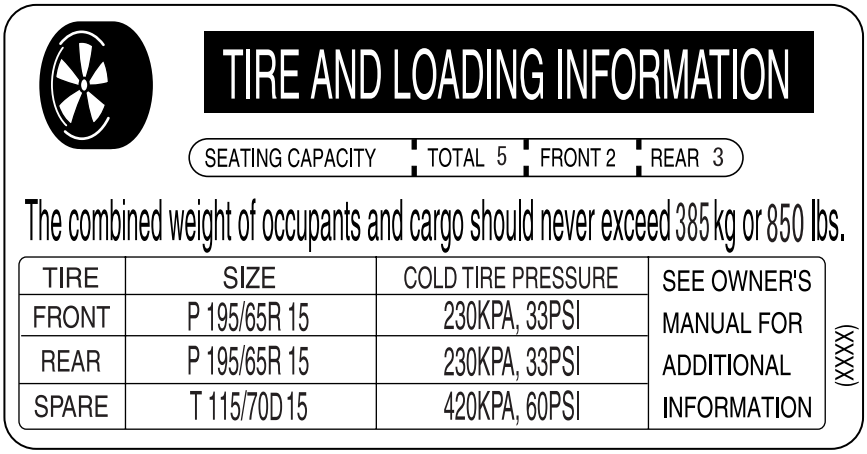
Letter Rating	Speed Rating
M	81 mph

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Location of the Tire Label (Placard)

You will find the tire label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information on the driver's side B-pillar or on the edge of the driver's door frame.

SAMPLE


TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY | TOTAL 5 | FRONT 2 | REAR 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 385 kg or 850 lbs.

TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	P 195/65R 15	230KPA, 33PSI	
REAR	P 195/65R 15	230KPA, 33PSI	
SPARE	T 115/70D 15	420KPA, 60PSI	

(XXXX)

▼Recommended Tire Inflation Pressure

On the tire label you will find the recommended tire inflation pressure in both kPa and psi for the tires installed as original equipment on the vehicle. It is very important that the inflation pressure of the tires on your vehicle is maintained at the recommended pressure. You should check the tire pressure regularly to insure that the proper inflation pressure is maintained.
Refer to Tires on page 10-8.

NOTE

Tire pressures listed on the vehicle placard or tire information label indicate the recommended cold tire inflation pressure, measured when the tires are cold, after the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours. As you drive, the temperature in the tire warms up, increasing the tire pressure.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Information (U.S.A.)

⚠ WARNING

Always check the tire inflation pressures on a regular basis according to the recommended tire inflation pressure on the tire label and in conjunction with the information in this owner's manual:

Driving your vehicle with under-inflated tires is dangerous.
Under-inflation is the most common cause of failures in any kind of tire and may result in severe cracking, tread separation or "blowout", with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It results in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!
It is impossible to determine whether or not tires are properly inflated just by looking at them.

▼Checking Tire Pressure

1. When you check the air pressure, make sure the tires are cold —meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.
2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire.
3. Firmly press a tire gauge onto the valve.
4. Add air to achieve recommended air pressure.
5. If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.
6. Replace the valve cap.
7. Repeat with each tire, including the spare.

NOTE
Some spare tires require higher inflation pressure.

8. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.
9. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts, bulges, cracks or other irregularities.

NOTE
Warm tires normally exceed recommended pressures. Don't release air from warm tires to adjust the pressure.
Under-inflation can cause serious failures and accidents.
Over-inflation can produce a harsh ride and the greater possibility of damage from road hazards.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Glossary of Terms

Tire Placard: A label indicating the OE tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure, and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
Tire Identification Number (TIN): A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size, and date of manufacture.
Inflation Pressure: A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
kPa: Kilopascal, the metric unit for air pressure.
psi: Pounds per square inch, the English unit for air pressure.
B-pillar: The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
Original Equipment (OE): Describes components originally equipped on the vehicle.
Vehicle Load Limit: The maximum value of the combination weight of occupants and cargo.
Bead Area of the Tire: Area of the tire next to the rim.
Sidewall Area of the Tire: Area between the bead area and the tread.
Tread Area of the Tire: Area on the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when it's mounted on the vehicle.

Seating capacity means the total allowable number of vehicle occupants. Seating capacity is described on the tire label.

Production options weight is the combination weight of installed regular production options weighing over 2.3 kilograms in excess of the standard items which they replace, and not previously considered in the curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Rim is the metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Maintenance

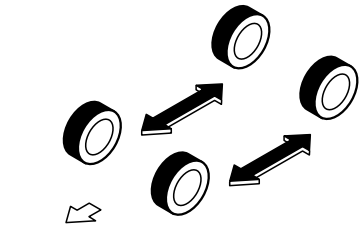
Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Here are some important maintenance points:

▼Tire Inflation Pressure

Inspect all tire pressure monthly (including the spare) when the tires are cold. Maintain recommended pressures for the best ride, top handling, and minimum tire wear. Use the pressures specified on the vehicle tire information placard or tire label for optimum service.

▼Tire Rotation

To equalize tread wear, rotate the tires every 12,000 km (7,500 miles) or sooner if irregular wear develops. During rotation, inspect them for correct balance.



Inspect the tires for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by one or a combination of the following:

- Incorrect tire pressure
- Improper wheel alignment
- Out-of-balance wheel
- Severe braking

After rotation, inflate all tire pressures to specification (page 10-8) and inspect the lug nuts for tightness.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Rotate unidirectional tires and radial tires that have an asymmetrical tread pattern or studs only from front to rear, not from side to side. Tire performance will be weakened if rotated from side to side.

(With limited-slip differential)
Don't use the following:
- *Tires not of the designated size*
- *Tires of different sizes or types at the same time*
- *Tires not sufficiently inflated*

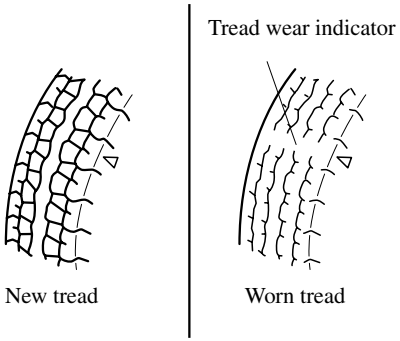
If these instructions aren't followed, the rotation of the left and right wheels will be different and will thus apply a constant load on the limited-slip differential. This will cause a malfunction.

▼Replacing a Tire

⚠ WARNING

Always use tires that are in good condition:
Driving with worn tires is dangerous. Reduced braking, steering, and traction could result in an accident.

If a tire wears evenly, a wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. Replace the tire when this happens.



You should replace it before the band is across the entire tread.

NOTE
Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used on the road. It is recommended that tires generally be replaced when they are 6 years or older. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. You should replace the spare tire when you replace the other road tires due to the aging of the spare tire. Regarding the manufacturing week and year is indicated with 4 digit. Refer to The tire labeling on page 9-23.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Information (U.S.A.)

▼Safety Practices

The way you drive has a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety. So cultivate good driving habits for your own benefit.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do no run over curbs or hit the tire against the curb when parking

⚠ CAUTION

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tire for damage. If the tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove the tire and rim and replace it with your spare tire. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest vehicle or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Loading

⚠ WARNING

Do not taw a trailer with this vehicle:

Towing a trailer with this vehicle is dangerous because it has not been designed to tow a trailer and doing so will affect the drive system which could result in vehicle damage.

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Safety Certification Label and Tire and Load Information Label:

⚠ WARNING

Overloaded Vehicle:

Overloading a vehicle is dangerous. The results of overloading can have serious consequences in terms of passenger safety. Too much weight on a vehicle's suspension system can cause spring or shock absorber failure, brake failure, handling or steering problems, irregular tire wear, tire failure or other damage. Overloading makes a vehicle harder to drive and control. It also increases the distance required for stopping. In cases of serious overloading, brakes can fail completely, particularly on steep grades. The load a tire will carry safely is a combination of the size of the tire, its load range, and corresponding inflation pressure.

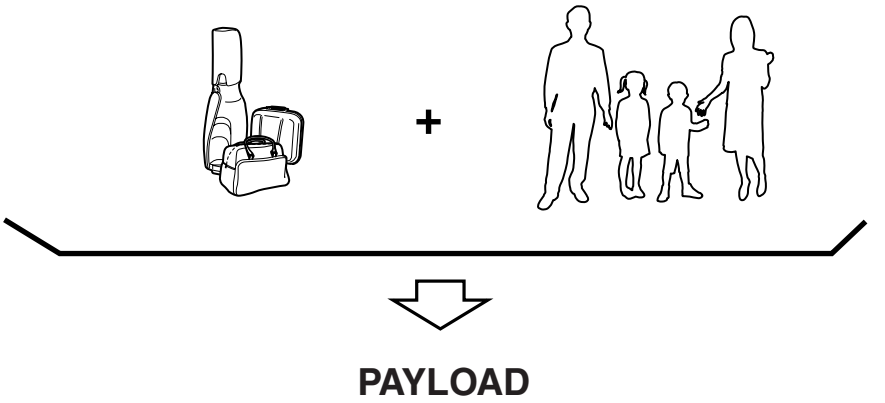
Never overload the vehicle and always observe the vehicle's weight ratings from the vehicle's Safety Certification and Tire and Load Information labels.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Information (U.S.A.)

Base Curb Weight is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

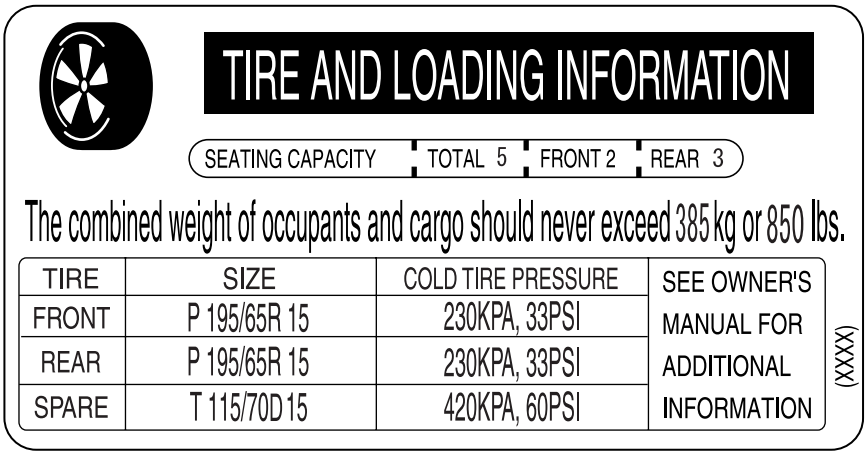
Vehicle Curb Weight is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

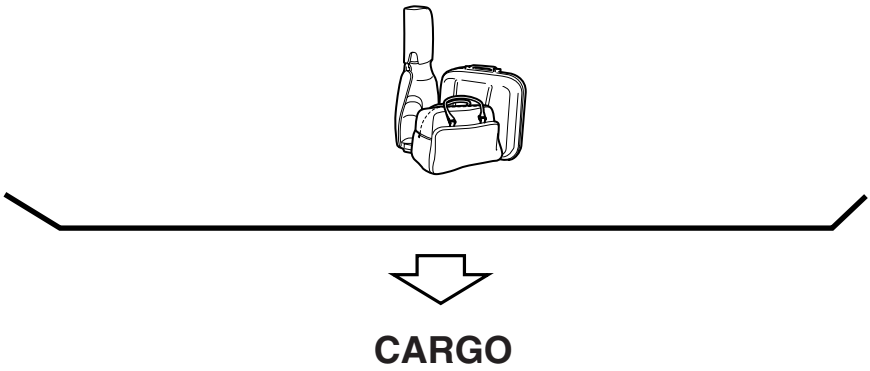


Payload is the combination weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is designed to carry. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire and Load Information label on the driver's door frame or door pillar. Look for “THE COMBINATION WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg or XXX lbs” for your maximum payload. The payload listed on the tire label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the tire label in order to be accurate.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

SAMPLE





Cargo Weight includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

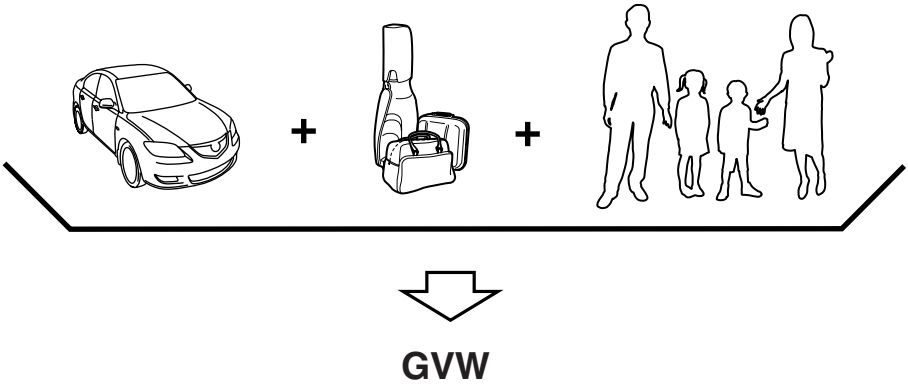
The cargo weight limit decreases depending on the number of vehicle occupants. The cargo weight limit can be calculated by subtracting the total weight of the vehicle occupants from the “combination weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed” value on the tire label.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Examples: Based on a single occupant weight of 68 kg (150 lbs), and a value of 385 kg (849 lbs) for the “combination weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed”:
The cargo weight limit with one occupant is 385 kg (849 lbs) – 68 kg (150 lbs) = 317 kg (699 lbs)
The cargo weight limit with two occupants is 385 kg (849 lbs) – (68 × 2) kg ((150 × 2) lbs) = 249 kg (549 lbs)
If the weight of the occupant increases, the cargo weight limit decreases by that much.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight) is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the driver's door frame or door pillar. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**

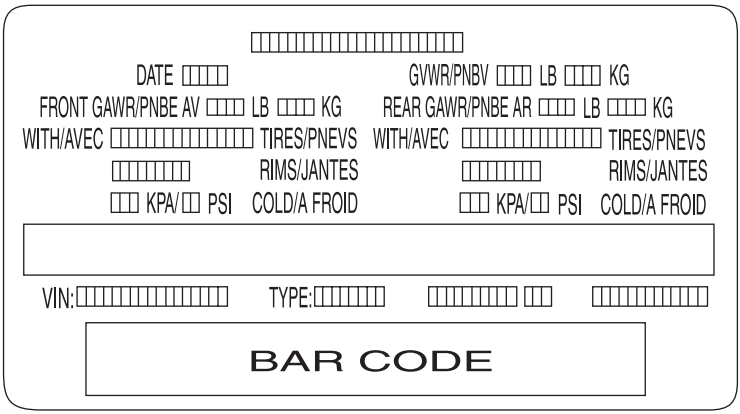


GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the driver's door frame or door pillar. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

SAMPLE



⚠ WARNING

Exceeding Axle Weight Rating Limits:

Exceeding the Safety Certification Label axle weight rating limits is dangerous and could result in death or serious injury as a result of substandard vehicle handling, performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, or loss of control.

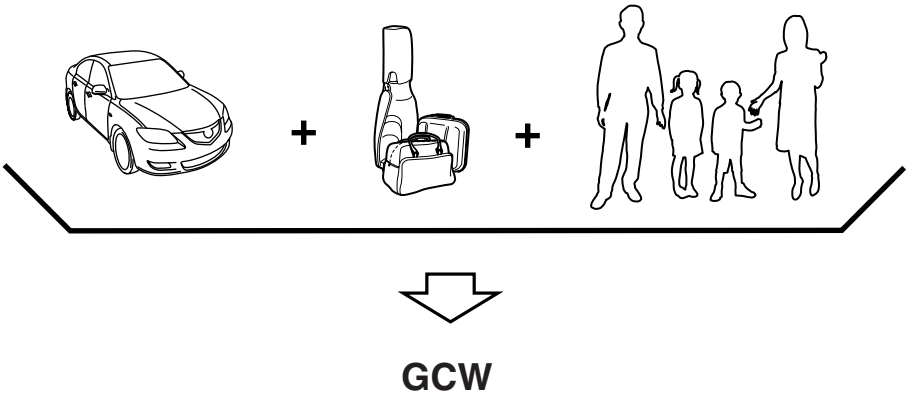
Always keep the vehicle within the axle weight rating limits.

Do not taw a trailer with this vehicle:

Towing a trailer with this vehicle is dangerous because it has not been designed to tow a trailer and doing so will affect the drive system which could result in vehicle damage.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Information (U.S.A.)



GCW (Gross Combination Weight) is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

GCWR (Gross Combination Weight Rating) is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer - including all cargo and passengers - that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR. Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers weighing more than 1,500 lbs). **The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth-wheel trailer), and driver only (150 lbs). **Consult your dealership (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide provided by your dealership) for more detailed information. Tongue Load or Fifth-Wheel King Pin Weight** refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

Examples: For a 5000 lb conventional trailer, multiply 5000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 lbs. For an 11,500 lb fifth-wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1,725 to 2,875 lbs.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding GVWR or GAWR Specifications:

Exceeding the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label is dangerous. Exceeding any vehicle rating limitation could result in a serious accident, injury, or damage to the vehicle.

Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the originals because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the originals do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

Never exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Steps for Determining the Correct Load Limit:

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit:

(1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on your vehicle's placard.
(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400– 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)
(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Reporting Safety Defects (U.S.A.)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Mazda Motor Corporation (Your Mazda Importer/Distributor).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Mazda Motor Corporation (Your Mazda Importer/Distributor).

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY:1-800-424-9153) ; go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

NOTE

If you live in the U.S.A., all correspondence to Mazda Motor Corporation should be forwarded to:

Mazda North American Operations
7755 Irvine Center Drive
Irvine, California 92618-2922
or
P.O. Box 19734
Irvine, CA 92623-9734
Customer Assistance Center or toll free at 1 (800) 222-5500

If you live outside of the U.S.A., please contact the nearest Mazda Distributor shown (page 9-11) in this booklet.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Reporting Safety Defects (Canada)

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll free hotline 1-800-333-0510, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa ON K1A 0N5.

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at: http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/menu.htm

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Service Publications

Factory-authorized Mazda service publications are available for owners who wish to do some of their own maintenance and repair.

When requesting any of our publications through an Authorized Mazda Dealer, refer to the chart below.

If they don't have what you need in stock, they can order it for you.

PUBLICATION ORDER NUMBER	PUBLICATION DESCRIPTION
9999-95-017B-09	2009 WORKSHOP MANUAL (English)
9999-MX-017B-09	2009 WORKSHOP MANUAL (Spanish)
9999-95-019G-09	2009 WIRING DIAGRAM (English)
9999-MX-019G-09	2009 WIRING DIAGRAM (Spanish)
9999-95-038C-09 (U.S.A. only)	2009 OWNER'S MANUAL
9999-EC-038C-09 (Canada only)	2009 OWNER'S MANUAL
9999-PR-038C-09 (Puerto Rico, Mexico only)	2009 OWNER'S MANUAL
9999-95-MODL-09	2009 SERVICE HIGHLIGHTS
9999-95-011F-08NAV (U.S.A. only) (U.S.A. only)	2009 NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL
9999-EC-011F-08NAV (Canada only) (Canada only)	2009 NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL

▼WORKSHOP MANUAL:

Covers recommended maintenance and repair procedures of the drive train, body and chassis.

▼WIRING DIAGRAM:

Provides electrical schematics as well as component location for the entire electrical system.

▼OWNER'S MANUAL:

This booklet contains information regarding the proper care and operation of your vehicle. This is not a technician's manual.

▼SERVICE HIGHLIGHTS:

Provides description and operation of the many systems of your Mazda.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Service Publications

▼NAVIGATION SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL:

This booklet contains information regarding the proper operation and use of the navigation system. This is not a technician's manual.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

10 Specifications

Technical information about your Mazda.

Identification Numbers 10-2
Vehicle Information Labels 10-2

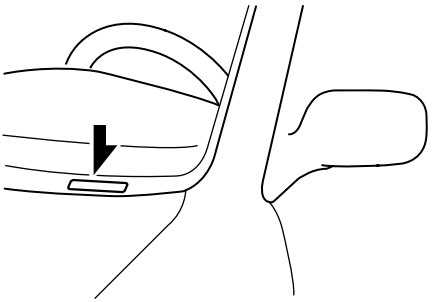
Specifications 10-4
Specifications 10-4

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

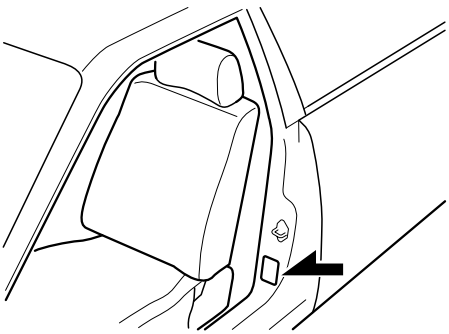
Vehicle Information Labels

▼Vehicle Identification Number

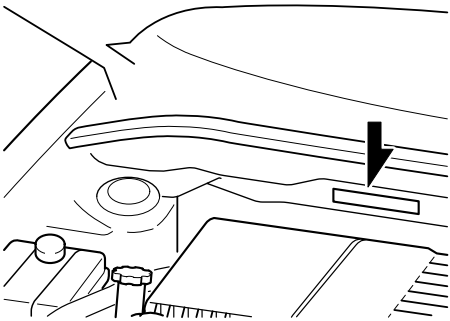
The vehicle identification number legally identifies your vehicle. The number is on a plate attached to the cowl panel located on the left corner of the dashboard. This plate can easily be seen through the windshield.



▼Motor Vehicle Safety Standard Label

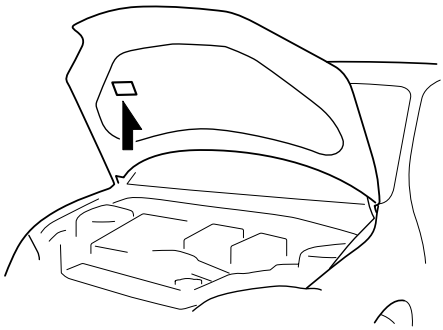


▼Chassis Number

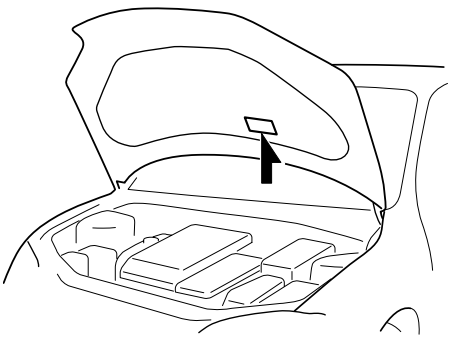


▼Vehicle Emission Control Information Label

Without turbocharger

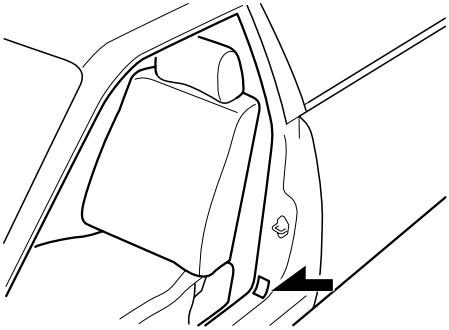


With turbocharger



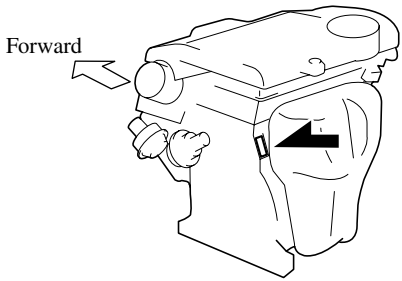
Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Tire Pressure Label

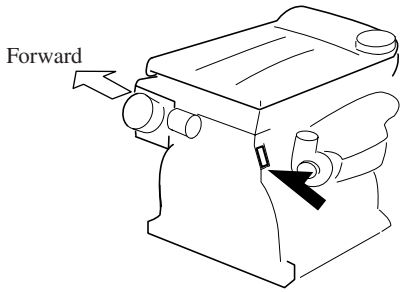


▼Engine Number

Without turbocharger



With turbocharger



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Specifications

▼Engine

Item	Specification		
	Without turbocharger		With turbocharger
	2.0-liter engine	2.3-liter engine	
Type	DOHC-16V in-line, 4-cylinder		
Bore×Stroke	87.5 × 83.1 mm (3.44 × 3.27 in)	87.5 × 94.0 mm (3.44 × 3.70 in)	
Displacement	1,999 ml (1,999 cc, 122.0 cu in)	2,261 ml (2,261 cc, 137.9 cu in)	
Compression ratio	10.0	9.7	9.5

▼Electrical System

Item			Classification
Battery	Without turbocharger	2.0-liter engine	12V-40AH/5HR, 12V-52AH/5HR
		2.3-liter engine	12V-40AH/5HR, 12V-52AH/5HR, 12V-55AH/5HR
	With turbocharger		12V-48AH/5HR, 12V-55AH/5HR
Spark-plug number	Without turbocharger		LFG1 18 110*1, L3Y2 18 110
	With turbocharger		L3K9 18 110A*1, L3Y3 18 110
Spark-plug gap	Without turbocharger		1.25—1.35 mm (0.050—0.053 in)
	With turbocharger		0.70—0.80 mm (0.028—0.031 in)

*1 ex factory

NOTE

When cleaning the iridium plugs, do not use a wire brush. The fine particulate coating on the iridium alloy and platinum tips could be damaged.

▼Lubricant Quality

Lubricant		Classification		
Engine		Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on page 8-18.		
Manual transaxle oil	Without turbocharger	Any temperature	API Service	GL-4 or GL-5
			SAE	75W-90
		Above 10°C (50°F)	API Service	GL-4 or GL-5
			SAE	80W-90
	With turbocharger	API Service	GL-4	
		SAE	75W-90	
Automatic transaxle fluid		ATF M-V		
Power steering fluid		ATF M-III or equivalent (e.g. Dexron® II)		
Brake/Clutch fluid		SAE J1703 or FMVSS116 DOT-3		

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Capacities

(Approximate Quantities)

Item			Capacity
Engine oil	Without turbocharger	With oil filter replacement	4.3 L (4.5 US qt, 3.8 Imp qt)
		Without oil filter replacement	3.9 L (4.1 US qt, 3.4 Imp qt)
	With turbocharger	With oil filter replacement	5.7 L (6.0 US qt, 5.0 Imp qt)
		Without oil filter replacement	5.3 L (5.6 US qt, 4.7 Imp qt)
Coolant			7.5 L (7.9 US qt, 6.6 Imp qt)
Manual transaxle oil	Without turbocharger		2.87 L (3.03 US qt, 2.53 Imp qt)
	With turbocharger		2.5 L (2.6 US qt, 2.2 Imp qt)
Automatic transaxle fluid	4-speed transaxle		7.2 L (7.6 US qt, 6.3 Imp qt)
	5-speed transaxle		8.14 L (8.60 US qt, 7.16 Imp qt)
Fuel tank			55.0 L (14.5 US gal, 12.1 Imp gal)

Check oil and fluid levels with dipsticks or reservoir gauges.

▼Dimensions

Item			Model	
			4 Door	5 Door
Overall length	Without turbocharger	STANDARD TYPE	4,505 mm (177.4 in)	—
		SPORTY TYPE	4,510 mm (177.6 in)	4,490 mm (176.8 in)
	With turbocharger		—	4,490 mm (176.8 in)
Overall width	Without turbocharger	Without side molding	1,745 mm (68.7 in)	1,745 mm (68.7 in)
		With side molding	1,755 mm (69.1 in)	1,755 mm (69.1 in)
	With turbocharger		—	1,765 mm (69.5 in)
Overall height			1,465 mm (57.7 in)	1,465 mm (57.7 in)
Front tread	Without turbocharger		1,530 mm (60.2 in)	1,530 mm (60.2 in)
	With turbocharger		—	1,535 mm (60.4 in)
Rear tread	Without turbocharger		1,515 mm (59.6 in)	1,515 mm (59.6 in)
	With turbocharger		—	1,525 mm (60.0 in)
Wheelbase			2,640 mm (103.9 in)	2,640 mm (103.9 in)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Weights

4 Door

2.0-liter engine

Item		Weight	
		Manual transaxle	Automatic transaxle
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)		1,719 kg (3,790 lbs)	1,733 kg (3,821 lbs)
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)	Front	919 kg (2,026 lbs)	983 kg (2,068 lbs)
	Rear	800 kg (1,764 lbs)	795 kg (1,753 lbs)

2.3-liter engine

Item		Weight	
		Manual transaxle	Automatic transaxle
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)		1,764 kg (3,889 lbs)	1,792 kg (3,951 lbs)
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)	Front	952 kg (2,099 lbs)	981 kg (2,163 lbs)
	Rear	812 kg (1,790 lbs)	811 kg (1,788 lbs)

5 Door

Without turbocharger

Item		Weight	
		Manual transaxle	Automatic transaxle
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)		1,783 kg (3,931 lbs)	1,811 kg (3,993 lbs)
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)	Front	954 kg (2,103 lbs)	983 kg (2,167 lbs)
	Rear	829 kg (1,828 lbs)	828 kg (1,825 lbs)

With turbocharger

Item		Weight
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)		1,866 kg (4,114 lbs)
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)	Front	1,055 kg (2,326 lbs)
	Rear	811 kg (1,788 lbs)

▼Air Conditioner

Item	Classification
Refrigerant Type	HFC134a (R-134a)

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

▼Light Bulbs

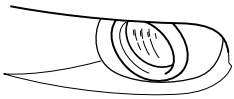
Exterior light

Light bulb			Category	
			Wattage	ECE R (SAE)
Headlights	High beam		60	HB3 (HB3)
	Low beam	Halogen	55	H7 (H7)
		Xenon fusion	35	D2S (D2S)
Front turn signal lights/Side-marker lights			27/8	— (#1157NA)
Fog lights*		Type A	55	H11 (H11)
		Type B	51	HB4 (HB4)
Side turn signal lights*1			5	WY5W (—)
High-mount brake light	4 Door		18	W16W (#921)
	5 Door	Bulb type	18	W16W (#921)
		LED type	LED*2	— (—)
Rear turn signal lights			21	WY21W (—)
Brake lights/Taillights	Bulb type		21/5	W21/5W (#7443)
	LED type		LED*2	— (—)
Reverse lights			21	W21W (#7440)
License plate light			5	W5W (—)

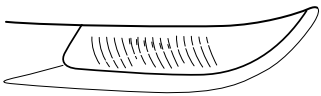
*1 Bulb replacement is not possible because it is built into the unit. Replace the unit.
*2 LED is the abbreviation for Light Emitting Diode.

Fog lights

Type A



Type B



Interior light

Light bulb	Category	
	Wattage	ECE R
Trunk light (4 Door)	5	W5W
Luggage compartment light (5 Door)		—
Overhead light/Map lights (Front)*		W5W
Overhead light (Rear)	10	—
Vanity mirror lights*	1.2	—

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

*Some models.

▼Tires

NOTE

The tires have been optimally matched with the chassis of your vehicle.
When replacing tires, Mazda recommends that you replace tires of the same type originally fitted to your vehicle. For details, contact an Authorized Mazda Dealer.

Check the tire pressure label for tire size and inflation pressure.
Refer to Tire Inflation Pressure on page 8-35.

Standard tire

Tire size	Inflation pressure	
	Front	Rear
P195/65R15 89H	230 kPa (34 psi)	230 kPa (34 psi)
P205/55R16 89H	220 kPa (32 psi)	220 kPa (32 psi)
P205/50R17 88V	220 kPa (32 psi)	220 kPa (32 psi)
215/45R18 93Y	230 kPa (34 psi)	220 kPa (32 psi)

Temporary spare tire

Tire size	Inflation pressure
T115/70D15 90M	420 kPa (60 psi)
T125/70D16 96M	
T125/70D17 98M	

▼Fuses

Refer to the fuse rating on page 8-50.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

11 Index

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Index

A

Accessory Socket 6-76
Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories 9-17
Air Bag Systems 2-42
Ambient Temperature Display 6-66
Antenna 6-16
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 5-7
  Warning light 5-8
Appearance Care 8-58
Ashtray 6-70
Audio System 6-16
  Audio control switch 6-56
  Audio set 6-27
  AUX mode 6-58
  Operating tips for audio system 6-17
  Safety certification 6-61
Automatic Transaxle
  Driving tips 5-18
  Fluid 8-25
  Manual shift mode 5-14
  Shift-lock override 5-14
  Shift-lock system 5-14
  Transaxle ranges 5-13

B

Battery
  Emergency starting 7-16
  Maintenance 8-32
  Specifications 10-4
Beep Sounds
  Ignition key reminder 5-50
  Lights-on reminder 5-50
  Tire inflation pressure warning beep 5-50
Beeps
  Seat belt warning beep Sounds ... 5-50

B

Before Starting the Engine 4-6
  After getting in 4-6
  Before getting in 4-6
Body Lubrication 8-28
Bottle Holder 6-72
Brake/Clutch
  Fluid 8-23
Brakes
  Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 5-7
  Brakes assist 5-9
  Foot brake 5-5
  Parking brake 5-6
  Warning light 5-7
Break-In Period 4-7
Bulb Replacement 8-39

C

Capacities 10-5
Carbon Monoxide 4-5
Cargo Securing Loops 6-73
Cargo Sub-Compartment 6-73
Catalytic Converter 4-4
Cell Phones 9-18
Center Console 6-73
Child Restraint
  Child restraint precautions 2-27
  Installing child-restraint systems 2-31
  LATCH child-restraint systems 2-37
Child Safety Locks for Rear Doors ... 3-11
Cigarette Lighter 6-70
Climate Control System 6-2
  Gas specifications 10-6
Clock 6-66
Cruise Control 5-20
Cup Holder 6-71

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

C

Customer Assistance 9-2

D

Dashboard Illumination 5-36
Daytime Running Lights 5-54
Defroster
Mirror 5-60
Rear window 5-60
Dimensions 10-5
Door Locks 3-8
Driving In Flooded Area 4-11
Driving on Uneven Road 4-13
Driving Tips 4-7
Automatic transaxle 5-18
Break-in period 4-7
Driving in flooded area 4-11
Driving on uneven road 4-13
Hazardous driving 4-8
Money-saving suggestions 4-7
Rocking the vehicle 4-9
Turbocharged vehicles 4-14
Winter driving 4-10
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) 5-24
DSC OFF indicator light 5-25
DSC OFF switch 5-25
TCS/DSC Indicator light 5-25

E

Emergency Starting 7-16
Flooded engine 7-16
Jump-starting 7-17
Push-starting 7-20
Emergency Towing 7-21
Emission Control System 4-4

E

Engine
Coolant 8-21
Exhaust gas 4-5
Hood release 3-22
Oil 8-18
Overheating 7-14
Starting 5-4
Engine Compartment Overview 8-17
Engine Coolant
Overheating 7-14
Engine Coolant Temperature
Gauge 5-35
Exhaust Gas 4-5
Exterior Care 8-60

F

Flasher
Hazard warning 5-61
Headlights 5-51
Flat Tire 7-3
Changing 7-8
Spare tire and tool storage 7-3
Flexible Floor Board 6-74
Fluids
Classification 10-4
Owner maintenance 8-15
Fog Lights 5-55
Foot Brake 5-5
Front Seats
(Electrically Operated Seats) 2-4
Front Seats
(Manually Operated Seats) 2-2
Fuel
Filler lid and cap 3-20
Gauge 5-36
Requirements 4-2
Tank capacity 10-5

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

F

Fuses 8-50
Panel description 8-53
Replacement 8-50

G

Glove Box 6-72

H

Hazard Warning Flasher 5-61
Hazardous Driving 4-8
Headlights
Control 5-51
Flashing 5-53
High-low beam 5-53
Leveling 5-53
On reminder 5-53
Hood Release 3-22
Horn 5-61

I

Ignition
Keys 3-2
Switch 5-2
Illuminated Entry System 6-62
Immobilizer System 3-26
Indicator Lights 5-38
Cruise 5-48
DSC OFF 5-48
Headlight high-beam 5-47
Power steering malfunction 5-49
Security 5-47
Shift position 5-47
TCS/DSC 5-48
Turn-signal/hazard warning 5-49

I

Information Display 6-65
Ambient temperature display 6-66
Audio display 6-67
Climate control display 6-67
Clock 6-66
Information display functions 6-65
Trip computer 6-67
Inside Trunk Release Lever 3-17
Instrument Cluster 5-33
Instrument Cluster Dimmer Select Button 5-36
Interior Care 8-63
Interior Lights 6-62

J

Jump-Starting 7-17

K

Keyless Entry System 3-3
Keys 3-2

L

Label Information 10-2
Lane-Change Signals 5-54
Liftgate 3-11
Luggage compartment 3-13
Light Bulbs
Replacement 8-39
Specifications 10-7
Lighter 6-70
Lighting Control 5-51
Lubricant Quality 10-4
Luggage Compartment Light 6-63

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

M

Maintenance
- Introduction 8-2
- Owner maintenance precautions 8-16
- Owner maintenance schedule 8-15
- Scheduled 8-3

Manual Transaxle Operation 5-9
- Recommendations for shifting..... 5-10

Map Lights 6-63
Mirror Defroster 5-60
Mirrors
- Outside mirrors 3-30
- Rearview mirror 3-31

Money-Saving Suggestions 4-7
Moonroof 3-24

O

Odometer and Trip Meter 5-34
Outside Mirrors 3-30
Overhead Lights 6-63
Overheating 7-14
Overloading 4-12

P

Paint Damage 8-58
Parking Brake 5-6
Parking in an Emergency 7-2
Power Door Locks 3-10
Power Steering 5-19
- Fluid 8-24
- Power steering malfunction indicator light 5-19

Power Windows 3-18
Push-Starting 7-20

R

Rear Door Child Safety Locks 3-11
Rear Seat 2-7
Rear Window Defroster 5-60
Rear Window Washer 5-59
Rear Window Wiper 5-59
Rearview Mirror 3-31
Recreational Towing 7-23
Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country 9-16
Rocking the Vehicle 4-9

S

Safety Defects, Reporting 9-43
Seat Belt System
- Automatic locking 2-16
- Belt minder 2-25
- Center-rear lap/shoulder 2-21
- Emergency locking 2-15
- Except center-rear position 2-17
- Extender 2-24
- Pregnant women 2-15
- Pretensioner and load limiting 2-19
- Seat belt precautions 2-13
- Warning light/beep 2-25

Seats
- Front seat (Electrically operated seats) 2-4
- Front seat (Manually operated seats) 2-2
- Rear seat 2-7
- Seat warmer 2-11

Security System
- Immobilizer system 3-26
- Theft-deterrent system 3-28

Service Publications 9-45
Spare Tire and Tool Storage 7-3
Specifications 10-4

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

S

Speedometer 5-34
SRS Air Bags
How the Air Bags Work 2-48
Supplemental restraint systems precautions 2-42
Starting the Engine 5-4
Steering Wheel 3-30
Horn 5-61
Storage Compartments 6-72
Cargo securing loops 6-73
Cargo sub-compartment 6-73
Center console 6-73
Flexible Floor Board 6-74
Glove box 6-72
Sunshade 3-25
Sunvisors 6-62

T

Tachometer 5-35
Temporary Spare Tire 8-37
Theft-Deterrent System 3-28
Tiedown
Hook 7-22
Tire Information 9-23
Tire Pressure Monitoring System 5-27
System error activation 5-31
Tire pressure monitoring system warning light 5-29
Tires and wheels 5-31

T

Tires
Flat Tire 7-3
Inflation pressure 8-35
Replacement 8-36
Rotation 8-36
Snow tires 4-10
Spare tire and tool storage 7-3
Specifications 10-8
Tire chains 4-11
Uniform tire quality grading system (UTQGS) 9-21
Tool 7-3
Towing
Description 7-21
Emergency towing 7-21
Recreational towing 7-23
Trailer towing 4-15
Traction Control System (TCS) 5-23
TCS/DSC indicator light 5-24
Trailer Towing 4-15
Trip Meter 5-34
Trunk Lid 3-14
Inside trunk release lever 3-17
Trunk Light 3-16
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 5-54

V

Vanity Mirrors 6-62
Vehicle Information Labels 10-2

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

W

Warning Lights 5-38
ABS 5-40
Air bag system 5-42
Automatic transaxle 5-45
Brake system 5-40
Charging system 5-41
Check engine 5-42
Door-ajar 5-44
Engine oil pressure 5-41
Front seat belt pretensioner system 5-42
Low fuel 5-43
Low washer fluid level 5-44
Seat belt 5-43
Tire pressure monitoring system 5-45
Warranty 9-13
Washer Fluid 8-27
Weights 10-6
Wheel Replacement 8-38
Windows
Power windows 3-18
Windshield Washer 5-59
Windshield Wipers 5-56
Blades replacement 8-29
Winter Driving 4-10

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS